Notes
## Contents

1. *Rapport sur la formule des traces*  
2. Quasi-unipotent monodromy  
3. *La conjecture de Weil. II*  
4. *Faisceaux Pervers*  
5. Applications de la formule des traces aux sommes trigonométriques  
6. Transformation de Fourier  
7. Théorèmes de finitude en cohomologie ℓ-adique  
8. *La classe de cohomologie associée à un cycle*  
9. *The derived category of perverse sheaves*  
10. *How to glue perverse sheaves*  
11. Morel’s notes  
12. Singular support
1. Rapport sur la formule des traces

$p, q, \ell, F_q, F$: $p$ is a prime number, $q = p^f$ is a power of $p$ and $F$ an algebraic closure of the field $F_q$; $\ell$ is a prime number $\neq p$.

$X_0, X$: $X_0$ is a scheme on $F_q$, $X = X_0 \times_{F_q} F$. If $\mathcal{F}_0$ is an (étale) sheaf on $X_0$, $\mathcal{F}$ denotes its inverse image on $X$.

1.1. Mise en garde. The exposition beginning with [1.3] is based on SGA 5, Exposé XIV by C. Houzel. This approach is explicit at the expense being somewhat anti-conceptual and overloaded with cumbersome notation, which makes it hard to remember. On the other hand, Deligne’s approach to Frobenius is conceptually beautiful and easy to remember, but the first time I read it I couldn’t understand it. Now that I do, I write these notes. Deligne uses $\varphi$ to denote what he calls the ‘Frobenius substitution’; it is the well-known topological generator of $\text{Gal}(F/F_q)$. He uses $F$ to denote the ‘Frobenius endomorphism’, notated $\text{fr}_{X_0}$ below, which is the endomorphism of a scheme $X_0/F_q$ obtained by $x \mapsto x^q$ on the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{X_0}$. Finally, he uses $F^*$ to denote the action of Frobenius on sheaves on a scheme over $F_q$ (and base extensions of such), and their cohomology.

1.2. Frobenius following Deligne.

1.2.1. Representing the Frobenius correspondence. Let $Q$ be any scheme and $\mathcal{G}$ an (étale) sheaf on $Q$. Let $Q_{\text{pet}}$ denote the category $(\text{Et}/Q)$ of algebraic spaces étale over $Q$, equipped with the étale topology. We ‘recall’ the following

**Proposition.** — $\mathcal{G}$ is represented over $Q_{\text{pet}}$ by l’espace étalé $\lbrack \mathcal{G} \rbrack$ of $\mathcal{G}$: an algebraic space, locally separated and étale over $Q$. If moreover $\mathcal{G}$ is

(a) locally constant constructible
(b) locally constant,
(c) constructible,

then $\lbrack \mathcal{G} \rbrack$ may be taken to be

(a) a scheme finite étale over $Q$ (SGAA Exp. IX 2.2).
(β) a scheme étale over \(Q\) (SGAA Exp. IX 2.2).
(γ) finitely presented as an algebraic space over \(Q\) (SGAA Exp. IX 2.7).

In other words, \(\mathcal{G}\) is the sheaf of local sections of the space \([\mathcal{G}]\): for each \(V \in \text{Et}/Q\),
\[
\mathcal{G}(V) = \text{Hom}_Q(V, [\mathcal{G}]).
\]

M. Artin constructs the espace étalé \([\mathcal{G}]\) associated to an arbitrary étale sheaf \(\mathcal{G}\) on a scheme \(Q\) in \textit{Théorèmes de représentabilité pour les espaces algébriques} VII §1. A sketch: put

\[
(\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{G}) := \bigcup_{U, \xi \in \mathcal{G}(U)} (U \xrightarrow{\xi} \mathcal{G}),
\]

the sum executed over affine schemes \(U\) étale over \(Q\) and the \(\xi \in \mathcal{G}(U)\). The canonical morphism \(\mathcal{U} \times_q U \to U \times_Q U\) induced by \(\xi \in \mathcal{G}(U)\) and \(\eta \in \mathcal{G}(V)\) \((U, V\) affine étale schemes over \(Q\)) is an open immersion and defines an étale equivalence relation on \(\mathcal{U}\).

Let \([\mathcal{G}]\) be the quotient of \(\mathcal{U}\) by this equivalence relation; it is an algebraic space over \(Q\), in general not separated, but only locally separated; in other words, \(\mathcal{U} \times_q U \to U \times_Q U\) is not necessarily a closed immersion.

Now let \(X_0\) be a scheme over \(\mathbf{F}_q\) and \(\mathcal{F}_0\) a sheaf on \(X_0\). The formation of the espace étalé \([\mathcal{F}_0]\) of \(\mathcal{F}_0\) yields the commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
[\mathcal{F}_0] & \xrightarrow{F} & [\mathcal{F}_0] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_0 & \xrightarrow{F} & X_0.
\end{array}
\]

and hence a morphism \([\mathcal{F}_0] \to F^*[\mathcal{F}_0]\). Replacing \(S\) with \(X_0\), and \(X_0\) with \([\mathcal{F}_0]\),1.3.1 below finds that this morphism is relative Frobenius \(Fr_{[\mathcal{F}_0]/X_0}\); as \([\mathcal{F}_0]\) is étale over \(X_0\),1.3.3 tells us that this morphism is an isomorphism \([\mathcal{F}_0] \xrightarrow{\sim} F^*[\mathcal{F}_0]\) with inverse Deligne’s Frobenius correspondence (1.2.1)
\[
F^* : F^*[\mathcal{F}_0] \xrightarrow{\sim} [\mathcal{F}_0].
\]
This morphism is the same as the one constructed with different notation in 1.3.4. The point is that by putting additional hypotheses on $\mathcal{F}_0$, one may assume that $\mathcal{F}_0$ is in fact a scheme étale over $X_0$.

1.2.2. The Frobenius correspondence and the Frobenius endomorphism. Let $\mathcal{F}_0$ be an abelian sheaf on $X_0$. We wish to elucidate Deligne’s approach in 1.8 of Rapport to show that

$$F^{-1} = \varphi \quad \text{(on } H^i_c(X, \mathcal{F})).$$

Letting $Y_0 = \text{Spec } F_q$, as written $H^i_c(X, \mathcal{F}) = [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0](\mathcal{F})$, and, noting $F = \text{id}$ on $Y_0$ we have the (stupid) diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
[R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0] & \xrightarrow{F} & [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
Y_0 & \xrightarrow{\text{id}} & Y_0
\end{array}
\]

which just serves to connect this discussion to that of the previous section and show that the morphism defining the inverse of the Frobenius correspondence $F^*$ on $[R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0]$ is indeed $F : [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0] \to [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0]$; as $F$ acts on geometric points by $\varphi$, we see that

$$F^{-1} : [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0](\mathcal{F}) \to [R^if_!\mathcal{F}_0](\mathcal{F})$$

coinsides with $\varphi$.

1.3. Frobenius following Houzel.

Definition. We denote by $\text{fr}_{X_0}$ the morphism of schemes $X_0 \to X_0$ which is the identity on the underlying topological space $|X_0|$ and acts on the structure sheaf $\mathcal{O}_{X_0}$ by $g \mapsto g^q$.

This morphism is called absolute Frobenius.

1.3.1. If the structure morphism $X_0 \to F_q$ factors through some scheme $S$, then we denote by $X_0^{(q/S)} := X_0 \times_{S, \text{fr}_S} S$ the fiber product of $g : X_0 \to S$ by the morphism
fr_S : S → S with projection π_{X_0/S} : X_0^{(q/S)} → X_0. The absolute Frobenius fr_{X_0} then factors through the morphism π_{X_0/S}. We can form the diagram

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
X_0 & \xrightarrow{fr_{X_0}} & X_0^{(q/S)} \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow \pi_{X_0/S} \\
S & \xrightarrow{fr_S} & S
\end{array} \]

**Definition.** The morphism Fr_{X_0/S} is called relative Frobenius.

1.3.2. Frobenius acts on geometric points. Consider the set of geometric points X(F) = X_0(F). Frobenius acts on this set by φ ∈ Gal(F/F_q), φ(x) = x^q. In particular, as F_q is perfect, X^F = X_0(F_q), where X^F denotes the geometric points fixed by Frobenius. In slightly more words, consider a geometric point x ∈ X_0 with [k(x) : F_q] = f, there are f geometric points centered on x; F acts transitively by φ on this set, and F^f fixes each of these geometric points.

1.3.3. Behavior of relative Frobenius. The relative Frobenius Fr_{X_0/S} is integral, surjective, and radicial, hence a universal homeomorphism. This is clear when S = F_q; i.e. for fr_{X_0} = π_{X_0/S} ∘ Fr_{X_0/S}; it follows that Fr_{X_0/S} is radicial [EGA I 3.5.6 (ii)]. Moreover, π_{X_0/S} is separated and radicial, therefore Fr_{X_0/S} is integral [EGA II 6.1.5 (v)] and surjective.

Suppose moreover that g : X_0 → S is étale. The same is true of g^{(q)} : X_0^{(q)} → S, and therefore Fr_{X_0/S} : X_0 → X_0^{(q)} is étale. As Fr_{X_0/S} is also radicial and surjective, it is an isomorphism.

1.3.4. Frobenius correspondence. Let X_0 be a scheme over F_q and ξ_0 a sheaf of sets on (X_0)_{ét} (the small étale site of X_0 whose underlying category is the category of schemes étale over X_0). We have for all U → X étale (fr_{X_0})_*(ξ_0(U)) = ξ_0(U^{(q/X)}).
The isomorphism $\mathcal{F}_0(\text{Fr}_{X_0}) : (\text{fr}_{X_0})_* \mathcal{F}_0(U) \to \mathcal{F}_0(U)$ is natural in $U$ and induces an isomorphism of sheaves

$$\mathcal{F}_0(\text{Fr}_{X_0}) : (\text{fr}_{X_0})_* \mathcal{F}_0 \cong \mathcal{F}_0;$$

by adjunction applied to $\mathcal{F}_0(\text{Fr}_{X_0})^{-1}$ we obtain a morphism

$$F^\ast : \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast \mathcal{F}_0 \to \mathcal{F}_0.$$

As $\text{fr}_{X_0}$ is integral, surjective, and radicial, $\text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast : (X_0)_{\text{et}} \to (X_0)_{\text{et}}$ is an equivalence of sites, and the functors

$$(\text{fr}_{X_0})_*, \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast : (X_0)_{\text{et}} \longrightarrow (X_0)_{\text{et}}$$

are autoequivalences and quasi-inverses, where $(X_0)_{\text{et}}$ denotes the étale topos on $X_0$ [SGAA Exp. VIII, 1.1]. Therefore $F^\ast$ is also an isomorphism.

**Definition.** The isomorphism $F^\ast : \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast \mathcal{F}_0 \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}_0$ is called the Frobenius correspondence.

**1.3.5. Frobenius acts on cohomology.** Consider $\mathcal{F}_0$ a sheaf of $\Lambda$-modules, for some commutative ring $\Lambda$. The canonical morphism $\alpha : \mathcal{F}_0 \to \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast \mathcal{F}_0$ gives rise to

$$\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \xrightarrow{\alpha} \Gamma(X_0, \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast \mathcal{F}_0) \xrightarrow{F^\ast} \Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0);$$

we also denote the composition of these maps by $F^\ast$. When $\mathcal{F}_0 = \Lambda$, this composition is easily seen to coincide with $\text{id}_{\Gamma(X_0, \Lambda)}$, and as every section $s \in \Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0)$ corresponds to a morphism $s : \Lambda \to \mathcal{F}_0$ and $F^\ast$ is evidently functorial in $\mathcal{F}_0$, we find $F^\ast \circ \Gamma(X_0, s) = \Gamma(X_0, s) \circ F^\ast = \Gamma(X_0, s)$, ergo $F^\ast s = s$, so $F^\ast$ induces the identity on $\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0)$. Recalling the definition of the Frobenius correspondence via adjunction, this action of Frobenius on $\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0)$ coincides with the composition

$$\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}_0(\text{Fr}_{X_0})^{-1}} \Gamma(X_0, (\text{fr}_{X_0})_* \mathcal{F}_0) = \Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0).$$

Considering $\mathcal{F}_0$ now as an object of $D^+(X_0, \Lambda)$, we have $\text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast$ preserves injective objects; hence the composition

$$F^\ast : R\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \xrightarrow{\mathcal{F}_0(\text{Fr}_{X_0})^{-1}} R\Gamma(X_0, \text{fr}_{X_0}^\ast \mathcal{F}_0) \longrightarrow R\Gamma(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0)$$
can be computed by applying (*) term-by-term to an injective resolution of \( \mathcal{F}_0 \), whence we see that \( F^* \) acts by identity on \( R\Gamma(\mathcal{F}_0) \), and hence
\[
F^* : H^i(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \longrightarrow H^i(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0)
\]
is the identity for all \( i \).

Suppose that \( X_0 \) is separated and of finite type over \( \mathbb{F}_q \). Then we can replace \( \Gamma \) in the above discussion by \( \Gamma_c \) to find that Frobenius acts on compactly supported cohomology
\[
F^* : H^i_c(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \longrightarrow H^i_c(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0).
\]

**2.1. The trace formula for Spec \( \mathbb{F}_{q^n} \rightarrow \text{Spec } \mathbb{F}_q \).** Let \( X_0 = \text{Spec } \mathbb{F}_{q^n} \), \( q = p^f \), and \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) be a constructible \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-sheaf on \( X_0 \), \( \mathcal{F} \) its inverse image on \( X \). In this case, the cohomological description of the \( L \)-function \( L^i(X_0, \mathcal{F}_0) \) reads very simply
\[
\det(1 - F^*_x t^{d(x)} \mathcal{F})^{-1} = \det(1 - F^*_x t^{\dagger}, H^0_c(X, \mathcal{F}))^{-1},
\]
where \( d(x) = [k(x) : \mathbb{F}_p] \). We first need to make precise how Frobenius is acting on the left and right sides.

On the left side, we fix a geometric point \( \bar{x} \rightarrow x = X \) and construct the action of Frobenius on the fiber \( \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}} \) by picking the smallest power of \( F_{(q)} \) which actually fixes the geometric point \( \bar{x} \), namely \( F_{(q^n)} = F_{(q^n)} \). The notation \( F^*_x \) denotes the endomorphism of \( \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}} \) induced by \( F^*_x \). Up to isomorphism, \( (F_{\bar{x}}, \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}}) \) do not depend on the choice of geometric point \( \bar{x} \rightarrow x \), and the trace, determinant of this action are denoted by \( \text{Tr}(F^*_x, \mathcal{F}) \), etc.

Now, on the right side, we have the Frobenius correspondance on cohomology. We will make use of the identity
\[
F^{\ast - 1} = \varphi,
\]
where \( \varphi \) is the Frobenius considered as the topological generator of \( \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_q) \) (c.f. remark below). The data of a \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-sheaf on \( X \) is equivalent to the data of a finite-dimensional \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-vector space \( V = \mathcal{F}_{\bar{x}} \) on which \( \text{Gal}(\bar{k}(x)/k(x)) = \pi_x \) acts continuously.
There is a canonical isomorphism
\[
\pi_x = \text{Gal}(\overline{k}(x), k(x)) \simeq \hat{\mathbb{Z}}
\]
furnished by the Frobenius element
\[
\varphi_x \in \text{Gal}(\overline{k}(x), k(x)) = \text{Gal}(F/F_{q^n}), \quad \varphi_x(\lambda) = \lambda^{q^n},
\]
so that the action of \( \pi_x \) on \( V = \mathcal{F}_X \) is known once one knows the automorphism \((\varphi_x)_V \) (under the one condition that \( (\varphi_x)^\nu \to \text{id}_V \) as \( \nu \to 0 \) multiplicatively). If \( \text{pr}_x : X = \text{Spec}(F_{q^n}) \to \text{Spec} F_q = e \) is the canonical morphism, \( \pi_x \) is identified via \( \text{pr}_x \) with a subgroup of the analogous Galois group \( \pi_e \) for \( e = \text{Spec}(F_q) \), itself topologically generated by \( \varphi_e \), and via this identification we have the identity
\[
\varphi_x = \varphi^n.
\]
The sheaf \( \text{pr}_{x*}(\mathcal{F}) \) is defined by the induced module
\[
\text{pr}_{x*}(\mathcal{F})_\pi \simeq \mathcal{F}_X \otimes_{\pi_x} \pi_e,
\]
from which one deduces that, letting \( f = \varphi_x^{-1}, \varphi^{-1} \) acts on \( \text{pr}_{x*}(\mathcal{F})_\pi \) by
\[
f^{(n)} : (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \mapsto (f(x_n), x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}),
\]
where here we have written \( \text{pr}_{x*}(\mathcal{F})_\pi \) with respect to a basis as a free \( \pi_x \)-module of rank \( n \). Now the formula \( (\ast) \) is a matter of verifying the formula
\[
\det(1 - ft^n) = \det(1 - f^{(n)}t)
\]
for \( f \) acting on a free module of rank \( n \). This is Deligne’s corollary 3.4.
**Remarque.** Perhaps one way to think about the identification $F^* = \varphi^{-1}$ is by setting up the usual diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{\text{Fr}_{X_0/X_0}} & X'_{(q/X_0)} \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow g' \\
X_0 & \xrightarrow{\text{Fr}_{X_0}} & X_0
\end{array}
\]

with $g$ the base extension of the map $\text{Spec } F \to \text{Spec } F_q$ that arises from fixing an algebraic closure of $F_q$, and then observing that $\text{Fr}_{X_0/X_0} = \varphi \times F_q \text{id}_{X_0}$. Recalling that $F^*$ on $\mathcal{F}/X_0$ is induced by $\text{Fr}_{U/X_0}$ for $U \to X_0$ étale, and by functoriality $F^*$ on $\mathcal{F}/X$ is induced by pulling back the same, hence by $\text{Fr}_{U/X_0}$ for $U \to X$ étale, in particular we have that $F^*$ on $H^0_c(X, \mathcal{F})$ is induced by $\mathcal{F}(\text{Fr}_{X_0/X_0})^{-1} = \mathcal{F}(\varphi^{-1} \times F_q \text{id}_{X_0})$.

3.1. **Le sorite de la notation.** It is very important to note that in Deligne’s notation, $\text{Tr}(F^*_x, \mathcal{F})$ and $\text{Tr}(F^*, \mathcal{F}_x)$ are traces of possibly different operators on the fiber $\mathcal{F}_x$. Namely, if $\mathcal{F}$ is a $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaf on $X_0$ a scheme separated and of finite type over $F_q$, then $\mathcal{F}_x$ is a $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ vector space, for a choice of geometric point $\bar{x}$ centered on a closed point $x$ of $X_0$. Then $F^*_x$ denotes the Frobenius $F_q^n = \varphi'_{q^n}$ raised to the power of the residue field extension $n = [\deg k(x) : F_q]$. This power of Frobenius is the least that fixes each geometric point centered on $x$, and the notation $\text{Tr}(F^*_x, \mathcal{F})$ means $\text{Tr}(F^*_x, \mathcal{F}_x)$.

On the other hand, if, say, $x \in X^{F^n}$ is a geometric point centered on a point of $X_0$ defined over $F_q^n$, $\text{Tr}(F^*, \mathcal{F}_x)$ denotes (absolute) $q$-power Frobenius acting on the fiber. So, unless $x \in X^F$, $\text{Tr}(F^*, \mathcal{F}_x)$ and $\text{Tr}(F^*_x, \mathcal{F})$ are traces of different operators on the same vector space, the latter a power of the other.

3.2. **Le sorite des faisceaux localement constants.**

*The case of locally constant sheaves of sets.* Let $X$ be a scheme and $\mathcal{L}$ a locally constant sheaf of sets with finite fibers on $X$. (With additional assumptions on $X$, the case of a locally constant sheaf of sets with infinite fibers is reduced to the finite case in the course of the discussion of Weil II ??.) We know that $\mathcal{L} = h_U$ for some $U \to X$
revêtement étale. We know that every revêtement étale of $X$ is étale-locally on $X$ trivial; namely for some $V \to X$ étale, $U_V \sim \coprod V$. We wish to show that we may take $V \to X$ to be a revêtement étale (with no further work, we could then take it to be a *galoisian* revêtement, i.e. a connected torsor for the automorphism group of the fiber, as principal Galois objects in a Galois category form a cofinal system).

First note that if $f : X \to Y$ is any morphism of schemes and $V \to Y$ is étale, then $f^* h_V \sim h_{V \times_Y X}$. To see this, observe

$$\text{Hom}(f^* h_V, G) = \text{Hom}(h_V, f_* G) = f_* G(V) = G(V \times_Y X) = \text{Hom}(h_{V \times_Y X}, G).$$

Evidently, this argument holds true for any morphism of sites.

So, it will suffice to show that any revêtement étale can be trivialized after base extension by a revêtement étale. To see this, assume $X$ connected and let $U \to X$ be a revêtement étale of constant degree $d$ and proceed by recurrence on $d$, the case $d = 1$ being trivial. (Of course, in the special case that $U \to X$ is galoisian with Galois group $G$, $U \times_X U \sim U \times G$ is a trivial $G$-torsor, and we are done.)

As $U \to X$ is étale, hence net, and finite, the diagonal morphism $U \to U \times_X U$ is simultaneously an open and closed immersion, hence an isomorphism onto a connected component of $U \times_X U$, allowing us to write $U \times_X U = U \coprod Z$ with $Z \to U$ of constant degree $d - 1$. By hypothesis, there exists a revêtement étale $V \to U$ such that $Z \times_U V \sim \coprod_{d-1} V$. Our desired revêtement is then simply the composition $V \to U \to X$:

$$V \times_X U = V \times_U U \times_X U = V \times_U (U \coprod Z) = V \coprod (V \times_U Z) = \coprod_d V.$$

*The case of locally constant constructible sheaves.* Let $\Lambda$ be a commutative, noetherian torsion ring. We adapt the above discussion to locally constant constructible (l.c.c.) sheaves of $\Lambda$-modules. Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a l.c.c. sheaf of $\Lambda$-modules on a connected scheme $X$. Then the fibers of $\mathcal{F}$ are finite sets and the above discussion yields a revêtement étale $f : V \to X$ with $V$ a (connected) galoisian cover with Galois group $H$ (i.e. $V$ is a $H$-torsor) such that $f^* \mathcal{F}$ is a constant sheaf. Its constant value $H^0(V, f^* \mathcal{F})$ is a $\Lambda[H]$-module.
The sheaf $f_\ast \Lambda_X$ on $X$, together with the natural action of $H$, is a rank 1 l.c.c. sheaf of $\Lambda[H]$-modules. Relative to the natural action of $H$ on $f_\ast f^\ast \mathcal{F}$, the trace morphism $f_\ast f^\ast \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F}$ factors by an isomorphism

$$(f_\ast f^\ast \mathcal{F})_H \to \mathcal{F},$$

and we have $f_\ast f^\ast \mathcal{F} = f_\ast M = f_\ast \Lambda \otimes \Lambda M$ with the diagonal action of $H$.

The above discussion shows that a l.c.c. sheaf of $\Lambda$-modules on a connected scheme $X$ is determined by its restriction to the small étale site of $X$. Sheaves on the small étale site $\mathcal{U}$ are in turn determined by Grothendieck’s Galois theory: fixing a geometric point $\bar{x}$ of $X$ and putting $G := \pi_1(X, \bar{x})$, the functor

$$\text{Sh}(\mathcal{U}) \to \text{finite } G\text{-sets}$$

$$\mathcal{F} \mapsto \mathcal{F}_G$$

admits the inverse

$$\text{finite } G\text{-sets} \to \text{Sh}(\mathcal{U})$$

$$\mathcal{F}_G \mapsto [V \in \mathcal{U} \mapsto \text{Hom}_G(V, \mathcal{F}_G)].$$

To verify this, as the torsors are cofinal in a covering of any $V \in \mathcal{U}$, we may cover $V$ by a torsor $W$ with Galois group $H$ and combine the equalizer description of $\mathcal{F}(V)$

$$\mathcal{F}(V) \to \mathcal{F}(W) \rightrightarrows \mathcal{F}(W \times V W)$$

with the description of such in the case of a Galois torsor; c.f. [SGA4 \frac{3}{2}] I §5.

The discussion in the previous section can be rephrased using the monodromy representation of a l.c.c. sheaf. Namely, let $\mathcal{F}$ be a l.c.c. sheaf of $\Lambda$-modules on a connected scheme $X$ pointed by a geometric point $\bar{x}$ as above; $\mathcal{F}$ corresponds to a representation $\pi_1(X, \bar{x}) \to \text{GL}(\mathcal{F}_\bar{x})$. As the latter is a finite group, the kernel of this representation is of finite index, and as the Galois coverings are cofinal, we can find a Galois cover of $X$ corresponding to a open subgroup contained in the kernel. The sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ becomes constant when restricted to this cover.

The case of lisse sheaves. Let $E \subset \overline{Q_\ell}$ be an finite extension of $Q_\ell$ with valuation ring $R$, integral closure of $Z_\ell$ in $E$, $m$ the maximal ideal of $R$. Every $\overline{Q_\ell}$-sheaf $\mathcal{G}$ is
obtained as $\mathcal{F} \otimes_E \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$ for some $E$ and some torsion-free (i.e. flat) constructible $E$-sheaf $\mathcal{F}$. This means that $\mathcal{F} = \text{lim proj } \mathcal{F}_n$, the latter a flat $R$-sheaf. A lisse $R$-sheaf has all the $\mathcal{F}_n$ locally constant sheaves of $R/m^n$-modules, and for each $n$, the above discussion shows that the functor ‘fiber at $x$’ gives an equivalence of categories between the category of lisse $R/m^n$-sheaves and the category of $R/m^n$-modules of finite type together with a continuous action of $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$. Since the $\mathcal{F}_n$ have $\mathcal{F}_n \otimes_{R/m^{n+1}} R/m^n \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathcal{F}_{n-1}$, by passing to the limit we get an equivalence between the category of lisse $R$-sheaves and the category of finite $R$-modules with continuous action of $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$. 
Bibliography

[EGA]  *Eléments de géométrie algébrique* par A. Grothendieck.


[SGA5]  SGA 5, Exposé XV par C. Houzel.

[SGA $4\frac{1}{2}$] SGA 4½, *Rapport sur la formule des traces* par P. Deligne.
2. Quasi-unipotent monodromy

Some notes about Grothendieck’s theorem on quasi-unipotent monodromy. We study the arithmetic proof. It uses a proposition proved by Grothendieck in the appendix of Serre and Tate’s article *Good Reduction of Abelian Varieties*.

We may assume that $K$ is complete since, following Serre, *Corps Locaux*, II§3 Cor. 4, completing $K$ leaves the decomposition unchanged. Now, we may assume that any matrix in the image of $\rho$ has coefficients in $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ and is congruent to 1 mod $\ell^2$ as these are both open conditions, $\rho$ is continuous, and we are free to pass to an open subgroup of $I(\overline{\nu})$ by making a finite extension of $K$.

Note also that $\text{im} \, \rho$ is a pro-$\ell$ group since, while $\text{GL}(n, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ is not a pro-$\ell$-group, its first congruence subgroup of matrices congruent to 1 mod $\ell$ is a pro-$\ell$ group (cf., e.g., §5.1 of *Analytic Pro-$p$ Groups* by Dixon, du Sautoy, Mann & Segal). We see therefore that the prime-to-$\ell$ part of the order of $\text{GL}(n, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ is finite. As the image of a pro-$p$ group under a continuous homomorphism is pro-$p$, the continuous image of a pro-$p$ group in $\text{GL}(n, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ is finite. As $\text{im} \, \rho$ is by construction pro-$\ell$, the image of a pro-$p$ group in $\text{im} \, \rho$ is $f_{1g}$.

Now, if $L$ is a finite extension of $K_l$, we wish to show that the polynomial $f(T) = T^l - a$ splits in $L$ for any $a \in L$. If it does not, then as $f$ is separable and $L$ contains all $l^{th}$ roots of unity, $L(\sqrt[l]{a})$ is the splitting field of $f$ and is Galois. The automorphism of $L(\sqrt[l]{a})/L$ sending $\sqrt[l]{a} \mapsto \zeta_l \sqrt[l]{a}$, where $\zeta_l$ is a primitive $l^{th}$ root of unity, acts transitively on the roots of $f$, hence $f$ is irreducible. But $K_l$ is the $l$-part of the maximal tamely ramified extension of $K_{nr}$, hence $l$ cannot divide $[L : K_l]$. (Recall that $K_l$ is the maximal tamely ramified extension of $K$, and we have

$$\text{Gal}(K_l/K_{nr}) \cong \prod_{q \neq p} \mathbb{Z}_q(1) \quad \text{Gal}(K_l/K_l) \cong \prod_{q \neq p, l} \mathbb{Z}_q(1) \quad \text{Gal}(K_s/K_l) \text{ a pro-$p$ group}$$

as $q$ runs over primes, so $\text{Gal}(K_s/K_l)$ is an extension of a group isomorphic to $\prod_{q \neq p, l} \mathbb{Z}_q$ by a pro-$p$ group, and therefore has no finite quotient of order divisible by $l$.) This allows one to conclude that $l$ does not divide the order of $\text{Gal}(K_s/K_l)$. The order of $\text{im} \, \rho$ is a power of $l$ as it is a pro-$l$ group.
An alternative way to see that \( l \) does not divide the order of \( \text{Gal}(K_s/K_t) \) that is more faithful to the original proof proceeds by showing directly that for a finite extension \( L/K_l \), every element of \( L \) is an \( l \)-th power. To do this, let \( L = K_l[t]/a(t) \) for \( a(t) \) an irreducible separable polynomial \( a(t) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \ldots + a_0 \), and suppose \( t \) is not an \( l \)-th power in \( L \). This implies that the polynomial \( a_l(t) = a_n x^{ln} + a_{n-1} x^{l(n-1)} + \ldots + a_0 \) is irreducible and separable over \( K_l \). Let \( K'/K \) be a finite Galois extension containing all \( l \)-th roots of unity and the \( a_i \), and contained in \( K_l \). The extension \( K'[t]/a_l(t) \) is finite and separable and is contained in a finite Galois extension \( K'' \) of \( K' \) with \( l \) dividing \([K'' : K']\), so \( l \) divides the ramification index or the residual degree. If the latter, making a finite unramified extension of \( K'' \) produces a contradiction on the irreducibility of \( a_l(t) \) over \( K_l \). If the former, replacing \( K'' \) by \( K''[\pi^{1/l}] \subset K_l \) similarly yields a contradiction. Now to see that every finite Galois extension \( L \) of \( K_l \) cannot have \( l \) dividing its degree, note that \( \text{Gal}(L/K_l) \) contains a cyclic subgroup \( H \) of order \( l \), and we claim \( L = L^H \) for some element \( a \in L^H \). Let \( \sigma \) generate \( H \), and let \( b \in L - L^H \). Then the element

\[
c = \sum_{m=1}^{l} \zeta_l^m \sigma^m(b)
\]

satisfies \( c = \zeta_l \sigma(c) \), where \( \zeta_l \) is a primitive \( l \)-th root of unity. So

\[
c' = \prod_{m=1}^{l} \sigma^m(c) \in L^H,
\]

and letting \( a = c' \) we find that \( L^H(a^{1/l}) \) is a nontrivial subextension of \( L^H \), hence must actually coincide with \( L \).

Returning to the proof, the part about \( s \) and \( s^x(t) \) being conjugate in \( \text{Gal}(K_t/K) \) for each \( t \in \text{Gal}(k_s/k) \) is just a matter of understanding the action of \( \text{Gal}(K_t/K) \) on \( Z_l(1) \) (OBUS).

If \( \chi \) had kernel of finite index in \( \text{Gal}(k_s/k) \), it would be open and would correspond to a finite extension of \( k \) containing all \( \ell \)-th roots of unity, which is ruled out by (C_l).
Recall that

\[ Z^\ell = \begin{cases} 
\mu_{\ell-1} \times (1 - \ell Z_\ell) & \ell \neq 2 \\
\{\pm 1\} \times (1 + 4Z_2) & \ell = 2.
\end{cases} \]

Recall that the \( l \)-adic logarithm \( \log z \) converges for \( |z - 1|_l < 1 \) and that the \( l \)-adic exponential \( \exp z \) converges for \( |z|_l < l^{-1/(l-1)} \), and for \( z \) in the radius of convergence of \( \exp \), \( \exp \log (1 + z) = 1 + z \). As \( \rho(s) \equiv 1 \mod l^2 \), and \( |l^2|_l = l^{-2} < l^{-1/(l-1)} \), the same identities hold for \( \rho(s) \).
Bibliography

0.5. Let $X$ be a scheme of finite type over a field $k$. If $X$ is connected, the structure morphism $X \to \text{Spec}(k)$ admits a unique factorization $X \to \text{Spec}(k') \to \text{Spec}(k)$ with $k'/k$ finite separable and $X \to \text{Spec}(k')$ geometrically connected. \(\Rightarrow\) Stacks, tag 04PZ. Proof uses notion of ‘weakly étale $k$-algebra.’

1.1.2. First of all, to see that if $K \in D_c^b(X, R)$, then $K \otimes^L R/m^n \in D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$, see Stacks, tag 0942. Note that $K \otimes^L R/m^n$ can be represented by a bounded complex of flat constructible sheaves by Rapport, 4.7. Also recall that the locally constant sheaves form a weak Serre subcategory of the constructible sheaves on a site (093U).

Claim a). On the subject of the category $D_c^b(X, R)$, claim a) is that for each $i$, the projective system of cohomology sheaves $\mathcal{H}^i(K) := \text{“lim proj”} \mathcal{H}^i(K \otimes^L R/m^n)$ of a complex $K$ in $D_c^b(X, R)$ is an $R$-constructible sheaf. First a trivial statement: of course the reduction modulo $m^n$ of a complex of flat sheaves representing $K_n$ induces a map on cohomology, but a priori it need not induce an isomorphism $\mathcal{H}^i(K_n) \otimes R/m^n \to \mathcal{H}^i(K_n)$. For example, in

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & \to & \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n & \to & \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n & \to & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
0 & \to & \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1} & \to & \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1} & \to & 0
\end{array}
\]

the first nonzero cohomology in the top row is $\ell \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n \cong \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1}$, which gets mapped by the down arrow to $\ell \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1} \cong \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-2}$, even though the first nonzero cohomology in the bottom row is all of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1}$. Moreover, $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1} \cong \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^{n-1}$, so the map on cohomology after reduction mod $\ell^{n-1}$ is neither injective nor surjective.

It is important to note that in (1.1.1), the term ‘$R$-faisceau constructible’ is used to describe all pro-sheaves in the essential image of the functor $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \text{“lim proj”} \mathcal{F} \otimes R/m^n$. In Exposé V of SGA 5, Jouanolou studies $J$-adic projective systems, where $J$ is an ideal in a commutative ring $A$. All references in this paragraph will be to this exposé unless indicated otherwise. There is a conflict of indexing, in that Deligne in Weil II has $K_n$ annihilated by $m^n$, while Grothendieck, Jouanolou and Deligne in SGA 4 1/2 have $K_n$.
annihilated by $m^{n+1}$. As a predictable but no less unfortunate result, both conventions are effectively in force in different parts of these notes. Jouanolou begins with an abelian category $\mathcal{C}$ and forms $P = \text{Hom}(\mathbb{N}^\circ, \mathcal{C})$, the category of projective systems indeed by the ordered set $\mathbb{N}$ of positive integers with values in $\mathcal{C}$. Given an object $X = (X_n, u_n)_{n \geq 0}$ of $P$ and an integer $r \geq 0$, $X[r]$ denotes the projective system $(X_{n+r}, u_{n+r})_{n \geq 0}$. If $r, s$ are integers satisfying $s \geq r \geq 0$, then iterated application of the transition morphisms $u$ define a morphism $w_{sr} : X[s] \to X[r]$. For each integer $r \geq 0$ and $X$ in $P$, the morphism $w_{r0} : X[r] \to X$ is also denoted $V_{rX}$. With this notation, $X$ is said to satisfy the condition Mittag-Leffler-Artin-Rees (MLAR) if there exists an integer $r$ such that for each integer $s \geq r$,

$$\text{im}(X[s] \xrightarrow{w_{s0}} X) = \text{im}(X[r] \xrightarrow{w_{r0}} X).$$

In particular, if there exists an $r \geq 0$ such that the canonical morphism $X[r] \to X$ is null, $X$ is said to be AR-null. The full subcategory $P_0$ of $P$ whose objects are the AR-null projective systems is thick. The quotient category is called the category of projective systems in $\mathcal{C}$ up to translation and notated $\text{Hom}_{\text{AR}}(\mathbb{N}^\circ, \mathcal{C})$ or $P_{\text{AR}}$. It is abelian and the quotient functor $p_{\text{AR}} : P \to P_{\text{AR}}$ is exact (2.4.4). Equivalently, $P_{\text{AR}}$ is obtained from $P$ by a (left or right) calculus of fractions with respect to the set of morphisms $\{V_{rX}\}$, as $X$ runs over the set of objects in $P$ and $r$ over the set of integers $\geq 0$. Denote this set by $\text{AR}$. Now suppose $\rho$ equips $\mathcal{C}$ with the structure of $A$-category (1.1) and either that $J$ is of finite type or that $\mathcal{C}$ possesses infinite direct sums.

**Definition (3.1.1).** An object $X$ of $P$ is called $J$-adic if the following two conditions are verified.

(i) For every integer $n \geq 0$, $J^{n+1}X_n = 0$.

(ii) For every couple $(m, n)$ of integers with $m \geq n \geq 0$, the morphism $A/J^{n+1} \otimes_A X_m \to X_n$ deduced from the transition morphism $X_m \to X_n$ is an isomorphism.

If moreover the components of $X$ are noetherian objects of $\mathcal{C}$, then $X$ is called noetherian $J$-adic.

The full subcategory of $P$ (resp. of $P_{\text{AR}}$) generated by the $J$-adic projective systems (resp. the images of the noetherian $J$-adic systems) is notated $J-\text{ad}(\mathcal{C})$ (resp. $J-\text{adn}(\mathcal{C})$).
Two objects $X$ and $Y$ of the category $P$ are said to be AR-isomorphic if $p_{AR}(X)$ and $p_{AR}(Y)$ are isomorphic in the category $P_{AR}$.

**Definition (3.2.1-3.2.2).** An object $X$ of $P$ is called AR-J-adic if it satisfies the following conditions.

(i) $J^{n+1}X_n = 0$ for all $n \geq 0$.

(ii) There exists a J-adic projective system $Y$ isomorphic to $X$ in the category $P_{AR}$.

If moreover the components of $X$ are noetherian objects of $C$, then $X$ is called noetherian AR-J-adic.

The full subcategory of $P$ (resp. of $P_{AR}$) generated by the noetherian AR-J-adic projective systems (resp. by their images) is denoted $C_{E}$ (resp. AR-J-adn($C$)).

**Proposition (3.2.3).** — Let $X$ be in $P$. Suppose $J^{n+1}X_n = 0$ for all $n \geq 0$. In order for $X$ to be AR-J-adic, it is necessary and sufficient that it verify the property (MLAR) and that, denoting by $X'$ its projective system of universal images, there exist an integer $r \geq 0$ such that, for each pair $(m, n)$ of integers with $m \geq n + r$, the ‘transition morphism’ below be an isomorphism:

$$X'_m/J^{n+1}X'_m \rightarrow X'_{n+r}/J^{n+1}X'_{n+r}.$$ 

Note that if $X$ verifies (MLAR), it is AR-isomorphic to its projective system of universal images. The hypothesis made on $X'$ implies that the projective system $(X'_{n+r}/J^{n+1}X'_{n+r})_{n \geq 0}$ is J-adic. This projective system is AR-isomorphic to $X'$. This proves sufficiency.

The restriction of the functor $p_{AR}$ to $J$–ad or $J$–adn induces an equivalence

$$p_{AR}^n : J$–adn($C$) $\rightarrow$ AR–J–adn($C$).$$

Suppose $X, Y$ are noetherian J-adic projective systems. Then a morphism $X \rightarrow Y$ is represented for a certain integer $r$ by a morphism $X[r] \rightarrow Y$. As $J^{n+1}Y_n = 0$ for all $n \geq 0$ and $X$ is J-adic, this morphism is the composition of a morphism $X \rightarrow Y$ with $X[r] \rightarrow X$. Hence $p_{AR}^n$ is full. Moreover, a given morphism $X \rightarrow X$ goes to zero under
\( p^n_{AR} \) if it goes to zero in the inductive limit

\[
\lim_{\to r} \text{Hom}(X[r], Y);
\]

i.e. if precomposition by \( V_{rX} : X[r] \to X \) is null for some \( r \). Such is not the case when \( X \) is \( J \)-adic. Thus \( p^n_{AR} \) is faithful, and, as \( \text{AR-J-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \) is evidently the essential image, an equivalence.

**Proposition (5.2.1).** — The category \( \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{E} \) is stable by kernels and cokernels in \( P \). In other words, \( \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{E} \) is an abelian category and the inclusion functor \( \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{E} \to P \) is exact.

**Theorem (5.2.3).** — The categories \( J\text{-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \) and \( \text{AR-J-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \) are abelian and noetherian.

We have enough to prove the first statement. (5.2.1) implies on the spot that the category \( \text{AR-J-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \) is abelian: given an arrow \( A \to B \) in \( \text{AR-J-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \), up to isomorphism of \( A \) and \( B \) this arrow comes from an arrow in \( P \) with kernel and cokernel in \( \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{E} \); as the functors \( \mathcal{C}_\mathcal{E} \to P \to P_{AR} \) are exact, the kernel and cokernel lie in \( \text{AR-J-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \). Therefore \( J\text{-adn}(\mathcal{C}) \) must also be abelian as the two categories are equivalent.

**Remark.** If \( A \) is a noetherian (commutative) ring complete and separated with respect to an ideal \( J \) such that \( A/J \) is artinian, then the following is true and provides a kind of ‘spiritual underpinning’ for the category \( J\text{-adn} \).

**Proposition.** — The functor \( \lim \) induces an equivalence between the categories \( \text{AR-J-adn}(A\text{-mod}) \) and the category of finite \( A \)-modules.

Specializing to the category \( \text{Ab}(X) \) of abelian sheaves on \( X_{\text{et}}, X \) a scheme, when \( X \) is noetherian, the abelian noetherian sheaves are the abelian constructible sheaves \([SGAA]\), IX 2.9]. Let \( \text{Abc}(X) \) denote the category of abelian constructible sheaves and \( \ell\text{-adc}(X) \) the full subcategory of \( \text{Hom}(N^\infty, \text{Abc}(X)) \) generated by the constructible \( \ell \)-adic sheaves. Then we have shown that, when \( X \) is noetherian,

\[
\ell\text{-adc}(X) = (\ell\mathbf{Z})\text{-ad} (\text{Abc}(X)) = (\ell\mathbf{Z})\text{-adn}(\text{Ab}(X)) ,
\]
the first equality holding with no assumptions on \( X \). In \( P \), given an exact sequence
\[ 0 \to X \to Y \to Z \to 0 \]
with \( X \) strict and \( Y \) \( J \)-adic, \( Z \) is \( J \)-adic. Let \( u : \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{G} \) be a morphism of \( \ell \)-adic sheaves on a scheme \( X \). We apply the above formalism in the case
\[ A = R, \ J = m, \ C = \text{Ad}(X), \ P = \text{Hom}(N^\circ, \text{Ad}(X)). \]
Let \( \mathcal{F}' := \text{im} \ u \) and \( \mathcal{G}' := \text{coker} \ u \) computed in the category \( P \). Then the following diagram has exact rows and commutes.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
0 & \mathcal{F}_n & \mathcal{G}_n & \mathcal{G}_n' & 0 \\
\downarrow f_{nm} & \downarrow g_{nm} & \downarrow h_{nm} & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{F}'_n & \mathcal{G}_n' & 0 & 0 & & 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

As \( f_{nm} \) is an epimorphism and \( g_{nm} \) an isomorphism, the snake lemma implies that \( h_{nm} \)
is an isomorphism; therefore \( \mathcal{G}' \) is a cokernel of \( u \) in \( m \)-adic \( X \). On a noetherian \( X \), we have the following simple description of \( \ker u \). Let \( \mathcal{K} := \ker u \) in \( P \); \( \mathcal{K} \) is \( AR-m \)-adic. Denoting by \( \mathcal{K}' \) the system of universal images of \( \mathcal{K} \), grâce à (3.2.3) there exists an integer \( r \) such that the projective system
\[ m_r(\mathcal{K}') := (\mathcal{K}'_{n+r} / m^{n+1} \mathcal{K}'_{n+r})_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \]
is \( m \)-adic constructible. The composition below is a kernel of \( u \) in \( m \)-adic \( X \):
\[ m_r(\mathcal{K}') \to \mathcal{K}' \to \mathcal{K}. \]

Returning to the setting of Deligne’s article, note that the AR-null sheaves become null objects in the category of pro-sheaves on \( X \), as morphisms in that category between two objects \( X := (X_i)_{i \in I}, \ Y := (Y_j)_{j \in J} \) indexed by sets \( I, J \) both equipped with filtered preorders are given by
\[ \text{Pro Hom}(X, Y) := \lim_{\leftarrow j} \lim_{\rightarrow i} (X_i, Y_j), \]
and if \( X \) is an AR-null object of \( P \), it is clear that the identity morphism goes to zero in
\[ \text{Pro Hom}(X, X), \]
so by the universal property of \( P_{\text{AR}} \), the \( AR-m \)-adn(\( \text{Ab}(X) \)) sheaves are in the essential image of the \( m \)-adic constructible sheaves in the category of pro-sheaves.

Returning to claim a), the reduction to the punctual case requires a few words. The equivalence between the categories we have seen above specializes to an equivalence
$\mathbb{Z}$-fc $\to$ (AR, $\mathbb{Z}$)-fc, where the latter is really the category AR-$m$-ad(\text{Abc}(X))=\text{AR}$-m$-adn(\text{Ab}(X)) \text{[SGA5 VI, 1.5.5]}, so given the projective system $(\mathcal{K}_n)$ where $\mathcal{K}_n = H^i(K \otimes^\mathbb{L} \mathbb{R}/m^n)$, letting $j : U \to X$ be an open over which $\mathcal{K}_0$ is locally constant, $i : X - U \to X$ the inclusion of the complement, by the stability of the property AR-$m$-adic in short exact sequences [SGA5 V, 3.2.4], in order to conclude that $\mathcal{K}_n$ is an (AR, $\mathbb{R}$)-constructible sheaf suffices to show that the projective systems $(j_* j^* \mathcal{K}_n)$ and $(i^* i_* \mathcal{K}_n)$ are (AR, $\mathbb{R}$)-constructible. This allows us to reduce to the situation where $(\mathcal{K}_n)$ is a projective system of locally constant constructible sheaves, since the functors $i_*, j_!$ send $m$-adic sheaves to $m$-adic sheaves and AR-null sheaves to AR-null sheaves (this can be checked pointwise), now use [SGA5 V, 2.4.5]. By ‘gluing’ (c.f. proof of [SGA5 VI, 1.5.5]), we can reduce to proving over an open cover trivializing $\mathcal{K}_0$. More concretely, we can cover our space by finitely many opens over which $\mathcal{K}_0$ is constant, and if we can show that $\mathcal{K}_0$ is AR-$m$-adic over each, then the construction (3.2.3) above allows us to find an integer for each open in our cover; taking the maximum $r$ of these, replacing $(\mathcal{K}_n)$ by its system of universal images $(\mathcal{K}_0')$, and forming $(\mathcal{K}_0'/m^n, \mathcal{K}_0'/m^n)$, we have produced an $\mathbb{R}$-constructible sheaf which is AR-isomorphic to the system $(\mathcal{K}_n)$.

In the punctual case, the results of [SGA5 XV p. 473] allow us to suppose that we have a projective system $(K_r)_{r \in \mathbb{N}}$, where $K_r$ is a complex of free $\mathbb{R}/m^r$-modules of finite type, null outside of an interval $[a, b]$ independent of $r$, with transition morphisms $K_{r+1} \to K_r$ isomorphic (as morphisms of complexes) to $K_{r+1} \to K_{r+1}/m^{r+1}K_{r+1}$, for all $r \in \mathbb{N}$. We will show that the projective system of cohomology “lim proj” $H^i(K_r)$ is AR-$m$-adic, which will imply that it is an $\mathbb{R}$-constructible sheaf in Deligne’s sense; i.e. that it is isomorphic, as a pro-object, to a bona fide $\mathbb{R}$-constructible sheaf. Abusively, put $K := \lim \leftarrow K_r$ (before, $K$ refers to the stalk of an object in $D^b_\mathbb{R}(X, \mathbb{R})$). A key ingredient is EGA 0III 13.2.3, which says that if a projective system of complexes such as $(K_r)$ satisfies the Mittag-Leffler condition, and if the projective system $(H^{i-1}(K_r))$ does too, then the canonical map $H^i(K) \to \lim \leftarrow H^i(K_r)$ is bijective. As in our situation, the $K_r$ are complexes of finite groups and their cohomology modules $H^i(K_r)$ are also finite groups, the Mittag-Leffler condition is automatic. Our hypotheses on the complexes $K_r$ imply the existence of isomorphisms $K_{r+s} \otimes_{\mathbb{R}/m^{r+s}} \mathbb{R}/m^s \sim K_s$ and the exactness of the
sequence
\[ 0 \to K_{r+s} \otimes_{R/m^r s} R/m^s \to K_{r+s} \otimes_{R/m^r s} R/m^r \to 0 \]
for \( 1 \leq r, s \). The projective limit as \( s \to \infty \) of the associated cohomology sequence is still exact by the fact that everything is still finite (ML). This projective limit can be broken up into short exact sequences
\[ 0 \to H^i(K)/m^r \to H^i(K_r) \to H^{i+1}(K)[m^r] \to 0. \]  
Note that \( \text{Tor}_1^R(M, R/m^r R) \cong M[m^r] \) for \( M \) an \( R \)-module. Since the modules \( H^{i+1}(K)[m^r] \) stabilize as \( r \gg 0 \) and the transition morphisms on \( (\text{Tor}_1^R(H^{i+1}(K), R/m^r))_{r \in \mathbb{N}} \) are multiplication by \( m \), this projective system is evidently AR-null. As the projective system \( (H^i(K)/m^r)_{r \in \mathbb{N}} \) is evidently \( m \)-adic, \( (H^i(K_r))_{r \in \mathbb{N}} \) is AR-\( m \)-adic, and hence its image in the category of pro-sheaves “\( \text{lim proj} \)” \( H^i(K)/m^r \) is isomorphic to the image of the \( m \)-adic system “\( \text{lim proj} \)” \( H^i(K)/m^r \), which shows the former is \( m \)-adic in Deligne’s sense.

**Remark.** To see that each transition morphism on the projective system
\[ (\text{Tor}_1^R(H^{i+1}(K), R/m^r))_{r \in \mathbb{N}} \]
is multiplication by \( m \), note that by the equivalence \( K^-(\mathcal{P}) \to D^-(R\text{-mod}) \), where \( K^-(\mathcal{P}) \) is the full triangulated subcategory of \( K^-(R\text{-mod}) \) generated by the complexes with projective objects in all degrees, there is, up to homotopy, a unique map of projective resolutions of \( R/m^r \) and \( R/m^{r-1} \) inducing the desired map \( R/m^r \to R/m^{r-1} \), namely
\[
\begin{align*}
0 \to R \xrightarrow{m^r} R \xrightarrow{id} 0 \\
0 \to R \xrightarrow{m^{r-1}} R \xrightarrow{id} 0.
\end{align*}
\]
Tensoring by \( H^{i+1}(K) \) we find that the map on \( \text{Tor}_1^R \) is indeed multiplication by \( m \).

**Claim c.** Let \( f : Y \to X \) be an arrow between schemes of finite type over \( S \) with \( S \) regular of dimension \( \leq 1 \). Claim c) is that about the categories \( D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n) \) being stable by the six functors, and that these functors also commute with reduction modulo \( m^n \). This can be broken into 3 claims about the six functors: (1) that they preserve
constructibility, (2) that they preserve finite tor-dimension, and (3) that they commute with reduction modulo $m^n$. The discussion of Th. finitude 1.1, 1.5–1.7 covers claims 1 & 2 for the four functors $Rf_\ast$, $f^\ast$, $Rf_!$, $Rf^!$, as well as $R\mathcal{H}om$. Claim 3 for $R\mathcal{H}om$ is discussed below. The case of $\otimes^L$ is more or less trivial. Claim 3 for the four functors

is the presence of isomorphisms like $R/m^n \otimes^L Rf_!(K \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}) \simto Rf_!(K \otimes^L R/m^n)$ in $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$. Because of the finitude hypotheses (c.f. note to Th. finitude 1.3), we can apply the recipe of Rapport 4.12 to construct the arrow in $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ in the cases of $Rf_\ast$, $Rf_!$. To see the arrow is an isomorphism, we can then copy the reasoning of Rapport 4.9.1. The case of $f^\ast$ is trivial, since after replacing $K \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}$ by a bounded complex of flat sheaves $M$, we have isomorphisms

$$f^\ast(K \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}) \otimes^L R/m^n \simto f^\ast(M) \otimes R/m^n \simto f^\ast(M \otimes R/m^n) \simto f^\ast(K \otimes^L R/m^n),$$

as tensor product commutes with inductive limits. As for $Rf^!$, to simplify the notation, let $K_{n+1}$ denote $K \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}$. We obtain an arrow

$$R/m^n \otimes^L_{R/m^{n+1}} Rf^!(K_{n+1}) \rightarrow Rf^!(K_{n+1} \otimes^L R/m^n)$$

in $D^+(Y, R/m^n)$ from the adjunction

$$\text{Hom}_{D^r(X, R/m^n)}(Rf_!L, M) \simeq \text{Hom}_{D^r(Y, R/m^n)}(L, Rf^!M)$$

with $L = R/m^n \otimes^L_{R/m^{n+1}} Rf^!(K_{n+1})$ and $M = K_{n+1} \otimes^L R/m^n$ in the following way:

$$R/m^n \otimes^L Rf^!K_{n+1} \rightarrow Rf^!Rf_!(R/m^n \otimes^L Rf^!K_{n+1}) \simto$$

$$\simto Rf^!(R/m^n \otimes^L Rf_!Rf^!K_{n+1}) \rightarrow Rf^!(R/m^n \otimes^L K_{n+1}).$$

As claims 1 & 2 have been verified, this actually yields an arrow in $D^b_{ctf}(Y, R/m^n)$. We can localize this morphism with respect to $u : U \rightarrow Y$ étale, as $Ru^! = u^*\ast$, which we know commutes with reduction modulo $m^n$, and in this way, replacing $Y$ by $U$, assume $f$ factors as $U \xrightarrow{i} Z \xrightarrow{h} X$ with $i$ a closed immersion and $h$ smooth of relative dimension $d$. As the above morphisms are natural, and the composition of the unit and counit $Rf_! \rightarrow Rf^!Rf_!Rf^! \rightarrow Rf^!$ is the identity transformation of $Rf_!$, and $Rf^! = Rh^!Rh\ast$ (since the left adjoint $i_\ast$ of $i^!$ is exact), it suffices to show that $Rh^!$ and $Rh\ast$ commute with reduction modulo $m^n$. The case of $Rh^!$ is trivial since $Rh^!K_{n+1} = K_{n+1}(d)[2d]$. Turning
to $R^i$, let $j : Z - U \hookrightarrow X$ denote the open immersion of the complement of $U$; we have a commutative diagram with distinguished triangles for rows

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
R/m^n \otimes^L i_* R^i K_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & R/m^n \otimes^L K_{n+1} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \sim \\
i_* R^i (K_{n+1} \otimes^L R/m^n) & \longrightarrow & R/m^n \otimes^L K_{n+1} \\
\end{array}
\longrightarrow R/j_* j^* K_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d} R/j_* j^* (K_{n+1} \otimes^L R/m^n) \xrightarrow{d} .
$$

We obtain an isomorphism $R/m^n \otimes^L i_* R^i K_{n+1} \sim i_* R^i (K_{n+1} \otimes^L R/m^n)$ from (TR3).

Returning now to $R \mathcal{H}om$, here is a useful lemma which adapts Th. finitude 4.6.

**Lemma.** — Let $X$ be a noetherian scheme, $\Lambda$ a left noetherian ring, and $K \in D^{-}(X, \Lambda)$. Then the following are equivalent.

1. $K$ is of finite Tor-dimension and the sheaves $\mathcal{H}^i(K)$ are locally constant constructible.

2. $K$ is locally isomorphic to a bounded complex of locally constant, flat $\Lambda$-modules; i.e. there is a finite étale covering $\{U_i \to X\}$ such that $K|_{U_i}$ is isomorphic (in $D^{-}(U_i, \Lambda)$) to a bounded complex of constant sheaves of projective $\Lambda$-modules of finite type.

The argument follows Th. finitude 4.5, except now the $\mathcal{H}^i(K)$ are moreover locally constant constructible. The sheaves $A$ and $B$ are defined by the cartesian diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
K^n & \longrightarrow & K^n/\ker d \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
A & \longrightarrow & \ker d \\
\end{array}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\longrightarrow & \longrightarrow \\
\sim & \sim \\
B & \longrightarrow & \ker d \\
\end{array}
$$

and $B$ is locally free as it sits in the middle of the exact sequence

$$
0 \to \mathcal{H}^n(K) \xrightarrow{(id,0)} B \to \ker d \to \mathcal{H}^{n+1}(K)
$$

where $\ker d$ here denotes the kernel of the differential on the complex $K'$ being constructed and is hence locally constant constructible.
As \( u \) is surjective, localizing, we may assume \( B \) constant constructible and that \( u \) surjects on global sections, defining a morphism \( v : A^{\otimes d} \to A \) with the property that \( vu \) is an epimorphism, and we define \( K^m = A^{\otimes d} \).

Suppose \( K \) is of Tor-dimension \( \leq r \). Propagating the above procedure to the left as far as degree \(-r - 1\), we produce an \( \acute{e}tale \) morphism \( U \to X \), constant constructible sheaves

\[
K^{r-r-1} \to K^{r-r} \to K^{r-r+1} \to \ldots
\]

with the property that \( K^{r-r} / \text{im} \ d \) is constant constructible and flat. Then, over \( U \), the complex

\[
\ldots \to 0 \to K^{r-r} / \text{im} \ d \to K^{r-r+1} \to K^{r-r+2} \to \ldots
\]

is quasi-isomorphic to \( K \), and has the desired properties.

**Corollary (Th. finitude 1.7).** — If \( \Lambda \) is moreover commutative and of torsion, and in the situation of Th. finitude, then

\[
R \mathcal{H}om : D^b_{ctf}(X, \Lambda) \times D^b_{tf}(X, \Lambda) \to D^b_{tf}(X, \Lambda).
\]

Following Th. finitude 1.7, as the finite Tor-dimension is stable by \( R f_* \), \( R f! \), \( f^* \), \( R f^! \), devissant the first variable (say, \( \mathcal{F} \)) relative to a partition of \( X \), and using the adjunction

\[
R \mathcal{H}om(j_! \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \cong R j_* R \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, R j^! \mathcal{G})
\]

for \( j : Y \to X \) the inclusion of a locally closed subscheme (c.f. SGA 4, IX 2.5 & XVIII §3.1), one reduces to the situation where the \( H^i(\mathcal{F}) \) are locally constant. Localizing, we can replace \( \mathcal{F} \) by a bounded complex of constant sheaves of projective \( \Lambda \)-modules of finite type. As in this case \( \mathcal{H}om \) computes pointwise, we can compute \( R \mathcal{H}om \) with respect to such a complex. Finally, if \( N \) and \( M \) are \( \Lambda \)-modules, \( N \) projective and \( M \) of Tor-dimension \( \leq r \), then \( \mathcal{H}om(N, M) \) is of Tor-dimension \( \leq r \), which can be seen after replacing \( M \) by a complex of flat modules \( 0 \) to the left of \(-r \) and writing \( N \) as a direct summand of a free module.

Returning to the setting of the paper, with \( R \) the ring of integers of a finite extension of \( \mathbb{Q}_p \), \( m \) its maximal ideal, let’s assume that reduction mod \( m^n \) commutes with the four
operations $Rf_*, f^*, Rf_!,$ and $Rf^!,$ and show that for $\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G} \in D^b_c(X, R)$,

$$R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F} \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}, \mathscr{G} \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}) \otimes_{R/m^{n+1}} R/m^n$$

$$= R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F} \otimes^L R/m^n, \mathscr{G} \otimes^L R/m^n) \text{ in } D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n). \quad (\dagger)$$

Devisant $\mathscr{F} \otimes^L R/m$ with respect to a partition of $X,$ we may assume that its cohomology sheaves are locally constant, and therefore the same is true of $\mathscr{F} \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}$ by considering the $m$-adic filtration on a finite complex of flat sheaves representing it. Localizing, we may replace $\mathscr{F} \otimes^L R/m^{n+1}$ with a bounded complex $N^*$ of free $R/m^{n+1}$-modules of finite type and compute $R \mathcal{H}om$ with respect to $N^*,$ so for $\mathscr{F}$ locally free, $\mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G})_x = \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}_x, \mathcal{G}_x).$ Now the equality $(\dagger)$ is clear.

Consider the example: $X$ finite type over $S,$ $\mathscr{F}$ and $\mathscr{G}$ two constructible torsion-free $R$-sheaves. The claim is that the projective system

$$\text{Ext}^i(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) := \mathcal{H}^i R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) = \lim \text{proj } \text{Ext}^i_{R/m^n}(\mathscr{F} \otimes R/m^n, \mathscr{G} \otimes R/m^n)$$

forms a constructible $R$-sheaf. By part (a) of 1.1.2, it suffices to show that $R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F}, \mathscr{G}) \in D^c(X, R).$ By Th. finitude 1.6 and the previous corollary, $R \mathcal{H}om$ sends $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n) \times D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ into $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n),$ so $R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F} \otimes R/m^n, \mathscr{G} \otimes R/m^n) \in D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n).$

Finally, by $(\dagger),$

$$\lim \text{proj } R \mathcal{H}om(\mathscr{F} \otimes R/m^n, \mathscr{G} \otimes R/m^n) \in D^-(X, R).$$

**Truncation & Tor-dimension.** In part (e), Deligne addresses the truncation operators $\tau_{\leq n}.$ The issue is that, while a submodule of a flat $R$-module is flat, a submodule of a flat $R/m^n$-module need not be. To address this deficiency, Deligne introduces the modified truncation operators $\tau'_{\leq n},$ which preserve the finite Tor-dimension. As these properties are of a pointwise nature, we may consider the situation in the category of $R$-modules, and the categories $D_{\text{part}}(R), D_{\text{part}}(R/m^k).$ Applying Houzel’s argument at the end of SGA 5, Exp. XV to the stalk of $K \in D^b_c(X, R),$ we may represent $K_k = K \otimes^L R/m^k$ by a bounded complex of free $R/m^k$-modules and the isomorphisms $K_{k+1} \otimes_{R/m^k} R/m^k \cong K_k$ by isomorphisms of complexes $K_{k+1} \otimes R/m^k \to K_k.$ Taking the projective limit of these complexes, we obtain a bounded complex of free $R$ modules which we will again, as in the notes to claim a), (abusively) note $K.$ (To see freeness, note that if $r$ equals the
rank of $K_i^i = K^i \otimes R/m$, there exists by Nakayama an exact sequence

$$N \rightarrow R^r \rightarrow K^i \rightarrow 0$$

which after tensoring by $R/m^k$ induces an isomorphism $(R/m^k)^r \sim K_k^i$, showing $N \subseteq m^k R$ for all $k$ and hence $N = 0$.) As before, by the Mittag-Leffler condition, $H^i(K) = \lim H^i(K_k)$. Therefore, the submodule of $\ker d$ consisting of cycles whose image in $H^n(K_k)$ are in $\im(H^i K \rightarrow H^n(K_k))$ is the reduction modulo $m^k$ of a flat $R$-module, as these cycles coincide with the reduction mod $m^k$ of cycles of $K^i$, which form a free submodule of $K^i$. More precisely, in view of the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
K^{n-1} & \xrightarrow{d^{n-1}} & K^n \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
K^{n-1} \otimes R/m^n & \xrightarrow{d^{n-1} \otimes \text{id}} & K^n \otimes R/m^n
\end{array}$$

the submodule of $\ker (d^i \otimes \text{id})$ consisting of cycles whose image in $H^i$ lie in $\im(H^i(K) \rightarrow H^i(K_k))$ is the submodule $(\ker d^n) \otimes R/m^k + \im(d^{n-1} \otimes \text{id}) \subseteq K^n \otimes R/m^k$. As $\im(d^{n-1} \otimes \text{id}) \subseteq (\ker d^n) \otimes R/m^k$, confirming the above description and recognizing $\tau'_{\leq n} K_k$ as a bounded complex of free $R/m^k$ modules. It may be that $\tau'_{\leq n} K_k$ is no longer quasi-isomorphic to $K_k$, but it is clear by construction that the pro-sheaf $H^n(K_k)$ is not affected by the operator $\tau'_{\leq n}$; more precisely, by the exact sequence (*) of claim a), $H^n(\tau'_{\leq n} K_k) \approx H^n(K) \otimes_R R/m^k$ and hence both are AR-isomorphic to $H^n(K_k)$.

**1.1.3.** Extension of scalars from $R$ to $E$ for a constructible $R$-sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ is more or less straightforward: letting $E = Q_{\ell}$, $R = Z_{\ell}$, the idea is that if $F$ is $Z_{\ell}$-constructible, the torsion subsheaves $\mathrm{Tor}_1^{Z_{\ell}}(\mathcal{F}, Z/\ell^n) = \ker \ell^n$ stabilize for some $n$, and then multiplication by $\ell$ on $\mathcal{F}$ means multiplying $\mathcal{F} \otimes Z/\ell^m$ by $\ell^n$ for each $m$ to produce an AR-$\ell$-adic sheaf, and then forming the associated $\ell$-adic sheaf, to produce the exact sequence of $\ell$-adic sheaves

$$0 \rightarrow \mathrm{Tor}_1^{Z_{\ell}}(\mathcal{F}, Z/\ell^n) \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}/\ker \ell^n \rightarrow 0.$$ 

The story in $D^b_c(X, Z_{\ell})$ works more or less the same way. For an object $K$ in this category, we represent $K_m = K \otimes L Z/\ell^m$ by a complex of $Z/\ell^m$-flat sheaves (i.e. with free stalks); multiplication by $\ell^n$ means multiplying $K_m$ by $\ell^n$. This induces multiplication by $\ell$ on
the cohomology, and we’re back in the previous situation, since the cohomology sheaves form AR-$\ell$-adic systems. More generally, if $a$ is in $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$, letting $a_m$ denote the image of $a$ in $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^m$, the commutativity of the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
K_{m+1} & \xrightarrow{a_{m+1}} & K_{m+1} \\
\downarrow \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m & & \downarrow \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m \\
K_m & \xrightarrow{a_m} & K_m
\end{array}
$$

shows that $a$ induces an endomorphism of $D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$.

1.1.7. A representation $\mathbb{Z} \to \text{GL}(V)$, sending $n$ to $F^n$, where $V$ is a $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-vector space of dimension $n$, is continuous if and only if the eigenvalues of $F$ are $\ell$-adic units.

To see sufficiency, note that we can choose a basis for $V$ so that the morphism $\mathbb{Z} \to \text{GL}(V)$ factors through $\text{GL}(\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n) = \lim \text{GL}((\mathbb{Z}/\ell^m)^n)$, a profinite group, and we may extend $\mathbb{Z} \to G$ to a morphism $\hat{\mathbb{Z}} \to G$ for any profinite group $G$ by the universal property of profinite completion, which we state and prove now.

The profinite completion of a group $H$ (with respect to normal subgroups of finite index in $H$) is denoted $\hat{H}$, so that $H \to \hat{H}$ has dense image. The profinite completion $\hat{H}$ enjoys the universal property that for every profinite group $G$ and continuous homomorphism $H \to G$, there is a unique homomorphism $\hat{H} \to G$ making the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H & \xrightarrow{} & \hat{H} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
G & \xrightarrow{} & G
\end{array}
$$

commute.

To see this, simply use the description of $G$ as $\lim G/N$ as $N$ ranges over open normal subgroups of $G$. The preimage $M$ of $N$ in $H$ is an open normal subgroup of finite index, as $G/N$ is finite. Therefore $H \to G/N$ factors through $H/M$, and to give a continuous morphism from $\hat{H}$ to $G$ it suffices to give compatible continuous maps $\hat{H} \to G/N$. Continuity is assured by the above remark; compatibility is assured by the map $H \to G$, which determines the maps $\hat{H} \to G/N$. 
Returning to (1.1.7), to see necessity, we assume we have found a continuous extension $\rho$.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \text{GL}(V) \\
\downarrow & \nearrow & \\
\hat{\mathbb{Z}} & \hspace{1cm} & \rho
\end{array}
\]

The image $\rho(\hat{\mathbb{Z}})$ is compact, so the set $\rho(\hat{\mathbb{Z}})\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n$ is compact, for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n$ a $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-lattice in $V$, so $\rho(\hat{\mathbb{Z}})\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n \subset \frac{1}{m}\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n$ for some $m$. Letting $L$ denote the $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-span of $\rho(\hat{\mathbb{Z}})\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n$, $L$ is a $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-submodule of $\frac{1}{m}\mathbb{Z}_\ell^n$, hence free (of rank $n$). This recognizes $F \in \rho(\hat{\mathbb{Z}})$ as an element of $\text{Aut}(L)$, so the eigenvalues of $F$ are $\ell$-adic units indeed.

1.1.8. The second paragraph continues the first; i.e. the point $y$ remains in force, and if $\overline{y}$ denotes a geometric point centered on $y$, the point $y$ determines a unique element of $\pi_1(X, \overline{y})$; viz. the image of $F$ under $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k) \to \pi_1(X, \overline{y})$. The groups $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$ and $\pi_1(X, \overline{y})$ are isomorphic, but not canonically: one must make a choice of path $\gamma$ from $\overline{y}$ to $\overline{x}$. Two different choices give rise to two different maps, which differ by conjugation by an element of $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$. This is why $F_y$ is determined canonically in $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$ only up to conjugation. See the introduction of Stix, *Rational Points and Arithmetic of Fundamental Groups*.

1.1.13. As discussed in the note to 1.1.8, $F_y$ is determined canonically in $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$ only up to conjugation in $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$. Any element of its conjugacy class $[F_y]$ also belongs to $W(X_0, \overline{x})$, but in order for the conjugacy class of $F_y$ to be well-defined in $W(X_0, \overline{x})$, all the different choices of $F_y$ should be in the same $W(X_0, \overline{x})$-conjugacy class; i.e. if the set of orbits for the action of $W(X_0, \overline{x})$ on $[F_y]$ by conjugation is denoted by $\mathcal{O}$, $|\mathcal{O}|$ should equal 1. As $W(X_0, \overline{x})$ is a normal subgroup of $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$, the latter group acts on $\mathcal{O}$ by conjugation. Evidently this action factors through the quotient by geometric monodromy, giving an action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/F_q)$ on $\mathcal{O}$ that factors through the quotient by the image of the centralizer (in $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$) of $F_y$ (any two choices of $F_y$ are conjugate by an element of $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$, and their centralizers are conjugate by this same element, so the image of their centralizers is the same in $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/F_q)$). This image is an open subgroup
and $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$ acts via the quotient $\hat{\mathbb{Z}}/\deg y \cdot \hat{\mathbb{Z}} = \mathbb{Z}/\deg y \cdot \mathbb{Z}$. As $W(X_0, \overline{x})$ surjects onto this quotient, the action of $\pi_1(X_0, \overline{x})$ on $\mathbb{O}$ is trivial and $|\mathbb{O}| = 1$. See Stix, §1.4, §3.3.

1.2.5. (i) Stability under reciprocal image follows since the stalk doesn’t change, the cardinality of the residue field (at a closed point) increases by the same power as does the Frobenius.

(ii) Stability under direct image by a finite morphism: by base change one reduces to $f : \text{Spec} F_{q^n} \to \text{Spec} F_q$ for some $n$ and a representation $V$ of $F^n$, where $F$ is the geometric Frobenius on $\text{Spec} F_q$. Suppose that $V$ is $\iota$-pure of weight $w$. Then $f_*V = V \otimes_{\text{Gal}(F/F_{q^n})} \text{Gal}(F/F_q)$ which is isomorphic to $V$ tensored with the permutation representation of $\text{Gal}(F/F_{q^n})/\text{Gal}(F/F_q) \cong \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}$. As $F^n$ acts on this induced representation with all eigenvalues $\iota$-pure of weight $w$ rel. $q^n$, $F$ acts with all eigenvalues $\iota$-pure of weight $w$ rel. $q$.

1.2.6. ‘On notera que, pour $k$ un corps fini, une representation $V$ de $W(\overline{k}, k)$ est automatiquement $\iota$-mixte.’ This follows from the existence of Jordan normal form.

1.2.9. This conjecture is now proved by L. Lafforgue. If $\mathcal{F}_0$ is an irreducible lisse sheaf on a $F_q$-variety $X_0$, then after a twist (which will be an $\ell$-adic unit when $\mathcal{F}_0$ is an étale sheaf and not merely a Weil sheaf), the maximal exterior power of $\mathcal{F}_0$ is defined by a character of finite order (1.3.6). Lafforgue proves (see Laumon, La correspondance de Langlands sur les corps de fonctions, §1.3) that when $X_0$ is normal, such an irreducible lisse sheaf with maximal exterior power defined by a character of finite order is pure of weight 0. This implies that $\mathcal{F}_0$ was pure before the twist, so that every irreducible lisse sheaf on $X_0$ is pure, and therefore, every lisse sheaf on $X_0$ is mixed. Of course if $X_0$ is not normal, with normalization $f : X'_0 \to X_0$, and $\mathcal{F}_0$ is lisse, then $\mathcal{F}_0 \leftarrow f_* f^* \mathcal{F}_0$, so $\mathcal{F}_0$ is mixed. This shows that every lisse sheaf on a $F_q$-variety is mixed, and hence that every constructible sheaf on a $F_q$-variety is mixed.

1.3.9. (When reading the corollary, recall that a semisimple algebraic group is connected by definition.) We wish to understand why $G^{00}$ is reductive. Note first that the sum of the simple $\pi_1(X, \overline{x})$-modules is $W$-stable since if $w \in W$ and $V$ is
a $\pi_1(X,\bar{x})$-module, then $wV$ is again a $\pi_1(X,\bar{x})$-module since $\pi_1(X,\bar{x})$ is a normal subgroup of $W$; applying this argument with $w^{-1}$ shows that $wV$ is simple iff $V$ is. 

Next observe that if $\rho : W(X_0,\bar{x}) \to \text{GL}(\mathcal{F}_X)$ is the representation defining $\mathcal{F}_0$, then $\rho(\pi_1(X,\bar{x}))$ and its Zariski closure $G^0$ have the same invariant subspaces (to see this, form a basis for $\mathcal{F}_X$ beginning with a basis for an invariant subspace). Therefore we see that $G^0$ acts semisimply since $W(X_0,\bar{x})$ does by assumption.

Now recall that $R(G^0)$, the radical of $G^0$, is a connected and solvable normal subgroup of $G^0$. By the argument above, any normal subgroup of $G^0$ acts semisimply; combining this with the Lie-Kolchin theorem, we see that $\mathcal{F}_X$ decomposes as a direct sum of one-dimensional irreducible $R(G^0)$-modules. The unipotent part of $R(G^0)$, which is the unipotent radical $R_u(G^0)$, must therefore act by the identity, and we see that $R_u(G^0) = R_u(G^{00}) = \{1\}$; i.e. that $G^{00}$ is reductive. Note we have proved the following

**Lemma.** — If $V$ is a finite-dimensional vector space over an algebraically closed field and $G$ is a closed subgroup of $\text{GL}(V)$, then $G$ is reductive.

This result appears in [Milne, 21.60] as

**Proposition.** — Let $G$ be a connected group variety over a perfect field $k$. The following conditions on $G$ are equivalent.

1. $G$ is reductive;
2. The radical $R(G)$ of $G$ is a torus;
3. $G$ is an almost-direct product of a torus and a semisimple group;
4. $G$ admits a semisimple representation with finite kernel.

More is true. In fact, for $G$ a connected reductive group, say, over an algebraically closed field $k$, the maximal central $k$-torus $Z$ coincides with $(ZG)^\circ$, the connected component of the identity of the center of $G$, and the multiplication homomorphism $Z \times \mathcal{D}(G) \to G$ is a central isogeny, i.e. an isogeny with central kernel, where $\mathcal{D}(G) = (G,G)$ is the derived subgroup. This implies that $Z \to G/\mathcal{D}(G)$ is a central isogeny. Here, our $G$ is Deligne’s $G^{00}$, our $Z$ is Deligne’s $T_1$, and our $G/\mathcal{D}(G)$ is Deligne’s $T$, as a connected, smooth, reductive, and commutative group is a torus [Milne, 19.12], and a quotient of a reductive group over a field of characteristic 0 is reductive.
The set $F$ of characters by which $T_1$ acts on $\hat{P}_T$ generates $X(T_1)$ since the representation of $T_1$ is faithful, and, as $T_1$ is a torus, diagonalizable. Therefore, with the right choice of basis, the representation of $T_1$ looks like $\text{diag}(\chi_i)$ for characters $\chi_i \in F$. As the representation is faithful, these characters generate the character group $X(T_1)$. (The character group of $\text{diag}(\chi_i)$, which is isomorphic to the character group of $T_1$, is generated by the $\chi_i$.)

The group $W(X_0, \overline{\chi})$ acts on $G^0$ by conjugation. Recall that the neutral component of an algebraic group is a characteristic subgroup, and so is the center. Therefore $T_1$, which can be described as the neutral component of $Z(G^{00})$, is acted upon by $W(X_0, \overline{\chi})$. Recall that the functor $\chi$ which takes an algebraic group to its character group induces a contravariant equivalence from the category of diagonalizable algebraic groups with the finitely generated commutative groups, and as we have seen, $W(X_0, \overline{\chi})$ acts on $X(T_1)$ by permuting factors, hence through a finite quotient.

We would like to know why the group of outer automorphisms of $G^{00}$ restricting to the identity on $T_1$ is finite. The group $G^{00}$ admits a maximal split torus $T_2$ so that $(G^{00}, T_2)$ is a split reductive group. The radical $R(G^{00}) = T_1$ is the largest subgroup of the multiplicative group $Z(G^{00})$, so the quotient $Z(G^{00})/R(G^{00})$ is finite \[\text{Milne}, 19.10\]. Recall the definition of isomorphism of root data \[\text{Milne}, 23.2\]. An isomorphism $\phi$ of split reductive groups defines an isomorphism $f$ of root data, and every isomorphism of root data $f$ arises from a $\phi$, unique up to an inner automorphism \[\text{Milne}, 23.26\]. Moreover for a split reductive group $(G, T)$ we have a canonical isomorphism $\text{Out}(G) \cong \text{Aut}(X, \Phi, \Delta)$, where the latter is automorphisms of based root data \[\text{Milne}, 23.46\]. Given such a $\phi : (G, T) \to (G', T')$, the map $f$ is defined by the formula $f(\chi') = \chi' \circ \phi|_T$ for $\chi' \in X(T')$ \[\text{Milne}, 23.5\]. Suppose $\phi$ is now an automorphism of $(G^{00}, T_2)$ and restricts to the identity on the radical $T_1$. The isomorphism $f$ is a fortiori a central isogeny and its action on $Z\Phi$ (the $Z$-submodule of $X^*(T_2)$ generated by the roots $\Phi$) preserves the base $\Delta$, hence its action on $Z\Phi$ amounts to permuting a finite set. On the other hand, the quotient $T_2/Z(G^{00})$ has character group the subgroup $Z\Phi$ of $X^*(T_2)$ \[\text{Milne}, 21.9\], hence the root lattice $Z\Phi$ has finite index in $X^*(T_2/T_1)$. As $Z(G^{00})/T_1$ is finite, this is enough to conclude that subgroup of $\text{Aut}(X, \Phi, \Delta)$ corresponding to automorphisms...
of $G^{00}$ which restrict to the identity on $T_1$ is finite, hence that the subgroup of $\text{Out}(G^{00})$ consisting of those automorphisms fixing $T_1$ is also finite.

Now, if $w$ is an element of $W(X_0, \bar{x})$ of degree 1, and $\bar{w}$ the image of $w$ in $\text{GL}(\overline{F}_\mathfrak{r})$, $G$ is the semi-direct product of $\mathbb{Z}$ by $G^0 = G^{00}$ relative to the action $\text{int}(\bar{w})$ of $\mathbb{Z}$ on $G^0$. As this action is given by an interior automorphism of $G^0$, by multiplying $w$ by an element of $\pi(X, \bar{x})$, we make the action of $\text{int}(\bar{w})$ trivial, and recognize $G = G^{00} \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$.

The proof of (1.3.9) follows easily from (1.3.8). Note that once one has reduced to $\mathcal{F}_0$ semisimple, it is easy to see that the radical of $G^{00}$ in this case is trivial, as it is by definition the largest connected solvable normal subgroup variety of $G^{00}$, hence contained in the connected component of the identity of $G^0$, so if $G^0$ is an extension of a finite, hence discrete, group, $R(G^{00})$ lies in the kernel of this extension, namely in the semisimple subgroup, so in fact $R(G^{00}) = \{ e \}$, as connected normal subgroup varieties of a semisimple group are semisimple [Milne 21.52].

1.3.10. Note that (iv) should read 'Le centre de $G$ s’envoie sur un sous-groupe d’indice fini de $\mathbb{Z}$.' The crux of the direction (iv) $\Rightarrow$ (i) is that, while $G$ is not $a$ priori a linear algebraic group, $G/\mathbb{Z}$, as an extension of a finite group by a linear algebraic group, is.

1.3.12. The central element $g$ acts by a scalar by Schur’s lemma.

1.3.13. (i) The claim rests on the following

Lemma. — Let $X_0, X'_0$ be normal connected schemes of finite type over a field with generic points $\xi, \xi'$ and function fields $K = k(\xi)$ and $K' = k(\xi')$. Let $\Omega, \Omega'$ be algebraically closed extensions of $K, K'$, defining geometric points $a, a'$ of $X_0, X'_0$ centered on $\xi, \xi'$, respectively. If $f : X'_0 \to X_0$ is a dominant morphism, then the image of the induced map $\pi_1(X'_0, a') \to \pi_1(X_0, a)$ is an open subgroup of finite index.

Observing that $\pi_1(X'_0, a')$ acts on $(f^*\mathcal{F})_{a'}$ via the map on $\pi_1$ in the lemma induced by $f$, we see that there is a central element $g \in G'$ of positive degree and a morphism $G' \to G$ sending $g$ to a central element of $G$ of positive degree, and the action of $g$ on $\mathcal{F}_{0,a}$ via this map is the same as the action of $g$ on $(f^*\mathcal{F}_{0})_{a'}$. 

Proof of lemma. — The extensions $\Omega, \Omega'$ define geometric points $a_1, a'_1$ of $S = \text{Spec}(K)$ and $S' = \text{Spec}(K')$, respectively. The dominant morphism $f : X'_0 \to X_0$ induces an extension of fields $K \subset K'$. Then $\pi_1(S, a_1) \to \pi_1(X_0, a)$ is surjective [SGA1, V 8.2], and after identifying $\pi_1(S, a_1)$ with $\text{Gal}(K_{\text{sep}}, K)$, the kernel is identified with those automorphisms which fix all finite extensions of $K$ in $\Omega$ which are unramified over $X_0$, and likewise for $\pi_1(S', a'_1) \to \pi_1(X'_0, a')$. If $L$ is an extension of $K$ unramified over $X_0$, then $L \otimes_K K'$ is an extension of $K'$ unramified over $X'_0$ [SGA1, I 10.4(iii)]. The operation on étale covers of $X_0$ consisting of taking inverse image along $f$ followed by fiber at $a'$ is a fiber functor for $X_0$, hence induces a continuous homomorphism of groups $\pi_1(X'_0, a') \to \pi_1(X_0, a)$ [SGA1, V 6.2]. The action of $\pi_1(X'_0, a')$ on $(f^*\mathcal{F}_0)_{a'}$ is by restriction with respect to this homomorphism. This homomorphism, in turn, is induced by restriction of $\pi_1(S', a'_1) \to \pi_1(S, a)$, since if $L$ is as above, an automorphism $\sigma \in \ker(\pi_1(S', a'_1) \to \pi_1(X'_0, a'))$ acts on $L \otimes_K K'$ by the identity as $L \otimes_K K'$ is unramified. As $K'/K$ is finitely generated, $K' \cap K_{\text{sep}}$ is a finite extension of $K$, so the image of $\pi_1(S', a'_1) \to \pi_1(X_0, a)$ is an open subgroup of finite index isomorphic to the image of $\text{Gal}(K_{\text{sep}}/K' \cap K_{\text{sep}})$ in $\pi_1(X_0, a)$. 

(ii) Choose a basis for representations corresponding to $\mathcal{F}_0$ and $\mathcal{G}_0$ so that Frobenius is upper-triangular in both, and then recall the form of the Kronecker (tensor) product of matrices, which has the property that the Kronecker product of upper-triangular matrices is upper-triangular.

(iii) The claim rests on two observations. The first is that if $\mathcal{F}_0$ is defined by a representation $V$ of $G$, the eigenvalues of any $g \in G$ coincide with the eigenvalues of $g$ acting on the semi-simplification of $V$ with respect to any Jordan-Hölder series. To see this, choose a basis for each graded piece so that $g$ is upper-triangular, and then order a lift of these bases according to the filtration, beginning with the smallest piece. The second observation is that if we begin with an ordered basis $(a_i)$ for $V$ with respect to which $g$ is upper triangular, then a basis $B$ for $\wedge^a V$ consisting of $a$-forms in the $a_i$ can be found. If the function $w$ takes an $a$-form in the $a_i$ and outputs the sum of the subscripts which appear (so $w(a_1 \wedge a_3 \wedge a_4) = 8$), then $g$ is upper-triangular with respect to any ordering of $B$ which respects the total order $w$. The claim follows.
3. LA CONJECTURE DE WEIL. II

1.3.14. It suffices to show that the image of $W(X_0, x)$ in $GL(r, E)$ is bounded by the argument of (1.1.7), which we repeat now. We lose nothing by supposing $E = \mathbb{Q}_\ell$, in which case the image $W$ of $W(X_0, x)$ in $GL(r, E)$ is bounded if it is contained in $GL(r, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$. Applying $W$ to $\mathbb{Z}_\ell^r$ and taking the $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ span, we get a free $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-submodule of $GL(r, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$ of rank $r$, on which $W$ acts by automorphisms. This recognizes $W$ as isomorphic to a subgroup of $GL(r, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$, a profinite group to which it is easy to extend a map $W(\pi_1(X_0, x) \to GL(r, \mathbb{Z}_\ell))$ to a map from the completion $\pi_1(X_0, x) \to GL(r, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)$.

To see that $\rho(W_1^0) \subset G^{00}$ is compact and Zariski dense, observe that $W_1^0$ is a closed subgroup of $\pi_1(X, \bar{x})$, hence a profinite group, and $G^0$ is by definition the Zariski closure of the image of $\pi_1(X, \bar{x})$. In particular, the inverse image of $G^{00}$ is Zariski dense in $G^{00}$.

1.3.15. Relevant sources are Bourbaki, *Lie Groups and Lie Algebras* II, §7, Demazure and Gabriel, *Groupes Algébriques*, II, §6, [Milne 10, 14d]. Bourbaki explains how to extend the logarithm to the union of all compacta. You need to know that for all compact $G \subset H(E)$, $x \in G$, and neighborhood about $e$, there is a strictly increasing sequence of integers $(n_i)$ such that $x^{n_i} \in V$, which allows one to extend the logarithm by Deligne’s formula. Bourbaki also explains that there is an open subgroup $V$ of $e$ in $H(E)$ such that log is an analytic isomorphism of $V$ onto an open subgroup of $\text{Lie } H$, with inverse exp. It follows that $L^1$, the $E$-linear span of $\log K$, coincides with the $E$-linear span of $\log(K \cap V)$. We have for $X \in \log H$ that $\exp(nX) = \exp(X)^n$, and $\log(g^n) = n \log(g)$ for any $g$ where log is defined.

For $g \in H(E)$, $X \in \text{Lie } H$,

$$g \cdot \exp(X) \cdot g^{-1} = \exp(\text{Ad}(g)(X)), \quad (\dagger)$$

whenever these expressions converge. Taking $X \in \log(K \cap V)$ and $g \in V \cap K$, we find that the left side is in $K \cap V$. Moreover there is an $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that both $n \text{Ad}(g)(X)$ and $nX$ lie in $\log V$. We find that $\text{Ad}(g)(nX) \in K \cap V$, therefore that for $g \in V \cap K$, $\text{Ad}(g)$ preserves $L^1$, therefore $L^1$ is also preserved by $V$, which is the Zariski closure of $V \cap K$ in $K$.

Therefore the adjoint representation

$$\text{Ad} : H \to GL(\text{Lie } H)$$
factors through the algebraic subgroup $F \subset GL(\text{Lie } H)$ which fixes the $L^1$. Applying the functor Lie, one finds that
\[
\text{ad} : \text{Lie } H \rightarrow \mathfrak{gl}(\text{Lie } H)
\]
factors through Lie $F$. As ad induces the bracket on Lie $H$, it follows that $L^1$ is an ideal in Lie $H$. As $H$ is semisimple over a field of characteristic 0, Lie subalgebras of Lie $H$ are in bijection with connected algebraic subgroups of $H$ (c.f. e.g. Demazure and Gabriel, *Groupes Algébriques*, II §6 2.4 & 2.7). As the exponential is functorial (c.f. *ibid*, 3.4), the algebraic subgroup corresponding to $\mathfrak{g}$ contains $K$, hence must equal $H$ by density, hence $L^1 = \text{Lie } H$.

Let $N$ denote the normalizer of $K$ and $g \in N$. Let $X \in K$. Then there is an integer $n$ such that both $X^n \in V$ (hence $n \log X \in \log V$) and $n \text{Ad}(g)(\log X) \in \log V$. Applying (†) to $\log(X^n) = n \log X$ we find that $\exp(\text{Ad}(g)(n \log X)) = g \cdot X^n \cdot g^{-1} \in V \cap K$ so that $\log(g \cdot X \cdot g^{-1}) = \text{Ad}(g)(\log X)$ and we find Ad($g$) preserves the set $\log K$ and a fortiori $L^0$.

The morphism Ad factors as a quotient $H \rightarrow H/Z(H)$ followed by a closed immersion. As $H$ is semisimple, $Z(H)$ is finite, hence the quotient $H \rightarrow H/Z(H)$ is finite (a fortiori proper) ([Milne, 21.7, 7.15, 5.39].

The subgroup $K \subset H(E)$ is a compact subset of a complete metric space, hence closed for the topology induced by the non-archimedean metric on $E$. Hence $K$ is a closed Lie subgroup of $H(E)$ for that metric, and hence $N$ is a closed subgroup of $H(E)$ with respect to the metric induced by the one on $E$. As $L^0$ is compact and isomorphic to an $\mathcal{O}_E$-lattice in Lie $H$, its automorphism group $\text{Aut } L^0$ is compact; as Ad is proper, $\text{Ad}^{-1}(\text{Aut } L^1) \subset H(E)$ is compact, and $N \subset \text{Ad}^{-1}(\text{Aut } L^0)$ is a closed subgroup, hence also compact.

1.4.1. (b) See Weil I, (2.9).

1.4.2. Let $\bar{x}$ be a geometric point of $X$; as $X_0$ is absolutely irreducible, $X$ is connected. The pullback of lisse sheaves along the morphism $X \rightarrow X_0$ identifies with the restriction of representations along the continuous homomorphism $\pi_1(X, \bar{x}) \rightarrow W(X_0, \bar{x})$, and
likewise the pullback of lisse sheaves along the structural morphism \( X_0 \to \text{Spec}(F_q) \) with restriction along \( W(X_0, \bar{x}) \to \mathbb{Z} \). Given a lisse sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on \( X_0 \) with monodromy representation \( V \), the largest subsheaf (resp. quotient sheaf) becoming constant on \( X \) is obtained by taking invariants (resp. coinvariants) of \( V \) with respect to \( \pi_1(X, \bar{x}) \). Both \( V_{\pi_1(X, \bar{x})} \) and \( V_{\pi_1(X, \bar{x})} \) carry natural actions of \( \mathbb{Z} \) which induces lisse sheaves \( F_0, F'' \) on \( \text{Spec}(F_q) \) with inverse images \( V_{\pi_1(X, \bar{x})} \) and \( V_{\pi_1(X, \bar{x})} \), respectively. (The exact sequence \( 0 \to \pi_1(X, \bar{x}) \to W(X_0, \bar{x}) \to \mathbb{Z} \) identifies those lisse sheaves invariant under geometric monodromy with the inverse image of sheaves on \( \text{Spec}(F_q) \).)

1.4.3. The point is that on the one hand, the constituents of the sheaves \( F', F'' \) are among the constituents of \( \mathcal{F}_0 \), on the other hand as representations of \( W(X_0, \bar{x}) \), \( F', F'' \) are invariant for geometric monodromy, so they have one-dimensional constituents which are determined once Frobenius is put in Jordan normal form. Therefore the eigenvalues of Frobenius on \( F' \) and \( F'' \) appear among the determinental weights for \( \mathcal{F}_0 \), and, in consideration of (1.4.2), up to a twist the same is true of eigenvalues of Frobenius on \( H^0(X, \mathcal{F}), H^0_c(X, \mathcal{F}), \) and \( H^2_c(X, \mathcal{F}) \).

1.4.6. See Ahlfors, *Complex Analysis*, Ch. 5 §2.2 for a characteristically elegant review of the convergence properties of infinite products, which elucidates the equivalence of the absolute convergence of Deligne’s Euler product with that of of his geometric series.

1.5.1. Perhaps the only thing to remark is that if a lisse sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on \( X \) is \( \iota \)-real, then all of its exterior powers are, too: choosing a basis for \( \mathcal{F}_x \) with respect to which \( F_x \) is upper-triangular, the resulting canonical basis for \( \ii \mathcal{F} \) can be ordered so that \( F_x \) remains upper triangular (1.3.13 iii), which makes it easy to see that \( \iota \det(1 - F_x t, \ii \mathcal{F}) \) has coefficients which are symmetric polynomials in the eigenvalues of \( F_x \). As the coefficients of \( \iota \det(1 - F_x t, \mathcal{F}) \) are the elementary symmetric polynomials in these eigenvalues, and are real, the coefficients of \( \iota \det(1 - F_x t, \ii \mathcal{F}) \) are real too.
1.6.11. To see the Clebsch-Gordon decomposition (1.6.11.2), let
\[ H = du \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \]
in the notation of (1.6.8), and let
\[ \chi_d(\lambda) = \text{Tr}(e^{\lambda H}) = \sum_{j=-d}^{d} \lambda^j \]
(\dagger)
as a function of \( \lambda \in k \). These characters transform additively under direct sum and multiplicatively under tensor product, so finding the decomposition of \( S_d \otimes S_{d'} \) is the same as finding the additively decomposition of
\[ (\lambda^{-d} + \lambda^{-d+2} + \cdots + \lambda^{d})(\lambda^{-d'} + \lambda^{-d'+2} + \cdots + \lambda^{d'}) \]
into sums of the form (\dagger). In this case the decomposition is into \( d' + 1 \) sums of the form \( \chi_j(\lambda) \) for \( j \in P(d, d') \).

1.6.13. It is asserted that the inclusion \( \subset \) of assertion 2) results from the fact that the image of \( N'M_i \) in \( \text{Gr}_0^W(V) \) is \( N'M_i(\text{Gr}_0^W V) = M_i(\text{Gr}_0^W V) \). To see this, recall that in the construction (1.6.1), \( N^{d-1} \) sends \( \ker N^d/\im N^d \) onto \( M_{-d+1}/\im N^d \), hence sends \( M_{d-1} \) onto \( M_{-d+1} \), and proceed inductively.

The inequality \( k - 2i - 2 \geq k \geq 2j - k \) should read \( k - 2i - 2 \geq -k \geq 2j - k \) at the end of the discussion of 3). Note \( N^{k-j} : \text{Gr}_k^M G \rightarrow \text{Gr}_{2j-k}^M G \).

1.6.14. It seems as though (1.6.14.3) should read
\[ \text{Gr}_i^M V \cong \bigoplus_{j \geq |i|} P_{-j} \left( \frac{-i-j}{2} \right). \]
For, when \( i \leq 0 \), \( N \) induces an isomorphism of \( \text{Gr}_i^M V/P_i \) onto \( \text{Gr}_{i-2}^M V \). Scaling \( N \mapsto \lambda N \) also multiplies this isomorphism by \( \lambda \), so we need to twist by \( \otimes N^{-1} \). Similarly, the isomorphism \( N' : \text{Gr}_i^M V \rightarrow \text{Gr}_{-i}^M V \) scales by \( \lambda^i \) so we need to twist by \(-i\).
With this modification, the isomorphism
\[
P_{-j} \cong \bigoplus_{j \in P(j',j'')} P'_{-j} \otimes P''_{-j} \left( \frac{j - j' - j''}{2} \right)
\]
is justifiable by passing through a suitable graded piece
\[
P_{-j} \left( \frac{-i - j}{2} \right) \to \text{Gr}^M_i V \leftarrow \bigoplus_{j \in P(j',j'')} P'_{-j} \otimes P''_{-j} \left( \frac{-i - j' - j''}{2} \right).
\]

As for the isomorphism
\[
P_{-j}(V^*) \cong P_{-j}(V)^*(j),
\]
consider \( V = S_j \) identified with the representation of \( \text{SL}(2) \) on homogeneous polynomials in variables \( x \) and \( y \) of degree \( j \). Suppose \( P_{-j}(V) \) is generated by the vector \( y^j \); then \( P_{-j}(V)^* \) is generated by the covector on \( y^j \) and \( P_{-j}(V^*) \) is the covector on \( x^j \). The map \( P_{-j}(V)^* \to P_{-j}(V^*) \) is obtained by precomposing by \( N^j \). Upon scaling \( N \mapsto \lambda N \), this map is scaled by \( \lambda^j \). Therefore the canonical isomorphism is obtained by twisting by \( N^{-j} \):
\[
P_{-j}(V)^* \to P_{-j}(V^*)(-j).
\]

1.7.2. Note that in this case \( V \) is a \( \overline{Q}_\ell \)-vector space. The claim about the existence of \( \overline{\rho} \) satisfying
\[
\rho(\sigma) = \exp(\overline{\rho}_\ell(\sigma)) \quad \text{for} \quad \sigma \in I_1 \subset I
\]
in particular implies that \( P \cap I_1 \) acts trivially on \( V \). Let’s recall why this is the case. As \( p \neq \ell \), \( \rho(P) \) is finite. As \( \overline{Q}_\ell \) has characteristic zero, by Maschke’s theorem, the action of \( P \) on \( V \) is semisimple. As \( \overline{Q}_\ell \) is algebraically closed and \( V \) is finite-dimensional, this implies that each element in \( V \) is diagonalizable. A diagonalizable element of \( \text{GL}(V) \) is unipotent iff it is the identity. This proves our claim. (Recall also the Jordan-Chevalley decomposition.)
1.7.3. ‘Il commute à l’action de \( W(\overline{K}, K) \)’ \( \rightsquigarrow \) When you let \( W(\overline{K}, K) \) act on \( V \) via \( \rho \) and on \( \overline{Q}_\ell(n) \) via \( \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k) \), the statement is that if \( \tau \in W(\overline{K}, K) \),
\[
\tau N \tau^{-1} = N : V(1) \to V.
\]
Let \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_\ell(1) \) and \( n := \deg \tau \). As \( \tau^{-1} \lambda = q^n \lambda \tau^{-1} \), the statement is equivalent to the statement
\[
\tau N \lambda \tau^{-1} = q^{-n} N \lambda.
\]
\( \text{Gal}(\overline{K}, K) \) acts on the inertia character \( t \) by the formula
\[
t(\tau \sigma \tau^{-1}) = \tau t \sigma = q^{-n} t \sigma
\]
where in the middle \( \tau \) acts through \( \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k) \), so if we assume \( I_1 \) is a normal subgroup of \( I \) and take \( \sigma \in I_1 \),
\[
\exp(\rho(\tau) N t_\ell(\sigma) \rho(\tau^{-1})) = \rho(\tau \sigma \tau^{-1}) = \exp(N t_\ell(\tau \sigma \tau^{-1})) = \exp(N q^{-n} t_\ell(\sigma)).
\]
Note that the above is written in the setting of a finite residue field with \( q \) elements, but holds for any residue field since all that is used is the compatibility between the action of \( \text{Gal}(\overline{K}, K) \) on \( \overline{Q}_\ell(1) \) and on the inertia character: in both cases \( \text{Gal}(\overline{K}, K) \) acts via \( \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k) \).

1.7.4. As discussed in [the note to 1.7.2], the only semisimple and unipotent element of \( \text{GL}(n, \overline{Q}_\ell) \) is the identity. The semisimple representation of \( W(\overline{K}, K) \) therefore factors through the quotient by a normal closed subgroup \( I' \supset I_1 \). The conjugation action of \( W(\overline{K}, K) \) on \( I/I' \) is has a kernel \( U \) of finite index, as a finite group has only finitely many automorphisms. So for some \( m_1, F^{m_1}, F^{m_1} \in U \). \( F^{m_1} = aF^{m_1} \) for some \( a \in I \), but now \( F^{m_1} \) commutes with \( a \mod I' \), so if \( a^{m_2} = 1 \mod I' \), then
\[
F^{m_1 m_2} = a^{m_2} F^{m_1 m_2} = F^{m_1 m_2} \mod I',
\]
so we may take \( n = m_1 m_2 \).

1.7.5. ‘On a \( N M'_i = M'_{i-2} \)’ \( \rightsquigarrow \) this is because of the commutativity of (1.7.3). Namely, \( F'N = NF' \) and if \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_\ell(1) \), \( F'N \lambda = q^{-1} N \lambda F' \). Therefore \( N \lambda \) sends \( M'_i \) into \( M'_{i-1} \) and \( N : M'_i(1) \subset M'_{i-2} \).
If \( M' = M'' =: M \), then both \( F' \) and \( F'' \) preserve \( M \), so \((F')^{-1}F''\) does, and every element of \( I \) is thus obtained, and every element of \( W(\overline{K}/K) \) can be obtained as an element of \( I \) times a power of \( F' \) (or \( F'' \), etc.), so \( M \) is stable by \( W(\overline{K}, K) \).

While proving that \( M' \) is independent of \( F' \), Deligne introduces \( \exp(\lambda N) \) for \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_\ell(-1) \). Let me instead deduce from the fact \( F'' = F''' \mod I_1 \) that for an appropriate choice of \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_\ell(1) \),

\[
F''' = \exp(N\lambda)F''.
\]

If \( \mu := \lambda/(1 - q^{-n}) \), we have

\[
\exp(N\lambda)F'' = \exp(N\mu)F'' \exp(N\mu)^{-1},
\]

since if we expand \( F'' \exp(-N\mu) \) as a series

\[
F'' \left( 1 - N\mu + \frac{(-N\mu)^2}{2!} + \cdots \right),
\]

we have that \( N \) commutes with \( F'' \) and that \( F'' \mu^i = q^{-ni}\mu^i \), so that

\[
\exp(N\mu)F'' \exp(N\mu)^{-1} = \exp(N\mu) \exp(-q^{-n}N\mu)F'' = \exp(N\lambda)F''.
\]

This identity shows that \( \exp(N\mu) \) sends \( M'_i \) into \( M''_i \), for the reason given that it sends generalized eigenspaces for \( F'' \) to those for \( F''' \). As \((N\mu)M'_i \subset M'_{i-2} \),

\[
\exp(N\mu) = 1 + N\mu + \frac{(N\mu)^2}{2!} + \cdots
\]

also sends \( M'_i \) into \( M'_i \), so \( M''_i \subset M'_i \).

1.7.7. Let \( F' \) be as in (1.7.5), let \( \alpha \in \overline{Q}_\ell^* \), and let \( V^{\alpha} \) equal the sum of the generalized eigenspaces of \( F' \) acting on \( V \) with eigenvalue in the class of \( \alpha \mod \text{roots of } 1 \). Then \( V^{\alpha} \) is independent of lift and \( N\lambda : V^{\alpha} \to V^{\alpha/q} \), and

\[ V^{\alpha} = \sum_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} V^{\alpha q^i} \]

is stable under \( \exp(N\lambda) \) for \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_\ell(1) \) and hence under the action of \( I_1 \). By the argument of (1.7.5), \( V^{\alpha} \) is therefore stable under \( W(\overline{K}, K) \).
1.7.8. The construction is somewhat reminiscent of the construction of nearby cycles. One sees [SGA1 XIII 5.1] that the scheme $X_n$ is again regular. Taking the sheaf of sets $\mathcal{F}$ to be locally constant constructible, the lemma of Abhyankar that is used is [SGA1 XIII 5.2]. The point is that over $E$, $X_n$ is totally ramified (defined by adjoining nilpotents $T_i$ so that $T_i^n = 0$), so that a sheaf on $\pi^{-1}(E)$ is the same as a sheaf on $E$, and so that the action of $\mu_n^I$ on $X_n$ fixes $\pi^{-1}(E)$ pointwise while permuting the inductive system of étale neighborhoods of any given point of $\pi^{-1}(E)$; in this way $\mu_n^I$ acts on $\mathcal{F}[E]$ by transport of structure.

(As $X_n$ is a regular scheme, by Zariski-Nagata purity of the branch locus ([O'B], if $\mathcal{F}$ extends over the generic points of each of the divisors $D_i$, it extends as a locally constant sheaf over all of $X_n$. As $t_i$ is a local equation for $D_i$, there is an $n$ so that the inverse image of $\mathcal{F}$ onto the étale cover of $X - D_i$ defined by adjoining $t_i^{1/n}$ extends to a locally constant sheaf on all of $X[t_i^{1/n}]$.)

1.7.11. This paragraph extends the tame ramification theory of a dvr to a henselian local ring that is the henselization of $X$ at a generic point of $E$. It is clear how a choice of $t_i$ and of $t_i^{1/n}$ splits the extension of profinite groups: if $K'$ denotes the extension of $K$ generated by these chosen elements, then $K_2 = K_1K'$, and $K'$ is linearly disjoint from $K_1$ (although $K'$ is not in general normal). Therefore via the splitting $\text{Gal}(k_1/k) \hookrightarrow \pi_1^{\text{mod}}(X - D, \text{Spec}(\overline{K}))$ one obtains a sheaf on $\text{Spec}(k)$. Of course $F$ carries an action of all of $\text{Gal}(K_2/K)$, and therefore of $\mathbb{Z}_L(1)$.

That $\text{Gal}(K_1/K) = \text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ is the usual property that change of base point gives isomorphic fiber functors [SGA1 V 7]. That is to say, $X_1 = \text{Spec } R_1$ is the projective limit of all étale covers of $X$, and is a fundamental pro-object for the Galois category of revêtements étales of $X$ [SGA1 V 4.1], so that whether $F$ is the fiber functor corresponding to a geometric point $*$ centered on the closed or generic point of $X$, if $X' \to X$ is a revêtement étale, $F(X') \hookrightarrow \text{Hom}_X(X_1, X')$, and $\pi_1(X, *)$ acts continuously on the latter set. As $F(X')$ is the set of geometric points of $X'$ above $*$, it corresponds to an étale extension of the generic point or closed point of $X$, respectively. Then the statement that the groups $\pi_1(X, *)$ are isomorphic for these two different choices of $*$ is simply the statement $\text{Gal}(K_1/K) \cong \text{Gal}(k_1/k)$. 
‘On déduit donc une action de $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ sur $F$, et une action $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$-equivariante de $\hat{Z}_L(1)^I$ → the splitting automatically gives an action of $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ on $F$. The matter of a $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$-equivariant action of $\hat{Z}_L(1)^I$ involves the subtlety that the group scheme $\mu_n$ itself carries an action of $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ deduced from the left action of $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ on $\hat{Z}_L(1)^I$. Considering $\hat{Z}_L(1)^I$ and $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ as subgroups of $\text{Gal}(K_2/K)$, this action is written as conjugation: if $\zeta \in \text{Gal}(k_1/k)$, $a \in \hat{Z}_L(1)$, then the action is $a \mapsto \zeta a \zeta^{-1}$ (0BU5). Then a $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$-equivariant action of $\hat{Z}_L(1)^I$ is an action where $\zeta \cdot a$ acts the same as $\zeta a \zeta^{-1} \cdot \zeta$.

The point is, just as in (1.7.3), the action of $Z_\ell(1)$ does not commute naïvely with $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$: it commutes up to the twist coming from the action of $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$ on $Z_\ell(1)$. However, taking the logarithm of unipotent monodromy $N$, then $N$ does commute ‘on the nose’ with $\text{Gal}(k_1/k)$, as is explained in \textit{the note to (1.7.3)}.

**Remark.** When $X_0$ in (1.7.8) is a smooth curve and $D_0 \subset X_0$ is a point, the Galoisian interpretation (1.7.11) of the construction (1.7.8) is identical to the situation of (1.7.1)–(1.7.5) for the henselization of $X_0$ at $D_0$ after quotienting by wild inertia.

1.7.12.1. Provided that the field $k$ satisfies the condition that no finite extension contains all roots of unity a power of $l$ (as is true when $X$ is finitely generated over $Z$, as in that case $k$ is finitely-generated over $\mathbb{Q}$ or $\mathbb{F}_p$), the (arithmetic) proof of Grothendieck’s theorem on quasi-unipotent monodromy gives that $Z_L(1)$ acts quasi-unipotently. When $D$ is lisse, the discussion of (1.7.11) reduces to the usual one for the $X$ a henselian trait, in which case the conclusion that $Z_L(1)$ (and indeed all of the inertia) acts quasi-unipotently is the statement of Grothendieck’s theorem.

1.8.1. The inclusion $\overline{k} \to \mathcal{F}_0 \subset j_* \overline{k} \mathcal{F}_0$ comes about by considering that étale locally about a point $s \in S_0$ neither sheaf may be locally free, as restricting étale neighborhoods of $s$ to $U_0$ may not be enough to trivialize either sheaf; in other words, a trivialization may ramify when extended to $X_0$. Let $V \to X_0$ be an étale neighborhood of $s$. Then the inclusion above simply reflects the fact that sections of $\hat{\mathcal{F}}_0$ over $V|_{U_0} := V \times_{X_0} U_0$ include those coming from the tensor product of $k$ sections in $\mathcal{F}_0(V|_{U_0})$, but might include more besides.
Here is an example: let $X = \text{Spec} R$ and let $\mathcal{F}$ be the locally free sheaf on $X$ represented by $\text{Spec} R[x]/(x^3 - 1)$; this is the sheaf $\mu_3$ of third roots of unity and it is a locally free sheaf of $\mathbb{Z}/3$-modules of rank 1. Then $\mathcal{F}(R) = \{1\}$ and if $\zeta$ is a primitive 3rd root of unity, $\mathcal{F}(\mathbb{C}) = \{1, \zeta, \bar{\zeta}\}$. $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{C}/R) \simeq \mathbb{Z}/2$ and $\mathcal{F}$ corresponds to the representation $V$ of $\mathbb{Z}/2$ given by complex conjugation on the $\mathbb{Z}/3$-module $\{1, \zeta, \bar{\zeta}\}$. Then $\mathcal{F} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}/3} \mathcal{F}$ corresponds to the tensor representation $V \otimes V$. Its sections over $R$ are its $\mathbb{Z}/2$-invariant sections of $V \otimes V$. These are $\{1 \otimes 1, \zeta \otimes \bar{\zeta}\}$.

1.8.4. The fiber of $j_* \mathcal{F}_0$ at $s$ can be computed by taking first the inverse image of $j_* \mathcal{F}$ to $\text{Spec} O_{X_0,s}$, the local ring of $X_0$ at $s$, and then taking the colimit along all étale ring maps $O_{X_0,s} \to U$, these being equivalent to finite separable extensions of $k(\eta)$ which are non-ramified over $s$. So in the end we are computing the colimit of sections of the inverse image of $\mathcal{F}_0$ along $\eta \to X_0$ over finite separable field extensions of $k(\eta)$ fixed by $I$; this is nothing other than $\mathcal{F}_0^I$.

The last line of the proof references (1.6.14.3), which has been corrected in the note (1.6.14) above.

1.8.5. The idea is that the global existence of the local monodromy filtration compatible with $W$ (the filtration of our lisse sheaf $\mathcal{F}_0$ by lisse subsheaves with $\text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ punctually $i$-pure of weight $i$) is not assured by (1.6.13); we just know that if it exists, it’s unique. (We do know, of course, that $N$ preserves $W$, as $W$ is a filtration by subsheaves, hence once restricted to the geometric generic fiber, by $W(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$-subrepresentations.) On the other hand, (1.6.1) guarantees the existence of the local monodromy filtration $M'$ on each graded piece $\text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ so that $NM'_{i'} \subset M'_{i-2}$ and so that $N^k$ induces an isomorphism

$$\text{Gr}^M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0) \cong \text{Gr}^M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$$

for each $k$. Then (1.8.4) shows that the $\text{Gr}^M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ is $i$-pure of weight $i+j$, so by the uniqueness of (1.7.5), the local monodromy filtration on $\text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ coincides with the weight filtration $M$ on $\text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ shifted by $i$; i.e. $M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0) = M'_k \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0)$ and

$$\text{Gr}^M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0) \cong \text{Gr}^M_{i+k} \text{Gr}^W_i(\mathcal{F}_0).$$

(†)
Now let an increasing filtration $M$ on all of $F_0$ be defined by the weight filtration (1.7.5); we can do so because the $ι$-weights of $F_0$ are all integers. The filtration $M$ satisfies $NM_i \subset M_{i-2}$ and satisfies $\mathbb{H}$. Therefore it satisfies the requirements of (1.6.13). Summing up, we have shown that the filtration of local monodromy rel. $W$ of (1.6.13) exists (it is therefore unique), and we have shown that it coincides with the weight filtration (1.7.5).

Remark. Both the local monodromy filtration and the weight filtration involve a choice of point $s \in S$, but end up defining a filtration on the fiber $F_0$.  

1.8.7. (Recall (1.7.11) and its note, especially the remark at the end.) Note that the filtration $W$ on $F_0$ induces a filtration, also called $W$, on $F_0[D_0]$, with graded pieces $(\operatorname{Gr}_i^W F_0)[D_0]$. For each $i$, $\operatorname{Gr}_i^W F_0$ is punctually $ι$-pure of weight $i$. The filtration of local monodromy around $D$ of $G_0 := (\operatorname{Gr}_i^W F_0)[D_0]$ exists by (1.6.1) & (1.7.8); call this filtration $M'$. The filtration $M'$ can be seen in the setting of (1.7.11) by applying (1.6.1) to the logarithm of unipotent monodromy (1.7.12.1) acting on the representation of $W$ mod $\mathbb{X}$ corresponding to $G_0$; in particular, the $\operatorname{Gr}_i^{M'} G_0$ are lisse.

Let $C_0 \subset X_0$ be a smooth curve meeting $D_0$ transversally. As the function $t$ continues to cut out $D_0$, if $\overline{s} \in C$, with image $s$ in $C_0 \cap D_0$, the action of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ on the fiber $(G_i)_{\overline{s}}$ from (1.7.8) is the same as the action of the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient of the local inertia of the henselian trait $C_0(s)$ on the representation of $W(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$ obtained by restricting $\operatorname{Gr}_i^W F_0$ to $C_0 \cap U_0$, with notation as in (1.8.3). Therefore the logarithm of unipotent monodromy on $G_i$ restricts to the logarithm of unipotent monodromy for the representation of $W(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$ corresponding to $(G_i)_{\overline{s}}$ as in (1.8.3), so that $(\operatorname{Gr}_i^{M'} G_0)_{\overline{s}}$ is $ι$-pure of weight $i + j$ by (1.8.4); varying $s_0$ (and $C_0$) over every point of $|D_0|$, we conclude that $\operatorname{Gr}_i^{M'} G_i$ is punctually $ι$-pure of the same weight.

Let $F_s$ be the Frobenius at $s$. We follow the notation of (1.7.11): $k = \text{the residue field of the henselization of } X_0$ at the generic point of $D_0$, $k_1$ a separable closure. Via $s \to D_0$, $F_s$ is introduced into the group $π_1(D_0, \overline{s})$ and determines a conjugation class in $π_1(D_0, \operatorname{Spec}(k_1))$. As $\operatorname{Gal}(k_1/k) \to π_1(D_0, \overline{\eta})$ surjects, we get a conjugation class in $\operatorname{Gal}(k_1/k)$. By (1.7.12.2), we can speak without ambiguity of the $ι$-weights of $F_s$ on an $\ell$-adic representation of $W(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$ obtained by restricting $\operatorname{Gr}_i^W F_0$ to $C_0 \cap U_0$, with notation as in (1.8.3). Therefore the logarithm of unipotent monodromy on $G_i$ restricts to the logarithm of unipotent monodromy for the representation of $W(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$ corresponding to $(G_i)_{\overline{s}}$ as in (1.8.3), so that $(\operatorname{Gr}_i^{M'} G_i)_{\overline{s}}$ is $ι$-pure of weight $i + j$ by (1.8.4); varying $s_0$ (and $C_0$) over every point of $|D_0|$, we conclude that $\operatorname{Gr}_i^{M'} G_i$ is punctually $ι$-pure of the same weight.
defined as the inverse image of $W(D_0, \text{Spec}(k_1))$ in $\pi^\text{mod}_1(X_0 - D_0, \text{Spec}(\overline{K}))$ via

$$\pi^\text{mod}_1(X_0 - D_0, \text{Spec}(\overline{K})) \to \text{Gal}(k_1/k) \to \pi_1(D_0, \text{Spec}(k_1)).$$

As $\mathcal{F}_0[D_0]$ is a successive extension of lisse sheaves punctually $i$-pure of integer weight, $a \text{ fortiiori}$ the $i$-weights with respect to $F_s$ of $\mathcal{F}_0[D_0]$ are integers. If $V$ denotes the representation of $W$ corresponding to $\mathcal{F}_0[D_0]$, (1.7.12.3) gives that $V$ admits a weight filtration $M$ (with respect to $F_s$) stable by $W$ that is characterized by the property that $\text{Gr}^M_i V$ is $i$-pure of weight $i$ with respect to $F_s$. The weight filtration also has the property that $\text{NM}_i V$, $\text{Gr}^M_i V$ is $i$-pure of weight $i$.

1.8.8. With regards to remark 2), twist the sheaf $\mathcal{F}_0 \mapsto \mathcal{F}_0^{(b)}$ so that it has weight 0 (following (1.2.7), $b = p^{-\beta}$). Then apply (1.8.7) with the trivial filtration $W$ to see that $\text{Gr}^M_i (j_* \mathcal{F}_0^{(b)}|_{D_0})$ is punctually $i$-pure of weight $i$. Twist back to conclude that $\text{Gr}^M_i (j_* \mathcal{F}_0|_{D_0})$ is punctually $i$-pure of weight $\beta + i$.

1.8.9. In c), $j_* \mathcal{F}_0 \mapsto \varepsilon_+ j_* \varepsilon^* \mathcal{F}_0$ follows, after writing $\varepsilon_+ j_* \varepsilon^* \mathcal{F}_0 = j_* \varepsilon_+ \varepsilon^* \mathcal{F}_0$, from the observation that $\mathcal{F}_0 \mapsto \varepsilon_+ \varepsilon^* \mathcal{F}_0$ injects since on stalks, a finite extension of a henselian ring splits as a product of henselian rings; i.e. the adjunction morphism corresponds to the inclusion along the diagonal

$$\mathcal{F}_x \mapsto \prod_{\varepsilon^{-1}_x} \mathcal{F}_x.$$

In d), reduce to a constant sheaf, where it is obvious.

In the explanation for e), the strict henselization of $X_0$ at $x$ is irreducible hence a fortiori the inverse image of any open set is connected. Then, since the fiber product of any
étale cover of \( x \) with \( U_0 \) is an étale neighborhood of \( z \), there is a map \((i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_x \to (\mathcal{F}_0)_z\).

As the former can be computed as sections over the inverse image of \( U_0 \) in the strict henselization of \( X_0 \) at \( x \); since this is a connected scheme, and \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) is lisse, the arrow is injective. The factorization of this arrow as

\[
(i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_x \to (k_* k^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_x \to (j_* \mathcal{F}_0)_y \to (\mathcal{F}_0)_x
\]

can be explained as follows. After rewriting \( k_* k^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0 \) as \( k_* k^* i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0 \), the first arrow is just adjunction for \( k \). The middle arrow can be rewritten \((k_* k^* i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_x \to (i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_y\), so that it is a statement about sheaves on \( F_0 \). Take an étale neighborhood \( W_0 \) of \( x \) in \( F_0 \); then \( W_0 \times_{F_0} V_0 \) is an étale neighborhood of \( y \). The projective system of étale \( W'_0 \to F_0 \) s.t. \( W'_0 \times_{F_0} V_0 \) admits an arrow to \( W_0 \times_{F_0} V_0 \) has the property that the projective system \( W'_0 \) is a subcategory of the projective system of étale neighborhoods of \( y \) in \( F_0 \). Therefore there is an arrow from the colimit of \( i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0 \) applied to the former system to the colimit of \( i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0 \) applied to the latter, which is \((i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_y\). This gives an arrow \((k_* k^* i^* j_*, F_0)(W_0) \to (i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_y\), functorial in \( W_0 \), and hence an arrow \((k_* k^* i^* j_*, F_0)_x \to (i^* j_*, \mathcal{F}_0)_y\).

The last arrow is in effect the observation that the fiber product of \( U_0 \) with an étale neighborhood of \( y \) in \( X_0 \) is an étale neighborhood of \( z \).

In the proof of (1.8.9), here is how to reduce: using (a) one may suppose that \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) is punctually \( 1 \)-pure and of the form \( i_* i^* \mathcal{F}_0 \) where \( i \) is locally closed as in (b) and \( i^* \mathcal{F}_0 \) is lisse. Using (b), therefore, we may assume \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) is punctually \( 1 \)-pure and lisse. Applying (c) to the normalization \( \varepsilon : X'_0 \to X_0 \), we may assume \( X_0 \) normal, and, picking a connected component, connected, with \( U_0 \) a dense open and \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) a lisse sheaf on \( U_0 \). If we find a revêtement étale \( u : U'_0 \to U_0 \) so that \( u^* \mathcal{F}_0 \) has no \( p \)-monodromy (i.e. if \( \bar{x} \) is a geometric point of \( U_0 \), \( W(U_0, \bar{x}) \) acts through its maximal pro-\( \ell\) quotient), then letting \( X'_0 \) denote the normalization of \( X_0 \) in the function field of \( U_0 \), we reduce by (c) to the case where \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) has no \( p \)-monodromy, and hence is tamely ramified at any points of codimension 1 of \( X_0 \) (in particular, possibly after using (d) to shrink \( U_0 \), at the generic points of the Weil divisor \( X_0 - U_0 \)).

To find the desired \( U'_0 \), as \( W(U_0, \bar{x}) \) is compact, after replacing \( \overline{Q}_\ell \) by some finite extension \( E_\ell \) of \( Q_\ell \), the image of \( U'_0 \) in \( \text{Aut} \mathcal{F}_\bar{x} \) stabilizes a lattice; if \( \mathcal{F}_0 \) corresponds to
an $R$-module $V$ ($R$ the ring of integers of $E_\lambda$) with continuous action of $W(U_0, \bar{x})$ on the underlying $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-module (c.f. [SGA5, VI 1.4.1]) and is of rank $r$ as $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-module, then we can find a basis for $V$ as $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-vector space for which $W(U_0, \bar{x})$ acts via its image in $\text{GL}(\mathbb{Z}_\ell, r)$. The congruence subgroup $\Gamma_1 \subset \text{GL}(\mathbb{Z}_\ell, r)$ is open for the $\ell$-adic topology, and is pro-$\ell$. The preimage $W_1$ of $\Gamma_1$ in $W(U_0, \bar{x})$ is therefore open and acts via a pro-$\ell$ quotient. The closure of $W_1$ in $\pi_1(U_0, \bar{x})$ is open, and defines $U'_0$.

To complete the proof, we are almost there, except $F_0$ is just a Weil divisor, and need not satisfy the smoothness assumption of (1.8.6). The idea is to use e) and recurrence on $\dim U_0$ to shrink $X_0$ and throw away the bad points of $F_0$. If we replace $X_0$ by an open set containing $U_0$ whose intersection with $F_0$ is a lisse divisor, then (1.8.8) 2) shows that (1.8.9) is true there. We can find finitely many such open sets with inclusions $j_i$, the union of which, $X'_0$, intersects $F_0$ in a dense set $V_0$. If $j' : U_0 \hookrightarrow X'_0$, then $j'_*F_0 \hookrightarrow \prod_i j_i^*F_0$ so (1.8.9) is proved for $j'$. By recurrence on dimension we may assume that (1.8.9) holds for $k_*$. In light of this, applying e) to the lisse sheaf $F_0$, yields that $i^*j_*F_0$ satisfies the conclusions of (1.8.9); in effect, $k^*j_* = k^*j'_*$. Finally, $j_*F_0 \hookrightarrow j'_*F_0 \times i_*i^*j_*F_0$ allows us to conclude that $j_*$ satisfies (1.8.9).

1.8.11. A Jordan-Hölder series for $F_0$ allows us to reduce to $F_0$ irreducible. The restriction of an irreducible lisse sheaf to a nonempty open $U_0$ of a normal connected scheme $X_0$ is still irreducible because if $\eta$ denotes the generic point of $X_0$, and $\bar{\eta}$ a geometric point centered on $\eta$, we have by [SGA1, Exp. V, 8.2]

$$\text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}, \eta) \to \pi_1(U_0, \bar{\eta}) \to \pi_1(X_0, \bar{\eta}).$$

Now, $F_0$ is $\iota$-mixed, so admits an $\iota$-pure subsheaf $\mathcal{G}_0$ which is lisse when restricted to some $U_0$. Therefore $F_0|U_0$, irreducible yet containing $\mathcal{G}_0|U_0$, must equal $\mathcal{G}_0|U_0$.

1.8.12. Let $f : X'_0 \to X_0$ be the normalization morphism. It induces a bijection on irreducible components, and $X'_0$ is a disjoint of normal integral schemes. We make use of the fact, true for any morphism, that if $x_0 \in X_0$, the weights of $F_0$ at $x_0$ coincide with the weights of $f^*F_0$ at every point of the fiber $f^{-1}(x_0)$. If $F_0$ is $\iota$-pure of weight $\beta$ at a point $x_0$, then all the points of $X'_0$ in the fiber over $x_0$ are also $\iota$-pure of the same weight; therefore (1.8.11) implies that all the points of the irreducible components of $X'_0$
meeting the fiber of $x_0$ are $\iota$-pure of weight $\beta$, which in turn implies that all the points in the irreducible components of $X_0$ meeting $x_0$ are $\iota$-pure of weight $\beta$, which shows that the locus of points where $\mathcal{F}_0$ is $\iota$-pure of weight $\beta$ is closed. This locus is also open because, taking any $x_0$ in it, there is an open neighborhood of $x_0$ which meets only the irreducible components of $X_0$ on which $x_0$ lies. Then the above construction shows that all the points in this neighborhood are also $\iota$-pure of weight $\beta$.

3.2.3. This theorem is obtained via the Fourier transform in §4 of Laumon, *Transformation de Fourier, constantes d’équations fonctionnelles et conjecture de Weil*. [Jump to the notes accompanying §4 of that article.]

3.3.1. f) Follows immediately from base change along any geometric fiber, which by assumption is discrete.

Dévissages (b) and (c) allow one to assume $X$ and $Y$ affine and $f$ (modulo a closed immersion) corresponding to an extension of rings $A \subset B$, where $B = A[b_1, \ldots, b_n]$. The maps $A \subset A[a_1] \subset A[a_1, a_2] \subset \cdots \subset B$ have fibers of dimension $\leq 1$, and by (d), we may assume $f$ has fibers of dimension $\leq 1$, in which case the set of points in $X$ which are isolated in their fibers describes an open locus in $X$ (EGA IV$_3$ 13.1.4). By (b) and (f), one replaces $X$ by the closed complement and assumes $f$ has relative dimension 1.

The existence of a finite purely inseparable extension of $K$ making $(\alpha)$ true follows from the general recipe of the note to (6.1.9) in the special case that $S$ is a point.

The existence of a revêtement étale $u$ as in $(\beta)$ is obtained as follows: $C'$ is smooth over $K$, so is a disjoint union of smooth curves. Following the second-to-last paragraph of the note to (1.8.9) (it is a simple matter of remembering that the first congruence subgroup $\Gamma_1 \subset \text{GL}(\mathbb{Z}_\ell, r)$ is open and pro-$\ell$) one finds revêtements étales of each of the components of $C'$ so that the pullback of $\mathcal{F}$ to each one has no $p$-monodromy. To see that $\mathcal{F}$ is a direct factor of $u_*u^*\mathcal{F}$: $u_*u^*\mathcal{F}$ is the direct sum of the direct images of the restriction of $u^*\mathcal{F}$ to the various components of $D$ (in bijection with components of $C'$). We may therefore assume $C'$, $D$ connected, and the revêtement étale $u$ of constant degree $d$. Then the surjection $u_*u^*\mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F}$ is split by the injection $\mathcal{F} \hookrightarrow \frac{1}{d}u_*u^*\mathcal{F}$ [SGAA, IX 5.1]. $D$ embeds into the disjoint union of smooth projective curves, and the complement
of D is finite over K, but the residue extension needn’t be separable. A purely inseparable extension of K as in the case of (α) remedies this.

To extend to a neighborhood of η: (c) enables noetherian induction on Y, so it suffices to solve the problem over an arbitrarily small Zariski open neighborhood of η. We immediately replace all schemes in question by their reduced subschemes and silently give the reduced subscheme structure to all closed subschemes in what follows. We find a finite purely inseparable field extension η’ → η making (α) and (β) true over the η’-fiber. Shrinking Y as necessary, we find à la note to (6.1.9) a finite radicial extension Y’ → Y inducing our η’ → η generically. By (e) we replace Y, η by Y’, η’, respectively and assume (α) and (β) are true for the η-fiber. As the η-fiber of f is generically smooth, shrinking Y, the complement of the smooth locus of f becomes finite over Y (02Nw), so that by (b) and (f), we may assume f smooth and C = C’, so that X is a disjoint union of its irreducible components. Shrinking Y, we may assume that all the irreducible components of X dominate Y. Picking one irreducible component of X, by (a) we may assume X (and D) are connected. The normalization u : X’ → X of X in the generic point of D coincides with D over η and hence, shrinking Y, becomes étale over X. As F is a direct factor of u*, F, by (a) we may replace the former by the latter. Replace X by X’, f by f ◦ u, and u*, F by u*, F, so that the η-fiber of f is now D. Shrinking Y, it maps to Spec Q or Spec F_p in Spec Z. As Y is reduced by assumption, possibly shrinking further, Y becomes smooth over k := Spec Q or Spec F_p. As f : X → Y is smooth and X is connected, X is also integral.

Suppose for a moment that the embedding D ← D ⊂ P^N_η extends to an Y-morphism i : X → P^N_Y. Let X := i(X); as X is irreducible, so is X. As i : X → X is an open immersion over η, it induces an isomorphism of function fields. As we are in the category of k-varieties, there is an open loci U_1 ⊂ X (containing the η-fiber), U_2 ⊂ X so that i restricts to an isomorphism U_1 → U_2 (0BxN). Shrinking Y, we may assume X = U_1 and i : X ← X is an open immersion. By EGA IV 3 13.1.3, every fiber of X → Y is of dimension ≥ 1 and the condition that a point of X lie on an irreducible component of its fiber of dimension > 1 describes a closed locus of X not meeting X_η = D As D → η is smooth, shrinking Y, X → Y becomes smooth purely of relative dimension 1. As the closed set X − X meets D in D − D, shrinking Y, we may suppose the former is the
3. LA CONJECTURE DE WEIL. II

55

closure of the latter. Shrinking $Y, \overline{X} - X$, which is generically finite étale, becomes finite étale (02NW), hence equidimensional of dimension equal to $\dim Y$, hence a divisor in $X$. If $\overline{\xi}$ denotes a geometric point centered on the generic point $\xi$ of $X$, the restriction of $\mathcal{F}$ to $X_\eta$ corresponds by construction to a representation of $\pi_1(X_\eta, \overline{\xi})$ which factors through its maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient. As $\pi_1(X, \overline{\xi})$ is a quotient of $\pi_1(X_\eta, \overline{\xi})$, $\pi_1(X, \overline{\xi})$ also acts through its maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient (Ribes & Zalesskii (3.4.1) (b)).

How to extend the immersion $D \hookrightarrow P^N_\eta$, which of course determines $D \hookrightarrow P^N_\eta$? The map $D \hookrightarrow P^N_\eta$ corresponds uniquely to the data of an invertible sheaf $\mathcal{L}$ on $D$ and global sections $s_0, \ldots, s_N \in \Gamma(D, \mathcal{L})$ which generate $\mathcal{L}$. Clearly $\mathcal{L}$ extends to an invertible sheaf also called $\mathcal{L}$ on a Zariski open $U \subset X$ containing $X_\eta = D$ (as $X$ is integral, it is just a matter of ensuring that the transition functions extend to sections of $\mathcal{O}_U^\times$). Shrinking $U$, we may assume the sections $s_i$ extend to global sections of $\mathcal{L}$ over $U$, defining a morphism $\mathcal{O}_U^{N+1} \to \mathcal{L}$ with coherent cokernel $\mathcal{K}$. As the support of $\mathcal{K}$ is closed and does not meet $D$, we subtract $U \setminus \text{supp } \mathcal{K}$ from $U$ so that $\mathcal{L}$ is again generated by $s_0, \ldots, s_N \in \Gamma(U, \mathcal{L})$. As $X_\eta \subset U$, we shrink $Y$ so that $X = U$ and so that $Y$ is affine, in which case the data of $\mathcal{L}$ and the $s_i$ defines a morphism $X \to P^N_Y$ restricting to the given immersion of the generic fiber. We’re done.

3.4.2. $F\varphi - \varphi \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \rightsquigarrow$ recall that given sheaves $\mathcal{F}_0, \mathcal{G}_0$ on $X_0$ and $f \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$, $F$ acts on $f \mapsto Ff$ by delivering the dashed arrow in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F^*\mathcal{F} & \xrightarrow{F^*f} & F^*\mathcal{G} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{F} & \xrightarrow{Ff} & \mathcal{G}.
\end{array}
\]

Since the epimorphism $\nu : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{F}$ is the inverse image of a map $\nu_0 : \mathcal{E}_0 \to \mathcal{F}_0$, so invariant under Frobenius. To check that $F\varphi$ is a splitting (which implies $F\varphi - \varphi \in \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$), we have to show that $\nu \circ F\varphi = \text{id}$. As $\nu = F\nu$, this is immediate: $F\nu \circ F\varphi = F(\nu \circ \varphi) = F\text{id} = \text{id}$. A different choice of splitting $\varphi'$ has $F\varphi' - \varphi'$ differing from $F\varphi - \varphi$ by some $Ff - f$, hence goes to the same class in $\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})_F$.

3.4.4. The point is that the same proof as gives (3.4.3), applied to the $H^0$, i.e. to $\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})$, shows that the latter has weights $\gamma - \beta + n$, with $n$ an integer $\geq 0$. By (3.4.2),
Ext¹(\mathcal{F}_0, \mathcal{G}_0) is nonzero only if one of \(H^0(X, \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}))_F\) or \(H^1(X, \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}))_F\) is; (3.4.3) gives a necessary condition for the latter and the former is zero unless the action of \(F\) on \(\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G})\) has 1 among its eigenvalues, which, as remarked, can only happen if \(\beta \equiv \gamma \mod \mathbb{Z}\) and \(\beta \geq \gamma\).

3.4.5. In other words, \(\mathcal{F}'\) is the socle of \(\mathcal{F}\). There is something to prove: that there is a unique maximal such \(\mathcal{F}'\), and that it coincides with the (not necessarily direct) sum of all the simple submodules of \(\mathcal{F}\). As the Frobenius correspondence \(F^* \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}\) sends simple modules to simple modules, it follows that it sends the socle into the socle; as the same is true of its inverse, it identifies the two socles. Since a semisimple module is the sum of its simple submodules, in order to take care of both points it is enough to show that

\[(*)\] If \(M\) is a sum of simple submodules, then \(M\) is a direct sum of simple submodules.

To be clear, if there were two maximal semisimple submodules \(M_1, M_2 \subset M\), then \((*)\) shows that \(M_1 + M_2\) is semisimple, hence \(M_1 = M_1 + M_2 = M_2\). For the second point, \((*)\) implies that the sum of all the simple submodules of \(M\) is semisimple; this sum is the largest semisimple module since if there were a larger one it would have an additional simple factor, contradicting the fact that the original contains all simple submodules of \(M\).

To prove \((*)\), in fact you can prove something stronger, which is that if \(N\) is any submodule of \(M\), then \(M = N \oplus N'\), where \(N'\) is a direct sum of simple submodules. Suppose \(M = S_1 + \ldots + S_n\) with \(S_i\) simple, and let \(I \subset \{1, \ldots, n\}\) be maximal with respect to the property that the sum \(W := N + \sum_{i \in I} S_i\) is direct. If \(W \neq M\), then there is some \(1 \leq j \leq n\) such that \(S_j \notin W\), so \(S_j \cap W = 0\) and \(W + S_j = W \oplus S_j\), contradicting the maximality of \(I\). Therefore \(W = M\).

3.4.7. (i) Evidently \(\left(\bigoplus_{b' \neq b} \mathcal{F}_0(b')\right) \cap \mathcal{F}_0(b) = 0\), since this sheaf, as a subsheaf of \(\mathcal{F}_0(b)\), has punctual \(i\)-weights in \(b\), but \(\bigoplus_{b' \neq b} \mathcal{F}_0(b')\) has no nonzero subsheaf with punctual \(i\)-weights in \(b\). (The punctual \(i\)-weights at any point of a subsheaf are of course a subset of the \(i\)-weights of the larger sheaf at that point.)
(ii) To see that $\text{Gr}_i \mathcal{F}_0$ is $\iota$-pure of weight $i$, apply the nine-lemma to the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \rightarrow & W_{i-1} \mathcal{F}_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & W_{i-1} \mathcal{F}_0'' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & W_i \mathcal{F}_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & W_i \mathcal{F}_0'' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & \text{Gr}_i \mathcal{F}_0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & \text{Gr}_i \mathcal{F}_0'' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & & 0.
\end{array}
\]

3.4.8. (i) The point is that provided that if specialization sends $(i^* \mathcal{F}_0)(b)$ into $i^* j_*((f^* \mathcal{F}_0)(b))$, then we get sheaves $\mathcal{F}_0(b)$ which restrict to the given ones over $U_0$ and $F_0$, and inclusions and projections. The required properties for the inclusions and projections can be checked punctually over $U_0$ and $F_0$, where they have already been established.

Note that in the above argument we assumed that $M$ is a finite sum of simple submodules. To prove (**) in full generality, i.e. $M = \sum_{j \in J} S_j$, one orders the sets of indices $I \subset J$ with the property that $N + \sum_{i \in I} S_i = N \oplus \bigoplus_{i \in I} S_i$ by inclusion and picks a maximal one by Zorn’s lemma, then proceeds identically.

(ii) ‘par descente’ $\leadsto$ [SGA1, IX 4.12]: if $f : X'_0 \rightarrow X_0$ is the normalization morphism, $f$ is a morphism of effective descent for the category of revêtements étales (fibered over the category of schemes). If $\text{pr}_1, \text{pr}_2 : X'_0 \times_{X_0} X'_0 \rightarrow X'_0$ denote the projections and $\mathcal{F}_0'$ denotes the reciprocal image of $\mathcal{F}_0$ on $X'$, then $W$ induces, by pullback, a finite increasing filtration $W_\alpha$ of $\text{pr}_a^* \mathcal{F}_0'$ for $\alpha = 1, 2$ by lisse subsheaves with the property that $\text{Gr}_W(\text{pr}_a^* \mathcal{F}_0') = \text{pr}_a^*(\text{Gr}_W \mathcal{F}_0')$ is punctually $\iota$-pure of weight $i$. As $\mathcal{F}_0'$ comes from $\mathcal{F}_0$ on $X_0$, $\text{pr}_1^* \mathcal{F}_0' = \text{pr}_2^* \mathcal{F}_0'$, and by the uniqueness already established, $W_1 = W_2$. Therefore by descent we get a filtration $W$ on $\mathcal{F}_0'$ by lisse subsheaves so that
\( f^* \Gr_W^i \mathcal{F}_0 = \Gr_W^i \mathcal{F}'_0 \) is \( i \)-pure of weight \( i \). As \( f \) is finite, this implies that \( \Gr_W^i \mathcal{F}_0 \) is \( i \)-pure of the same weight.

**6.1.6.** To see \((\ast)_0\), shrinking \( S \) we can assume all the irreducible components of \( Y \) dominate \( S \); as \( f \) is dense, \( \dim X_{\eta} = 0 \) means that \( Y \rightarrow S \) is also generically finite. Shrinking \( S \), \( Y \rightarrow S \) becomes moreover finite \( \text{(02NW)} \). The complement \( Y - X \) is of dimension strictly less than \( \dim Y = \dim S \), hence its image in \( S \) is a proper closed sublocus, and shrinking \( S \), we can make it disappear completely.

**6.1.7.** ‘L’assertion est locale sur \( Y \)’ Suppose one has a finite open cover \( \{ Y_i \} \) of \( Y \) and the assertion on each \( Y_i \). Let \( Y'_i, Y_{1i} \) be as in the assertion for \( Y_i \) and shrink \( S \) so that \( Rf_*\mathcal{F} \) restricts to a mixed complex on each \( Y'_i \). The locus \( Y' := \bigcup_i Y'_i \) is open; its complement \( Y_1 := Y - U \) has the property that \( Y_1 \cap Y_i \) is a closed sublocus of \( Y_{1i} \); hence finite over \( S \). Shrinking \( S \), we may assume every irreducible component of \( Y_1 \) dominates \( S \), so that the \( \eta \)-fiber of \( Y_1 \rightarrow S \) is the set of generic points of irreducible components of \( Y_1 \); in particular, this set is finite. Shrinking \( S \) further, the map \( Y_1 \rightarrow S \) becomes finite.

The locus \( Y' \) is covered by open loci \( \{ Y'_1, \ldots, Y'_n \} \) such that for each \( i \), the restriction of the complex \( Rf_*\mathcal{F} \) to \( Y'_i \) is mixed. Let us see that therefore the restriction of \( Rf_*\mathcal{F} \) to \( Y' \) is mixed. Call this complex \( \mathcal{G} \) and proceed by induction on \( n \). Let \( Y''_n \xleftarrow{i} Y' \xrightarrow{j} Y' - Y''_n \). In the distinguished triangle

\[
j_*j^*\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{G} \rightarrow i_*i^*\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \]

the first term is mixed by assumption and \cite{WeilII} 3.3.1, and the third is mixed by the inductive hypothesis applied to \( Y' - Y''_n \) and the stability of mixedness under reciprocal image and direct image by a finite morphism \cite{WeilII} 1.2.5. Therefore \( \mathcal{G} \) is mixed.

By the above reasoning, if \( \mathcal{G} \) is mixed when restricted to \( \text{pr}_i^{-1}(U_i) \), it is mixed when restricted to \( \bigcup_i \text{pr}_i^{-1}(U_i) \). Let \( Z \) denote the complement of this open locus in \( Y \). Shrinking \( S \), we may assume every irreducible component of \( Z \) dominates \( S \). As the morphism \( Z \rightarrow S \) factors through \( \mathbb{A}^1_S \) via the \( i \) projections, and \( \text{pr}_i(Z) \) misses the generic point of \( \mathbb{A}^1_S \) for all \( i \), \( Z \rightarrow S \) becomes finite after shrinking \( S \): for each \( i \), the restriction to \( Z \) of the \( i \)th coordinate function on \( \mathbb{A}^n_S \) satisfies an equation of algebraic dependence over \( S \); shrinking \( S \), one can make these equations monic.
6.1.9. Let’s see how to reduce to the case that $X$ has a dense open locus smooth over $S$:

1. Shrinking $S$, we can assume that every irreducible component of $X$ dominates $S$.
2. Going irreducible component by irreducible component, we can assume $X$ (and $S$) are integral with generic points $\xi$ and $\eta$, respectively.
3. There is a finite, purely inseparable extension $k(\eta) \subseteq k'$ so that $k' \subseteq k(\xi) \otimes_{k(\eta)} k'$ induces a separable residual extension.
4. Shrinking $S$, we can find a finite radicial extension $S' \to S$ inducing the given map $k(\eta) \subseteq k'$ on the generic fiber and so that $S'$ is reduced.
5. It follows that $(X \times_S S')_{\text{red}} \to S'$ is smooth at $\xi$.

The first two steps require no justification. As $S$ is of finite type over $\mathbb{Z}[1/\ell]$, it is Nagata and in particular universally Japanese (0335). Steps (3) and (4) are trivial when $S$ dominates $\mathbb{Z}[1/\ell]$ as $k'$ can be taken to be the trivial extension; therefore for those steps we can and do assume that $S$ is of finite type over $\mathbb{F}_p$.

**Step [3]:** 04KN shows that there exists a finite, purely inseparable extension $k(\eta) \subseteq k'$ such that the residue field of $k(\xi) \otimes_{k(\eta)} k'$ includes into a field $K'$ separably generated (0300) over $k'$. As this residue field is finitely generated over $k'$, it follows (030X) that $k' \subseteq k(\xi) \otimes_{k(\eta)} k'$ is a separable residual extension.

**Step [4]:** Let $S'_1$ denote the normalization of $S$ in $k'$. As $S$ is Japanese, $S'_1 \to S$ is finite (032F). Shrinking $S$, $S'_1 \to S$ is moreover flat (032N). Therefore $S'_1 \to S$ is radicial (01S3), as every geometric fiber has cardinality 1 by EGA IV$_3$ (15.5.2).\footnote{An open morphism is open at every point – see EGA IV$_3$ (14.1.1) for the definition of open at a point.}

**Step [5]:** As $S' \to S$ and its base extension $X \times_S S' \to X$ are radicial, we can continue to denote their generic points by $\eta$ and $\xi$, respectively. To see that $(X \times_S S')_{\text{red}} \to S'$ is smooth at $\xi$, it suffices to show that the map of generic fibers is smooth at $\xi$ (01V9). This follows by (00TV) since by step (3), the map of generic points is a separable extension. By the definition of being smooth at a point (01V5), there are open neighborhoods $U \subseteq S'$ of $\eta$ and $V \subseteq (X \times_S U)_{\text{red}}$ of $\xi$ such that $V \to U$ is smooth. As $S'$ is homeomorphic to $S$, the image of $U$ in $S$ is a nonempty open locus. Replacing $S$ by this locus and...
S' by U, S' → S is our promised finite radicial extension such that the composition 0 ≠ V ↪ (X ×_S S')_{red} → S' is smooth.

6.1.10. This point is something of a mystery: if the conventions of (0.1) are in force, which they should be, X is already separated, so that f is separated, and hence admits a compactification, without assuming X is affine. On the other hand, this argument is lifted from [19 2.8] where the schemes are not supposed separated, so I assume that (0.1) is not in force in the statement of (6.1.3) and X is not supposed separated.

In that case, of course the intersection of affines needn’t be affine, so if you take an affine cover of X, terms will show up in the associated Leray spectral sequence 072E that are not affine. One could take an affine hypercovering, but this is unnecessary: if {U_i} are finitely many affine opens in X, although ∩_i U_i needn’t be affine, the map ∩_i U_i → Y factors as an open immersion into, say, U_1, followed by U_1 → Y. As Y is affine, the map U_1 → Y is separated, so the map ∩_i U_i → Y is separated and admits a compactification. Therefore, the given argument will apply to each of the E_1 terms in the spectral sequence, so that all the sheaves on the E_1 page will be mixed. By the stability of mixedness under subquotients (1.2.5) (iii), the E_∞ terms will then be mixed, and R^i f_* F will be a successive extension of mixed sheaves, hence itself mixed.

6.1.12. ‘La restriction de cette action au groupe d’inertie est automatiquement quasi unipotente.’ ～～～ Let I denote the inertia. It acts on R^iΨ(𝔽'); as this sheaf is constructible, there is a finite set of geometric points {x_i} of X_Ł so that if a subgroup I_1 ⊂ I acts unipotently on the stalks of this sheaf at the s_i, I_1 acts unipotently on the sheaf itself. The stalk of this sheaf at any x_i is a finite-dimensional Q_Ł-vector space, and as S is of finite type over F_p or Q, no finite extension of k(s) contains all the roots of unity of order a power of ℓ. Therefore the conditions of Grothendieck’s quasi-unipotent monodromy theorem [SGA 7 I 1.1] are satisfied, and there exists an open subgroup I_1 of I such that σ acts unipotently on R^iΨ(𝔽')_{x_i} for every σ ∈ I_1. The subgroup I_1 := ∩_i I_i is open in I, and has the property that every σ in I_1 acts unipotently on the sheaf R^iΨ(𝔽').

A brief digression: let V be a finite-dimensional vector space over a finite extension of Q_Ł admitting a unipotent action of an open subgroup I_1 of I. As I_1 is compact, this action stabilizes a lattice in V, and the image of P ∩ I_1 in GL(V) is finite, hence torsion.
There is a basis for $V$ for which $I_1$ acts via upper-triangular matrices with 1 along the diagonal [Milne, 14.2], and the latter subgroup is torsion free since $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ is (c.f. e.g. Algebra IV: Infinite Groups, Linear Groups ed. Kostrikin & Shafarevich Part I, Chapter 2, §4.2 p. 74). It follows that $P \cap I_1$ acts trivially on $V$.

In the previous paragraph, $P$ is the wild inertia, but it could be just as well be replaced by $Q$, the kernel of the projection to the maximal pro-$\ell$ subgroup $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ of $I$. The image of $I_1$ in the quotient $I \to I/Q$ is compact, hence closed, hence open. Moreover, $I_1$ acts on $V$ via $I_1/Q$ as we have seen, and every subgroup of finite index in $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ is of the form $\ell^n\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$. It follows that if $T$ denotes a generator of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$, we know the action of $I_1$ once we know the action of $T$, and $T$ is projectively unipotent; i.e. $T^n$ acts unipotently on $V$ for some $n > 0$. After replacing $S_{(s)}$ by a trait finite over $S_{(s)}$, we may assume $I = I_1$ and $n = 1$. Then, to know the unipotent action of $I$ on $R^i\Psi(\mathcal{F}')$, it suffices to know the action of $T$.

All this to explain point (b): namely, if the action of $I$ on $R^i\Psi(\mathcal{F}')$ is unipotent, we can obtain a finite filtration on $R^i\Psi(\mathcal{F}')$ by taking the filtration induced by the nilpotent operator $N$, the logarithm of monodromy. (As remarked in [WeilIII 1.7.3] and elucidated in [the note to 1.7.3], $N$ commutes with the action of $\text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}, \eta)$. The filtration is simply the increasing one $F_k := \ker N^k$.) By construction, $I$ acts as the identity on successive quotients of this filtration.

As for (c), the subgroup $I_1$ found in the first paragraph is an open subgroup of $I$, not $G := \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}, \eta)$. Here is a recipe for cooking up an open subgroup $G_1 \subset G$ so that $I \cap G_1 \subset I_1$, as promised by (c). As in the first paragraph, we can go point by point and find an open $G_i \subset G$ so that $I \cap G_i \subset I_i$, and take $G_1 = \cap_i G_i$. The inertia exact sequence

$$I \to I \to G \to \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}, s) \to 1$$

is (non-canonically) split – see Lemma 7.6 of Serre’s article in Garibaldi-Merkurjev-Serre, Cohomological Invariants in Galois Cohomology and the second paragraph of (1.7.11). Set $V := R^i\Psi(\mathcal{F}')_{\bar{x}_i}$ and let $\rho_i : I \to \text{GL}(V)$ denote the monodromy representation at $\bar{x}_i$ and choose as before a basis for $V$ so that $\rho_i(I_i)$ lands in the subgroup $U \subset \text{GL}(V)$ of upper-triangular matrices with 1 along the diagonal with respect to that

\footnote{Also in Brosnan-Reichstein-Vistoli, Essential dimension of moduli of curves and other algebraic stacks.}
basis; \( U \) is closed in \( \text{GL}(V) \). Let \( J_i := \rho_i^{-1}(U) \), which is closed, and, as it contains \( I_i \), also open in \( I \). As before, \( J_i \cap P \) acts trivially so that \( J_i \) acts via the inertia character \( t_\ell \) of (1.7). As \( G \) is a semidirect product of \( I \) and \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \), identifying \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \) with its image under a choice of splitting, \( G = I \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \). Set \( G_i := J_i \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \). To see that \( G_i \) is a subgroup, we have to show that for any \( \sigma \in \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \), \( \sigma J_i \sigma^{-1} = J_i \). Recall that \( t_\ell(\sigma J_i \sigma^{-1}) = \sigma t_\ell(J_i) \), where here \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \) acts on \( Z_\ell(1) \) via the character \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_\ell^{\times} \) obtained from the natural action of \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s) \) on roots of unity. As \( t_\ell(J_i) \) is an open subgroup of \( Z_\ell(1) \), it’s of the form \( \ell^a Z_\ell(1) \) for some \( a \geq 0 \). As multiplication by \( Z_\ell^{\times} \) preserves this subgroup, \( \sigma t_\ell(J_i) \subseteq t_\ell(J_i) \). As \( p_i \) factors through \( t_\ell \), this shows that \( p_i(\sigma J_i \sigma^{-1}) \subseteq p(J_i) \subseteq U \). By the definition of \( J_i \), \( \sigma J_i \sigma^{-1} \subseteq J_i \), so \( G_i \) is a subgroup. It is evidently closed, and, as the finitely many coset representatives for \( I/J_i \) are also coset representatives for \( G/G_i \), open. Finally, \( G_i \cap I = J_i \), and by definition \( J_i \) acts unipotently on \( V = R^i \Psi(\mathcal{F})_{\bar{T}} \). We’re done.

**6.1.13.** The correct version of formula (1.6.14.3) (c.f. the note to (1.6.14)) shows that it suffices to show that the \( P_{-j} \) are mixed. Formula (1.6.14.2) then shows that it suffices to show that \( \ker N \) is mixed, where if \( T \) is any generator of the maximal pro-\( \ell \) quotient of \( I, N = \log T \). Then \( \ker N \) coincides with invariants under \( T \); as \( I \) acts unipotently, this is the same as invariants under \( I \).

That the \((R^i \Psi \mathcal{F})^1\) are quotients of the \( u^* R^i v_* (v^* \mathcal{F}) \) is the exact sequence (5) of the proof of (3.6.1) in its incarnation

\[
0 \rightarrow (R^i \Psi \mathcal{F})_{I}(-1) \rightarrow u^* R^i v_* (v^* \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow (R^i \Psi \mathcal{F})^1 \rightarrow 0.
\]

For this, following appendix A of BBD, we have \( R \Gamma(I, R \Psi \mathcal{F}) = u^* R v_* (v^* \mathcal{F}) \) (technically the inverse image of the latter by \( S(\bar{s}) \to S(s) \) with action of \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}/s) \) compatible with the action of Galois on \( X_{\bar{s}} \), but this is the same as what is written). The argument of (1)–(5) in the proof of (3.6.1) then gives the above exact sequence; on the matter of invariants by a finite group of order indivisible by \( \ell \) coinciding with coinvariants (acting on a sheaf of \( Z/\ell^n, Z_\ell, Q_\ell \) or \( \overline{Q}_\ell \)-modules), the point is that you can average, giving a map to invariants through which the map to coinvariants factors – see the note to BBD.

**appendix A** This argument shows that \((R \Psi \mathcal{F})^1 = (R \Psi \mathcal{F})_{I} \), where \( I \) is the finite group of order prime to \( \ell \) of (3.6.1) (called \( Q \) in the appendix A to BBD).
6.2.5. c) As $X$ is a curve, the restriction of $j_\ast \mathcal{F}$ to $X - U$ depends only on the generic behavior of $\mathcal{F}$, so that for the purpose of calculating the punctual weights of $\mathcal{F}$ at points of $X - U$ we may assume $\mathcal{F}$ is lisse. Then (1.8.8.1) gives that the weights of $j_\ast \mathcal{F}$ at points of $X - U$ are $\leq n$. As $\mathcal{F}$ is pure, $\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is mixed of weight $\leq -n$, so again by (1.8.8.1) $j_\ast \mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is mixed of weight $\leq -n$.

d) Same argument with (1.8.8.1) replaced by (1.8.8.2).
Bibliography

[D] Deligne, Théorèmes de finitude en cohomologie ℓ-adique
[WeilII] Deligne, Weil II.
[GM] The Tame Fundamental Group of a Formal Neighbourhood of a Divisor with Normal Crossings on a Scheme par A. Grothendieck et J. Murre.
[SGA1] SGA 1.
[SGAD] SGA 3.
[SGA 4 1/2] SGA 4 1/2
[SGA5] SGA 5.
4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS

1.1.11. To verify the anti-commutativity of the 9th square, as the morphism of triangles \((X'', Y'', Z'') \to (X'[1], Y'[1], Z'[1])\) factors as the composition of two morphisms of triangles \((X'', Y'', Z'') \to (A, Y'', Z'[1]) \to (X'[1], Y'[1], Z'[1])\), where the second arrow is the rotation of \((Z', A, Y'') \to (Z', X'[1], Y'[1])\), it suffices to verify that the triangle \((Z', X'[1], Y'[1])\) which appears in this last morphism of triangles has all arrows induced by the arrows of \((X', Y', Z')\) or translates of them (with the same parity). This is not hard to check from the diagram (1). (The stated explanation appears to be an un-explanation.)

1.3.3. Though it is not stated explicitly, it is immediate from the definition \(D_{\leq n} := \mathcal{D}_{\leq n}^0[-n], \mathcal{D}_{\geq n} := \mathcal{D}_{\geq n}^0[-n]\) that \((\tau_{\leq n} X)[m] = \tau_{\leq n-m}(X[m])\) and \((\tau_{\geq n} X)[m] = \tau_{\geq n-m}(X[m])\). Namely, for \(X\) in \(\mathcal{D}\) and \(T\) in \(\mathcal{D}_{\leq n}\), \(T = T'[-m]\) for some \(T'\) in \(\mathcal{D}_{\leq n-m}\), so

\[
\text{Hom}(T, (\tau_{\leq n-m}(X[m]))[-m]) = \text{Hom}(T'[-m], (\tau_{\leq n-m}(X[m]))[-m])
\]

\[
= \text{Hom}(T'[-m], \tau_{\leq n-m}(X[m]))[-m] = \text{Hom}(T', X[m])[-m] = \text{Hom}(T'[-m], X)
\]

\[
= \text{Hom}(T, X).
\]

1.4.2.1. The argument for why the derived functors continue to satisfy the stated adjunctions is as follows (this argument is also found in SGA 4 Exp. XVIII 3.1.4.11). Given \(F, G\) an adjoint pair of functors on abelian categories

\[
\mathcal{A} \xleftarrow{\text{F}} \xrightarrow{\text{G}} \mathcal{B}
\]

where both categories have enough injectives and \(L\) is exact. The functors \(F\) and \(G\) extend to functors \(D^+(\mathcal{A}) \rightleftharpoons D^+(\mathcal{B})\). Given \(K' \in D^+(\mathcal{A}), L' \in D^+(\mathcal{B})\), we may assume \(L'\) is a complex of injective objects; we have an isomorphism of triple complexes

\[
\text{Hom}'(F(K'), L) \overset{\sim}{\longrightarrow} \text{Hom}'(K', G(L')).
\]
As $G$ preserves injectives, taking $H^0$ of the associated simple complex (calculated with products) finds the desired

$$\text{Hom}_{K(A)}(F(K'), L') \to \text{Hom}_{K(B)}(K', G(L')),$$

where both sides are also Hom in the respective derived categories, since $L'$ and $G(L')$ are complexes of injectives.

1.4.4. The question is, why are the adjoints to the Verdier quotients fully faithful? Let’s consider the quotient $Q : T \to T/\mathcal{U}$, where $\mathcal{U}$ is the strictly full coreflective triangulated subcategory of $T$; $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$ form a t-structure on $T$; $\mathcal{U} = \mathcal{V}^\perp$, and $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{U}^\perp$. Since the embedding $u : \mathcal{U} \to T$ admits a right adjoint $u$, it follows that $Q$ admits a right adjoint $Q$. [CD I 6-5]. There is a natural isomorphism of functors $Q \circ Q \to v \circ v'$, where $v'$ is the left adjoint to the inclusion $v : \mathcal{V} \to T$ [CD I 6-6]. The functor $v'$ is nothing other than $\tau_{\geq 0}$ for the t-structure $(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V})$, and therefore, restricted to $\mathcal{V}$, $v \circ v' = \text{id}_{|\mathcal{V}}$. On the other hand, the functor $Q$ when restricted to $\mathcal{V}$ is fully faithful [CD I 5-3]. Therefore $Q$, restricted to the essential image of $\mathcal{V}$ under $Q$ is fully faithful. This essential image is all of $T/\mathcal{U}$, since every object $X$ in $T$ belongs to an exact triangle $(U, X, V)$ with $U, V$ objects in $\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V}$, respectively. The assertion that $v'$ yields an equivalence $v' : T/\mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{V}$ (functor obtained by applying the universal property of $T/\mathcal{U}$ to $v'$) is easy since $Q \circ v : \mathcal{V} \to T/\mathcal{U}$ is an equivalence, and $v' \circ Q \circ v = v' \circ v = \text{id}$. The corresponding statement for $T \to T/\mathcal{V}$ follows identically.

1.4.6. In part b), there is the following consideration. Given triangulated categories $T, T'$, a thick subcategory $\mathcal{U} \subset T$ with Verdier quotient $Q : T \to T/\mathcal{U}$, exact functors $F, G : T/\mathcal{U} \to T'$ and a natural transformation $\phi : F \circ Q \to G \circ Q$, there is an obvious candidate for a natural transformation $\phi : F \to G$, since $\text{Ob}(T/\mathcal{U}) = \text{Ob}(T)$. But is it still a natural transformation? Let $f : X \to Y$ in $T/\mathcal{U}$ be represented by $X \xleftarrow{s} Z \xrightarrow{a} Y$, where $s$ is in the saturated multiplicative system of morphisms corresponding to $\mathcal{U}$. The
shows that \( \varphi(X) \circ G(f) \) coincides with \( F(X) \xleftarrow{F(s)} F(Z) \xrightarrow{G(a) \circ \varphi(Z)} G(Y) \), but as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(Z) & \xrightarrow{F(a)} & F(Y) \\
\downarrow{\varphi(Z)} & & \downarrow{\varphi(Y)} \\
G(Z) & \xrightarrow{G(a)} & G(Y)
\end{array}
\]

commutes, this morphism is just \( F(X) \xleftarrow{F(s)} F(Z) \xrightarrow{G(a) \circ \varphi(Z)} G(Y) = F(f) \circ \varphi(Y) \), which shows that \( \varphi \) is indeed a natural transformation.

**1.4.7.** In c), by 1.1.9, the morphism \( B \to C \) is the unique such that completes the morphism of triangles \( (B, j_! j^* X[1], j_! j^* X[1]) \to (C, X[1], j_! j^* X[1]) \).

**1.4.13.** The distinguished triangle \( (\tau^F_{\leq p} X, X, i_* \tau_{> p} i^* Y) \) is the distinguished triangle \( (A, Y, i_* \tau_{> p} i^* X) \) of 1.4.10, since as remarked, \( X = Y \) since \( \tau_{> 0} j^* X = 0 \). To check that \( A = \tau^F_{\leq p} X \), note that \( A \) belongs to \( D^{\leq p} \), as \( i^* A \simeq \tau_{\leq p} i^* X \), and that if \( T \) belongs to \( D^{\leq p} \), then by applying \( \text{Hom}(T, -) \) to the above distinguished triangle and observing that as \( i_* \) is \( t \)-exact, it commutes with truncation, so \( i_* \tau_{> p} i^* X[1] \) lies in \( D^{> p + 1} \), \( \text{Hom}(T, i_* \tau_{> p} i^* X) = 0 = \text{Hom}^{-1}(T, i_* \tau_{> p} i^* X) \), and \( \text{Hom}(T, X) \simeq \text{Hom}(T, A) \).

The distinguished triangle \( (\tau^F_{\leq p-1} X, X, i_* \tau_{> p-1} i^* X) \) and the fact that \( i_* \) commutes with truncation establishes \( i_* \tau_{> p-1} i^* X \) as \( \tau_{> p-1} X \) for the \( t \)-structure on \( D \); applying \( \tau_{\leq p} \) and passing it through the \( i_* \) gives the statement about cohomology.

**1.4.14.** To find the dual statement at the end of the proof, reverse arrows and exchange \( j_! \leftrightarrow j_* \), \( i^* \leftrightarrow i^! \) to obtain the distinguished triangle \( (i_* i^* X[1], j_! Y, X) \), then use (b').
the isomorphism \( j_* \circ j_! \simeq i_! j_* [1] \) of 1.4.6.4, (and the note to 1.3.3) to write
\[
i_* i^* X[-1] = i_*(\tau_{\leq p-1}(j_* / j_!)) Y[-1] = i_* \tau_{\leq p}((j_* / j_!) Y[-1]) = i_* \tau_{\leq p} j_* Y,
\]
establishing \( X \) as \( \tau_{\geq p+1} j_* Y \).

1.4.17.1. A little note: \( p^* i^* X \) is the largest quotient of \( X \) belonging to \( \mathcal{C}_F \). First we check that it is a quotient from 1.4.17 (ii). Then, suppose \( A \) belongs to \( \mathcal{C}_F \) and \( X \to A \); then \( p^* i^* X \to p^* i^* A \to A \), as \( p^* i^* \) is fully faithful, so the adjunction morphism \( p^* i^* p^* \to id \) is an isomorphism, and \( p^* i^* X \) is indeed the largest quotient of \( X \) in \( \mathcal{C}_F \). Dually for \( p^! i^! \).

1.4.18. A little note about \( T \) faithful: as \( p^! j^* \) is an exact functor, if \( p^! j^* f_1 = 0 \), this means that \( p^! j^* \text{im}(f_1) = \text{im}(p^! j^* f_1) = 0 \), which is to say that \( \text{im} f_1 \) belongs to \( \mathcal{C}_F \).

1.4.23. In the distinguished triangle \((i_* \mathcal{H}^0 i^! j_! B, \tau^F_{\geq 0} j_! B, \tau^F_{\geq 1} j_! B)\), as \( j_! B = \tau^U_{\geq 0} j_! B \), \( \tau^F_{\geq p} = \tau^F_{\geq p} \tau^U_{\geq p} \), and \( j_! \) is right t-exact, \( \tau^F_{\geq 0} j_! B \) sits in \( \mathcal{C} \). Likewise, \( i_* \) is t-exact, so \( i_* \mathcal{H}^0 i^! j_! B \) also sits in \( \mathcal{C} \), and from the long exact sequence of \( \mathcal{H}^i \) one finds that \( \tau^F_{\geq 1} j_! B \) is in \( \mathcal{D}[-1,0] \).

2.1.2. In the discussion ‘\( \text{Si les foncteurs } \mathcal{O}_S^1 \text{ sont de dimension cohomologique finie. . . } \)’ it is claimed that there is a neighborhood of \( S \) in which \( \mathcal{H}^j \tau_{<a} K \) is supported on \( S \). To find such a neighborhood, simply discard \( \overline{S} - S \) and the closure of any stratum which doesn’t meet \( S \). The assumption that the closure of each stratum is a union of strata implies that the induced stratification of the resulting neighborhood of \( S \) has the property that every stratum contains \( S \) in its closure, and therefore \( \mathcal{H}^j \tau_{<a} K \) vanishes on every stratum distinct from \( S \). By construction, \( S \) is a closed set in this neighborhood.

As for the isomorphism \( \mathcal{H}^j (i^*_S \tau_{<a} K) \simeq \mathcal{H}^j (i^!_S \tau_{<a} K) \) for \( i < a \), let us replace \( X \) by the neighborhood above, in which case the adjunction morphism \( \tau_{<a} K \to i^*_S i^*_S \tau_{<a} K \) is an isomorphism as \( \mathcal{O}_S^1 \) and \( \mathcal{O}_S^1 \) are exact and the induced morphism on cohomology \( \mathcal{H}^j (\tau_{>a} K) \to i^*_S i^*_S \mathcal{H}^j (\tau_{<a} K) \) is an isomorphism for all \( j \). Therefore by 1.4.1.2, \( i^!_S \tau_{<a} K \sim i^!_S i^*_S i^!_S \tau_{<a} K \to i^!_S \tau_{<a} K \).
2.1.13. To get the desired conclusion from the spectral sequence $R^pj_!H^qK \Rightarrow H^{p+q}Rj_*K$, recall that the locally constant constructible sheaves form a weak Serre subcategory of the category of constructible sheaves of $\mathcal{O}$-modules. For $j!$ when $j$ is a closed immersion, just use that $j! = j_!$ is exact in the long exact sequence of cohomology for the distinguished triangle $(j_!j^!K, K, k_*k^*K)$.

One can deduce that the truncation operators $\tau_{\leq p}$ and $\tau_{\geq p}$ respect $D_c(X, R)$ from the proof of 1.4.10 by induction on the number of strata à la 2.1.3.

2.1.14. For the isomorphism $i^!L \simeq i^*L \otimes \mathbb{Z}$ or $[−d]$, combine Proposition 4.3.6 from Dimca, *Sheaves in Topology* with the description of the relative dualizing complex in, e.g., Remark 3.3.5 in Kashiwara-Schapira, *Sheaves on Manifolds*, taking $S = \{*\}$ there and noting that $f^!A_X$ is the relative dualizing complex $\omega_{Y/X}$ (Definition 3.1.16), and the orientation sheaves are self-dual (so that Deligne’s or coincides with $\text{or}_T \otimes i^* \text{or}_S$). The ‘non-characteristic’ hypothesis in Dimca’s Proposition is trivial in light of the result that precedes it and the fact that the $H^m j^!K$ are locally constant.

Note that by the description of $i^!$ in terms of local cohomology, this gives a statement like, $H^n(S, \mathcal{F})$ vanishes in degrees less than the codimension of $T$, for $\mathcal{F}$ a locally free sheaf (with obvious extension to $\mathcal{F}$ a bounded below complex with locally free $H^0$).

2.1.16. In the remarks about Verdier duality, the fact that the functor $D$ exchanges $j! \leftrightarrow j_!, j^! \leftrightarrow j^*$ follows by taking $L$ to be the dualizing complex in the local formulas of adjunction

$$j_*DK = j_*R\mathcal{H}om(K, j^!L) \sim R\mathcal{H}om(j_!K, L) = Dj_*K$$
$$Dj^*K = R\mathcal{H}om(j^*K, j^!L) \sim j^!R\mathcal{H}om(K, L) = j^!DK$$

(the latter may be found, e.g. in SGA 4 Exp. XVIII 3.1.12.2, or Dimca, 3.3.7, but see especially SGA 5 Exp. I 1.12). These formulæ hold for more general morphisms than the inclusion of a locally closed subscheme; the condition is compactifiability.

In *Th. finitude §4 ‘Bidualité locale,’* Deligne puts Verdier duality for étale cohomology on firm footing in the case of $a : X \to S$ a scheme of finite type over $S$ a regular scheme
of dimension 0 or 1. If \( A = \mathbb{Z}/n \), \( K_S \) constant sheaf on \( S \) with value \( A \), and \( K \) in \( D^b_{\text{ctf}}(X, A) \), put \( K_X := Ra^! K_S \) and \( D : = R \mathcal{H}om(K, K_X) \). Then \( K_X \) is dualizing; i.e.

**Theorem (Deligne).** — \( K \sim DDK \).

This involutivity establishes the stated duality in the formalism, since we may write

\[
D j_* K = D j_* DDK = DDK = j!: DK.
\]

It is essential that the cohomology sheaves be locally constant of finite rank when restricted to each stratum and that \( R \) have the proscribed properties so that Poincaré duality holds on each stratum. In fact, the definition of perverse sheaf is engineered expressly so that on each stratum we have Poincaré duality, and this data determines the Verdier dual of the sheaf on the stratified space.

About the formula \( H^i DDK = (H^{−d−i} K)^! \otimes \) or, let’s do it instead in the case \( R = \mathbb{Z}/\ell \), in which case the dualizing complex is \( \mathbb{Z}/\ell d(d)[2d] \) and the formula is

\[
H^i DDK = (H^{−2d−i} K)^!(d).
\]

This is simply Poincaré duality (SGAA XVIII 3.2.5). (In light of the note to 2.1 in Th. finitude, this is the immediate consequence of the weakly convergent spectral sequence

\[
E^{pq}_2 = \text{Ext}^p(H^{−q}(K), \mathbb{Z}/\ell(d)) \Rightarrow \text{Ext}^{p+q}(K, \mathbb{Z}/\ell(d))
\]

which collapses at the \( E_2 \) page.)

The business about exchanging \( p^* H^i \) and \( p H^i \) is seen to be true for \( H^0 \), then use \( H^i K = H^0(K[i]) \) and \( D(K[n]) = R \mathcal{H}om(K[n], −) = R \mathcal{H}om(−, −)[-n] = (DK)[-n] \)

2.2.2. A word about the ‘trivial’ implication (ii)\( \Rightarrow \)(iii). As each \( S \) in \( \mathcal{S} \) is lisse equidimensional, applying (ii) to each irreducible component we find there exists a Zariski dense open \( i : U \hookrightarrow S \) such that \( i^* H^i i_S^* K = H^i H^i_S i_S^* K \) (resp. \( i^* H^i_S i_S^* K = H^i_S i_S^* K \)) vanish in degrees \( i > p(S) \) (resp. \( i < p(S) \)); as \( H^i_S i_S^* K \) and \( H^i_S i_S^* K \) are locally constant, this implies they also vanish when their restrictions to \( U \) do.

In the second paragraph, ‘il reste à montrer que chacune implique que \( H^i K = 0 \) pour \( i > b \) (resp. \( i < a \)).’ Without securing this, we would not have that \( \tau_{≥a} K \) (resp.
4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS

τ_{<b}K) belongs to D^b_c and the proof in the first paragraph wouldn’t apply. In both cases, the verification for \(i > b\) is easy as \(i^\ast\) is exact. The verification for (iii) \(i < a\) follows the proof of (2.1.2.1) exactly, after \(\mathcal{T}\) has been replaced by a finer stratification. The verification for (ii) follows immediately by the noetherian property from the stated claim that for each irreducible subvariety \(S'\) and each \(i < a\), there exists a dense open \(S\) of \(S'\) such that \(H^iK\) vanishes on \(S\). To prove this claim we proceed by descending induction on \(\dim S'\), the maximal nonvacuous case being easy since such an \(S'\) is an irreducible component of \(X\), and \(H^iK\) vanishes on the dense open \(S\) obtained from (ii) since \(S\) is open in \(X\) and \(i^!_S = i^\ast_S\) is exact. The verification for (iii) \(i \not< a\) follows the proof of (2.1.2.1) exactly, after \(T\) has been replaced by a finer stratification. The verification for (ii) follows immediately by the noetherian property from the stated claim that for each irreducible subvariety \(S_0\) and each \(i \not< a\), there exists a dense open \(S\) of \(S_0\) such that \(H^iK\) vanishes on \(S\). To prove this claim we proceed by descending induction on \(\dim S_0\), the maximal nonvacuous case being easy since such an \(S_0\) is an irreducible component of \(X\), and \(H^iK\) vanishes on the dense open \(S\) obtained from (ii) since \(S\) is open in \(X\) and \(i^!_S = i^\ast_S\) is exact. The case of general \(S'\) will follow from the argument of the proof of (2.1.2.1) (see note for 2.1.2) if we can find a neighborhood \(U\) of the \(S\) obtained from (ii) so that \(\text{supp}(H^j\tau_{<a}K) \subset U\). Begin with the irreducible component containing \(S'\); the inductive assumption gives an open set which has either empty or nonempty intersection with \(S'\). If nonempty, then this intersection is the desired open of \(S'\) of the claim. If empty, \(S'\) belongs to the complement. Throw away all irreducible components of the complement that do not contain \(S'\) and apply the same process to the irreducible component of the complement that contains \(S'\). After finitely many steps we are left only with \(S'\), and we throw away \(S' - S\). The open neighborhood \(U\) is the set we are left with after throwing away finitely many closed sets of \(X\), and \(S\) is closed in \(U\).

2.2.3. In the discussion of the intermediate extension, the triangle \((\tau_{<i}i^\ast j_\ast A, i^\ast j_\ast A, \tau_{\geq i}i^\ast j_\ast A)\) is distinguished, not the one written, and if \(\tau_{\geq i}i^\ast j_\ast A\) is in \(pD^{\geq 0}_c\), then indeed \(p\tau_{<0}i^\ast j_\ast A \sim \tau_{<i}i^\ast j_\ast A\) and \(\tau_{\geq i}i^\ast j_\ast A \simeq p\tau_{\geq 0}i^\ast j_\ast A\); the latter isomorphism establishes an isomorphism \(p\tau_{<0}^F j_\ast A \sim \tau_{<i}^F j_\ast A\), which differs by one character from what is written.

2.2.8. The discussion of \(R\mathcal{H}om\) differs from what is proved in 2.1.20 in that there is no longer a fixed stratification. Fortunately, if \(p \leq a, b \geq q\), there are only finitely many solutions to \(i = m - n\) for a fixed \(i\) and for \(n \leq a, m \geq b\). Therefore for each \(i\), we can apply the reasoning of 2.1.20 to a common refinement of only finitely many stratifications.

2.2.10. As remarked in [the note to 2.1.16] we will an involutive Verdier duality regardless of whether each stratum is smooth or the sheaf on it is lisse (or has lisse
cohomology). The reason we restrict to smooth strata and complexes of sheaves $K$ with lisse cohomology on each stratum is so that we can determine precisely the degrees in which the Verdier dual $D_K$ is concentrated due to the simple description of the dualizing complex and the simple computation of $\mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}\mathcal{o}\mathcal{m}$ (c.f. the note to Th. finitude 1.6). This is necessary to make Verdier duality a compatible operation vis à vis the $t$-structures attached to a given perversity function and its dual.

The program outlined in this paragraph achieves both the smoothness of the strata and the lissé of the cohomology sheaves on each stratum so that the latter property is moreover respected by the six functors (and hence also by Verdier duality). Here is an explication of the smoothness condition (a).

**Lemma** (EGA 0IV 22.5.8 & IV 6.7.6, 6.7.8, Stacks tags 07EL & 038X). — Let $X$ be a scheme locally of finite type over a field $k$ and $x \in X$. Then the following are equivalent:

(i) $X \to \text{Spec } k$ is smooth at $x$.

(ii) $X$ is geometrically regular at $x$, i.e. for every finite extension $k'$ of $k$, the semi-local ring $(\mathcal{O}_X)_x \otimes_k k'$ is regular.

(iii) $X \times_k \overline{k}$ is regular at every point lying over $x$.

The smoothness condition on strata is that over $\overline{k}$, each stratum $S$, with the reduced subscheme structure, is smooth. The claim is then that on $S$ equidimensional of dimension $d$, the dualizing complex is given by $\mathbb{Z}/\ell(d)[2d]$. After replacing $k$ by its perfect closure, anodyne operation with respect to the étale topology, we may assume $S$ is of finite type over a perfect field $k$. The fact that $S \times_k \overline{k}$ is smooth implies (in light of the lemma and Stacks tag 030U) that $S$, with its reduced scheme structure, is smooth. In this case, the fact about the dualizing complex is standard (SGAA Exp. XVIII 3.2.5).

**2.2.14.** A brief review of Galois cohomology of a finite field $k$, to recall why the groups $H^i(\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k'), \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$ are finite for every finite extension $k'$ of $k$. We have

\[
\begin{align*}
H^0 &= H^1 = \mathbb{Z}/\ell \\
H^i &= 0 & i > 1.
\end{align*}
\]
The case of $H^0$ is obvious as it corresponds to taking $G = \text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k')$-invariants of a trivial $G$-module. The $H^1$ is the corollary of a formula given in Serre, *Corps Locaux*, Ch. XIII Prop. 1 (p. 197 in the 1968 édition Hermann). The vanishing in degrees $> 1$ is because a finite field is $C_1$ and hence has finite cohomological dimension; now see (1.6) in *Arcata*, SGA 4½. For more details see Serre, *Cohomologie Galoisienne*, Ch. II, §3.

Let $\mathcal{D}_n = D^b_{ctf}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$, $K, L$ objects of $\mathcal{D}_n$, $G = \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k)$, and $f : X \to \text{Spec } k$ the structure morphism. Why does the above imply that $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_n}(K, L)$ is finite? Deligne’s finiteness theorems show that the sheaves $R\mathcal{H}om(K, L)$ belong to $\mathcal{D}_n$. The Hochschild-Serre spectral sequence gives

$$E^2_{ij} = H^i(G, R^j\Gamma(X \times_k \overline{k}, R\mathcal{H}om(K, L))) \Rightarrow R^{i+j}\Gamma(X, R\mathcal{H}om(K, L)).$$

(†)

As $R\Gamma(X \times_k \overline{k}, R\mathcal{H}om(K, L))$ coincides with the stalk of the constructible sheaf $Rf_*R\mathcal{H}om(K, L)$ at any geometric point of $\text{Spec } k$, it belongs to $D^b_+(\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ (even $D^+_\text{ctf}$; c.f. Th. finitude 1.7). Fix $j$ and let $A := R^j\Gamma(X \times_k \overline{k}, R\mathcal{H}om(K, L))$; it is a finite $G$-module. Let $U$ denote the kernel of $G \to \text{Aut } A$; it is an open normal subgroup of finite index corresponding to a finite extension $k'$ of $k$. The Galois group $U = \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k')$ acts trivially on $A$ and a simple dévissage reducing to the case $\mathbb{Z}/\ell$ shows that the $H^i(U, A)$ are finite. As $G/U$ is a finite group, the spectral sequence (c.f. *Cohomologie Galoisienne* §2.6b)

$$H^p(G/U, H^q(U, A)) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(G, A)$$

shows that the groups $H^i(G, A)$ are also finite, and therefore that the objects on the $E^2$ page of (†) are finite $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$-modules so that $R^0\Gamma(X, R\mathcal{H}om(K, L)) = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}_n}(K, L)$ is finite.

**2.2.16.** See note to Weil II (1.1.2) In that paper, the functor $H^i(K)$ is defined as the pro-sheaf which is the projective system defined by the $H^i(K_n)$; the corresponding projective system is AR-isomorphic to an $(\ell \mathbb{Z})$-adic sheaf in the naïve sense. This allows us to upgrade the pointwise exact sequence (*) of those notes to the corresponding sequence of sheaves (2.2.16.1). There, he uses the notation $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ for $K_n$, whereas here $\otimes$ is used instead of $\otimes^L$. In the interest of consistency, I will continue with the notation $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ for $K_n$. So in this paragraph, we are implicitly in the AR category.
or in the category of pro-sheaves. (In Weil II, Deligne uses the definition of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaf as any pro-sheaf in the essential image of the $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves; i.e. the $(\ell\mathbb{Z})$-adic objects of the category of abelian constructible sheaves.) For the business about $H^0$ inducing an equivalence between $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)^{\leq 0} \cap D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)^{\geq 0}$ and $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-constructible sheaves, this is simple, since for such a $K$ we can represent $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ by a sheaf concentrated in degree 0. As every complex of flat sheaves representing the $K$ locally constant on the strata. Therefore the sheaves flat sheaves representing the

To the noetherian AR-system of flat sheaves concentrated in degree 0. In this case, $K$ is a bona fide $\ell$-adic sheaf.

As for checking whether $K$ belongs to $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)^{\leq 0}$, the statement is punctual and we may consider the problem in $D_{\text{parf}}$. If $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ is null for one $n$, then $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is null by (2.2.16.1), so $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ is null. This implies by the exact sequence

$$0 \to \ell H^i(K)/\ell^n H^i(K) \to H^i(K)/\ell^n H^i(K) \to H^i(K)/\ell H^i(K) \to 0$$

and the fact that $H^i(K)/\ell^{n-1} \to H^i(K)/\ell^n$ surjects that $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is null for all $n$ and so $K$ is in $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)^{\leq 0}$. On the other hand, if $K$ is in $D_c^b(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell)^{\leq 0}$, the exact sequence (2.2.16.1) for $n = 1$ tells us that $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell) = 0$ for $i > 0$. The $\ell$-adic filtration on flat complexes representing $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ has successive quotients quasi-isomorphic to $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ and the sequence of cohomology then establishes that $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ is null.

2.2.17. On the equivalent conditions: suppose $K \otimes^L_{\mathbb{Z}_\ell} \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is in $D_c^{b, S, \mathbb{Z}_\ell}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ for one $n$. In the spirit of Weil II (1.1.2) claim a), observe that as the projective system $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^k)$ is noetherian AR-$(\ell \mathbb{Z})$-adic, the projective system $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^k)$ is noetherian AR-$(\ell^m \mathbb{Z})$-adic and AR-isomorphic by (3.2.3) of that section (i.e. [SGA5 V, 3.2.3]) to the $(\ell^m \mathbb{Z})$-adic system $(\mathcal{H}_k^i/\ell^{kn} \mathcal{H}_k^i)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$ for some integer $r \geq 0$, where $\mathcal{H}_k^i$ denotes the projective system of universal images of the system $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^k)$. As $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is in $D_c^{b, S, \mathbb{Z}_\ell}(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$, the $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ are locally constant on the strata in $S$. Taking successive quotients on the $\ell^n$-adic filtration on bounded complexes of flat sheaves representing the $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^kn$, we find that the $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^kn)$ are also locally constant on the strata. Therefore the sheaves $\mathcal{H}_k^i$ are, as well as the sheaves $\mathcal{H}_k^i/\ell^{(k+1)n} \mathcal{H}_k^i$. For $k = 0$, the latter sheaf is isomorphic to $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$, so we have shown that $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is locally constant on the strata $S$. 


(An equivalent way to argue is again to use the description of [SGA5, V, 3.2.3] and just note that when computing the universal image subsheaves of $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^kn)$, one can restrict to looking at the images of the sheaves $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^kn)$, and when finding an $r$, if $r$ works, then $s$ works for any $s \geq r$, so $r$ can be taken to be a multiple of $kn$.)

As $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ is locally constant and includes into $H^i(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$, on each stratum $S \in \mathcal{S}$ consider a Jordan-Hölder series for both. The constituents of the former are a subset of the constituents of the latter and therefore also belong to $\mathcal{L}(S)$. We have shown that $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$, and therefore $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell$, is $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible.

On the other hand, suppose the $H^i(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ are $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible, and without loss of generality let $K$ be in $D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$. Proceed by recurrence on $-j$; in the case $j = 0$, $H^1(K) = 0$ and $H^0(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell \to H^0(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$. The $\ell$-adic filtration on any bounded complex of flat sheaves representing $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ has successive quotients quasi-isomorphic to $K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell$; taking the long exact sequence of cohomology finds that $H^0(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n) \sim H^0(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ are $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible for all $n$. In particular, this implies that each $\text{Tor}_1^{Z_\ell}(H^0(K), \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ is $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible. To see why, note that the increasing sequence of $\ell$-adic subsheaves $\ker \ell^a \subset H^0(K)$ must stabilize, say at $a = N$ as $H^0(K)$ is noetherian. Let $\mathcal{K}$ denote $\ker \ell^N$; it is an $\ell$-adic subsheaf of $H^0(K)$ and is $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible since $H^0(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^N$ is. Then

$$\text{Tor}_1^{Z_\ell}(H^0(K), \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n) \cong \text{Tor}_1^{Z_\ell}(\mathcal{K}, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n) \cong \mathcal{K}[\ell^n]$$

This last sheaf is easily seen to be $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible, as it is locally constant wherever $\mathcal{K}$ is, and as a subsheaf, its constituents on a stratum are a subset of the constituents of $\mathcal{K}$ on that stratum. Since $\text{Tor}_1^{Z_\ell}(H^0(K), \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ and $H^{-1}(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ are $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible, (2.2.16.1) shows that $H^{-1}(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$ is $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible, hence that $H^{-1}(K \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ is for all $n$. The argument above then shows that $H^{-1}(K) \otimes \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n$ are $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L})$-constructible for all $n$, and hence that $\text{Tor}_1^{Z_\ell}(H^{-1}(K), \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ are for all $n$, etc.

In order to proceed to define the $t$-structure in imitation of 2.2.10, one needs to extend the six functors to $D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$. This is trivial because they commute with reduction modulo $\ell^n$; see note to Weil II 1.1.2c. Then the claim about $K$ belonging to $pD^{\geq 0}_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$ iff its reduction modulo $\ell$ belongs to $pD^{\geq 0}_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$ is also trivial.
2.2.18. See [note to Weil II 1.1.3] Multiplication by \( \ell \) on complexes of flat sheaves representing \( K \) in \( D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell) \) induces a multiplication by \( \ell \) on their cohomology. To see that the image \( D^b_{S,\mathcal{L}}(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell) \otimes \mathbb{Q}_\ell \) consists of those \( K \) such that each \( H^iK \) is the \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \otimes \) of an \( (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L}) \)-constructible \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell \)-sheaf, well, certainly it is contained in it. On the other hand, given \( K \) in \( D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}_\ell) \) with each \( H^iK \) the \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \) of an \( (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L}) \)-constructible \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell \)-sheaf \( \mathcal{F}_i \), then for each of finitely many nonzero \( i \), there exist nonzero \( a_i, b_i \in \mathbb{Z}_\ell \) such that \( a_i H^iK = b_i \mathcal{F}_i \); \( b_i \mathcal{F}_i \) is a subsheaf of \( \mathcal{F}_i \) and is also \( (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L}) \)-constructible. Then \( (\prod_i a_i)K \) has cohomology sheaves which are \( (\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{L}) \)-constructible, showing the reverse containment.

Turning now to the claim that the forgetful functor \( \omega \) induces an equivalence

\[
D^b_c(X, E_\lambda) \to \{ \text{category of objects } K \text{ of } D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell) \text{ equipped with a morphism of } \mathbb{Q}_\ell \text{-algebras } E_\lambda \to \text{End}(K) \},
\]

the essential surjectivity of \( \omega \) follows from the fact that if \( K \) is in \( D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Q}_\ell) \) and equipped with an action \( \phi : E_\lambda \to \text{End}(K) \), and \( K \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}_\ell} E_\lambda \) has \( E_\lambda \) acting on itself, then there is an \( E_\lambda \)-equivariant imbedding \( K \to K \otimes E_\lambda \) with retraction \( r \). Let \( \alpha \) be a primitive element for the extension \( E_\lambda / \mathbb{Q}_\ell \) so that \( E_\lambda \simeq \mathbb{Q}(\alpha) \), and let \( d \) denote the degree \([E_\lambda : \mathbb{Q}_\ell]\).

The maps are given by

\[
i : K \to K \otimes E_\lambda \quad \quad r : K \otimes E_\lambda \to K
\]

\[
K \mapsto 1 - \frac{1}{d} \sum_{i=0}^{d-1} \phi(\alpha)^i K \otimes \alpha^{-i} \quad \quad K \otimes a \mapsto \phi(a)K.
\]

This implies that \( K \) is indeed a direct factor of \( K \otimes E_\lambda \); see Neeman, *Triangulated Categories* 1.2.10. This in turn gives an idempotent in \( \text{End}(K \otimes E_\lambda) \), and if the image of this idempotent is represented in \( D^b_c(X, E_\lambda) \), then this implies a splitting of \( K \otimes E_\lambda \) in \( D^b_c(X, E_\lambda) \) which is sent by \( \omega \) to the direct factor \( K \). A category in which every idempotent splits is called alternatively Cauchy complete, idempotent complete, or Karoubi complete (see SGA 4, I 8.7.8), so we are done if we show that \( D^b_c(X, E_\lambda) \) is Karoubi complete. The splitting of an idempotent \( e \) in the endomorphism ring of an object in some category is equivalent to the existence of the equalizer \( i = \ker(e, \text{id}) \) or the coequalizer \( r = \text{coker}(e, \text{id}) \), and this (co)equalizer, if it exists, is an absolute
(co)limit; i.e. it is preserved by every functor (see Proposition 1 of Borceaux and Dejean, _Cauchy Completion in Category Theory_). As $D^b_c(X, E_\lambda)$ is a projective limit of categories $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ for $R$ the ring of integers in $E_\lambda$, it is easily seen that if the categories $\mathcal{D}_n := D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ are Karoubi complete, if $e$ is an idempotent in $\text{End}(K \otimes E)$, its reductions in $\mathcal{D}_n$ are idempotents which split, and as these splittings are absolute (co)limits, they automatically give an object in $D^b_c(X, E_\lambda)$ splitting $e$. It will suffice to show that $\mathcal{D}_n$ is Karoubi complete. Let’s say that a triangulated category has direct sums if it has (arbitrary) categorical direct sums and if the (arbitrary) direct sum of distinguished triangles is distinguished. Bökstedt and Neeman show in _Homotopy limits in triangulated categories_ 3.2 that if a triangulated category has direct sums, it is Karoubi complete. (Actually, all that is needed is that countable coproducts of objects in the triangulated category exist; a simple exposition is Neeman, _Triangulated Categories_ §1.6, in particular (1.6.8).) The category $D(X, R/m^n)$ is therefore Karoubi complete. An object $C$ of an additive category with arbitrary direct sums is said to be compact if $\text{Hom}(C, -)$ commutes with arbitrary direct sums. Any direct summand of a compact object $C$ is compact, since a finite colimit of compact objects is compact*. Therefore as $D(X, R/m^n)$ is Karoubi complete, so is the full subcategory generated by compact objects. That $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ coincides with the subcategory generated by compact objects of $D(X, R/m^n)$ is 6.4.8 of Bhatt-Scholze, _The pro-étale topology for schemes_, after you recall that the objects of $D^b_{ctf}(X, R/m^n)$ can be represented by bounded complexes of $R/m^n$-flat constructible sheaves (Rapport 4.6).

(*) To recognize $A$, a direct summand of $C$, as a finite colimit, note that for the retraction $A \xrightarrow{i} C \xrightarrow{p} A$, $A$ is both the equalizer and coequalizer of $id_C$ and $ip$ (by the maps $i$ and $p$, respectively). As coequalizer, $A$ is a finite colimit; we can therefore write

$$\text{Hom}\left(\lim\colim C, \bigoplus_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \lim \text{Hom}\left(C, \bigoplus_{i \in I} U_i\right) = \lim \bigoplus_{i \in I} \text{Hom}(C, U_i),$$

where the last equality is because $C$ is compact; now use that finite limits commute with filtered colimits in Set to write

$$\lim \bigoplus_{i \in I} \text{Hom}(C, U_i) = \bigoplus_{i \in I} \lim \text{Hom}(C, U_i) = \bigoplus_{i \in I} \text{Hom}(\text{colim} C, U_i).$$
As \( A = \text{colim} \ C \), this proves \( A \) compact.

**2.2.19.** The fact that \( i^! f_* = f_* i^! \) is SGAA XVIII 3.1.12.3. The ‘argument habituel d’homotopie’ referenced in the last sentence of the proof is referring to, e.g. Th. 5.7.1 in Godement, *Théorie des faisceaux*, but a more accessible reference is [Stacks 09UY](https://stacks.math.columbia.edu/tag/09UY). If you have two open coverings \( \mathcal{U} = (U_i)_{i \in I} \) and \( \mathcal{V} = (V_j)_{j \in J} \) of a space \( X \), and \( \mathcal{U} \) is a refinement of \( \mathcal{V} \), so that we can choose a map \( \phi : I \to J \) such that \( U_i \subset V_{\phi(i)} \) for all \( i \in I \). This induces a map of Čech complexes \( \phi^* : \check{C}(\mathcal{V}, \mathcal{F}) \to \check{C}(\mathcal{U}, \mathcal{F}) \) for any sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on \( X \). The result then says that if you have a second \( \phi' : I \to J \) such that \( U_i \subset V_{\phi'(i)} \), the maps \( \phi^*, \phi'^* \) are homotopic. This instantly implies that if \( \mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V} \) are mutual refinements, they have the same Čech cohomology, since in this case we can choose \( \phi : I \to J \) and \( \psi : J \to I \) satisfying \( U_i \subset V_{\phi(i)} \) and \( V_j \subset U_{\psi(j)} \); the maps \( \phi \circ \psi \) and \( \psi \circ \phi \) must then induce the identity on Čech cohomology as they are homotopic to the identity on the chain level. Our case is formally equivalent to this statement for \( \check{H}^0 \).

In more words: \( A \) is defined as an equalizer of two maps

\[
\prod_I p_j i_* A_{U_i} \Rightarrow \prod_{i \times I} p_i j_* A_{U_{ij}}
\]

where one map \( d^0_0 \) is the product over \( (i, j) \in I \times I \) of the maps

\[
\prod_I p_j i_* A_{U_i} \xrightarrow{p_{ij}} p_j i_* A_{U_i} \to p_{ij} j_* A_{U_{ij}},
\]

(here the second map is \( j_{i*} \) of the unit of the adjunction on \( U_i \) if \( \cdot = i \) and 0 if \( \cdot \neq i \)), and the other map \( d^0_1 \) is the product over \( (i, j) \in I \times I \) of the maps

\[
\prod_I p_j i_* A_{U_i} \xrightarrow{p_{ij}} p_j i_* A_{U_j} \to p_{ij} j_* A_{U_i},
\]

(the second map is \( j_{j*} \) of the unit of the adjunction on \( U_j \) if \( \cdot = j \) and 0 if \( \cdot \neq j \)). This recognizes \( A \) as \( \text{ker}(d^0_1 - d^0_0) \). Let \( f \) denote maps of the type

\[
U_{i_0} \times \cdots \times U_{i_a} \times \cdots U_{i_p} \to U_{i_0} \times \cdots \times \hat{U}_{i_a} \times \cdots U_{i_p}.
\]
In higher degrees, the differential is determined by the formula
\[
pr_{i_0 \ldots i_{p+1}} \circ d = \sum_{a=0}^{p+1} (-1)^a p \cdot j_{i_0 \ldots i_a \ldots i_p} \ast (\eta(A_{i_0 \ldots i_p}) \circ pr_{i_0 \ldots i_a \ldots i_{p+1}}),
\]
where $\eta$ is the unit of the adjunction $id \to ^p f_\ast ^p f^\ast$. Let $\mathcal{U}$ be the cover of $X$ as above and $s : I \to J$ satisfying $s_i : U_i \to V_{s(i)}$ as above. The chain map induced by $s$ has the explicit description
\[
pr_{i_0 \ldots i_p} \circ s^\ast = p \cdot j_{s(i_0) \ast} (\eta(A_{i_0})) \circ pr_{s(i_0)},
\]
where $i_\Lambda$ is a multi-index $i_0 i_1 \ldots i_p$, $s(i_\Lambda) = s(i_0) \ldots s(i_p)$, and $\eta$ is the unit of the adjunction $id \to ^p s_{i_\Lambda} \ast ^p s_{i_\Lambda}^\ast$ on $V_{s(i_\Lambda)}$, where $s_{i_\Lambda} : U_{i_0} \times \cdots \times U_{i_p} \to V_{s(i_0)} \times \cdots \times V_{s(i_p)}$ is deduced by taking the product of the maps $s_i$.

Now given another map $t : I \to J$ satisfying $t_i : U_i \to V_{t(i)}$, let $0 \leq a \leq p$ and let $f$ now denote maps of the sort
\[
U_{i_0} \times \cdots \times U_{i_p} \to V_{s(i_0)} \times \cdots \times V_{s(i_a)} \times V_{t(i_a)} \times \cdots \times V_{t(i_p)},
\]
where here we use the map $U_{i_a} \to V_{s(i_a)} \times V_{t(i_a)}$. We set up a homotopy $h$ by the formula
\[
pr_{i_0 \ldots i_p} \circ h = \sum_{a=0}^{p} (-1)^a p \cdot j_{s(i_0) \ldots s(i_a) t(i_a) \ldots t(i_p)} \ast (\eta(A_{s(i_0) \ldots s(i_a) t(i_a) \ldots t(i_p)}) \circ pr_{s(i_0) \ldots s(i_a) t(i_a) \ldots t(i_p)}
\]
where here $\eta$ is the unit of the adjunction $id \to ^p f_\ast ^p f^\ast$.

Now we can follow the argument of Stacks 01FP.

3.1.2. (3.1.2.7) The morphism $K_{n+1} \to K_n$ in $D\mathcal{D}$ can be represented by $K_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\alpha} K'_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\beta} K_n$ with $\alpha$ a quasi-isomorphism and $\beta$ a homotopy class of morphisms. Replacing $K_n$ by $K_n \oplus \text{cone}(K'_{n+1})$ allows us to write a commutative square
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
K'_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{(\beta, \gamma)} & K_n \oplus \text{cone}(K'_{n+1}) \\
\downarrow{\alpha} & & \uparrow{\gamma} \\
K_{n+1} & \longrightarrow & K_n
\end{array}
\]
where $\iota$ denotes the canonical map $K'_n \to \text{cone } K'_n$. Now $(\beta, \iota)$ is injective and $\gamma$ is a homotopy equivalence so that it can be inverted. Doing this finitely many times allows us to produce a filtered complex of objects $(K, F)$ of $\mathcal{A}$ with the sequence of $F^i K$ isomorphic in $D\mathcal{A}$ to the given sequence.

(3.1.2.8) The intersection of two subobjects $A, B$ of an object $C$ in an abelian category $\mathcal{A}$ is defined as the pullback

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A \cap B & \longrightarrow & A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B & \longrightarrow & C
\end{array}
$$

or equivalently by the exact sequence

$$0 \to A \cap B \to A \oplus B \to C.
$$

The sum $A + B$ is defined as the image of $A \oplus B$ under the same map $A \oplus B \to C$ defined by the monomorphisms $A \to C$ and $B \to C$. The inclusion

$$\sum_{i+j=p} F^i \cap G^j \subset \bigcap_{i+j=p+1} F^i + G^j
$$

is evident from the fact that if $a + b = p$, every pair $(i, j)$ satisfying $i + j = p + 1$ also satisfies $i \leq a$ or $j \leq b$. For the reverse inclusion, find some $a$ in the intersection; then we have expressions $a = f_i + g_j$ for $f_i \in F^i, g_j \in G^j, i + j = p + 1$; as the filtration is finite & decreasing there exists an $n$ such that $a = f_n$ and $g_n = 0$. Then $a - f_{n+1} = g_{p+1-(n+1)}$ is in $F^n \cap G^{p-n}$. Likewise $f_{n+i} - f_{n+i+1} = g_{p+1-(n+i+1)} - g_{p+1-(n+i)}$ is in $F^{n+i} \cap G^{p-(n+i)}$ for $i \geq 0$. By finiteness, $f_{n+i} = 0$ for $i \gg 0$, so that

$$a = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} f_{n+i} - f_{n+i+1} \quad (f_{n+i} - f_{n+i+1} \in F^{n+i} \cap G^{p-(n+i)})
$$

has only finitely many nonzero terms.

3.1.3. This paragraph should be read along with Illusie *Complexe cotangent et déformations I* Ch. V §1, cited [12]. Equations (3.1.3.4) and (3.1.3.5) are written with the notation $\text{Hom}^{p+q}$ and $\text{Hom}_{D\mathcal{A}}^{p+q}$ and $\text{Hom}_{DF\mathcal{A}}^{p+q}$ instead of $\text{Ext}^{p+q}$ and $\text{Ext}_{D\mathcal{A}}^{p+q}$ and $\text{Ext}_{DF\mathcal{A}}^{p+q}$. This notation, which continues into (3.1.4) and beyond, is standard but creates something
of a conflict, as it should not be conflated with the $\text{Hom}^n$ defined in the first part of (3.1.3), as the $\text{Hom}^n$ there specifies a component of a familiar chain complex. For objects $K, L$ of $\mathcal{D}$, $\text{Ext}^n(K, L) = \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(K, L[n])$; in these notes we will tend to write $\text{Ext}^n$ instead of $\text{Hom}^n$ even when Deligne writes $\text{Hom}^n$.

3.1.4. The statement of the proposition of course has grammatical grouping ‘lorsque $\{n = 0 \text{ ou } -1\}$ et $i > j$’ and ‘lorsque $\{n = 0 \text{ ou } -1\}$ et $n + i - j < 0$’. The proof of (i) is obtained from the distinguished triangle given by taking the sequence of cohomology and using the vanishing of $H^0$ and $H^{-1}$ of $F^{-\infty}/F^0$. In the proof of (ii), the differential at $(0, 0)$ on the $E_r$ page for goes $(0, 0) \xrightarrow{d} (r, 1 - r)$; as $E_2^{pq} = 0$ for $p < 0$, $E_2^{00} = \cap_r \ker d_r$. The assumptions give that $E_2^{pq} = 0$ whenever $q < 0$ and either $p + q = 0$ or $p + q = 1$, so that $\ker d_r = E_2^{00}$ for $r \geq 2$ and therefore $E_2^{00} = E_2^{00}$. The assumption that $E_2^{pq} = 0$ if $n = 0$ and $q < 0$ implies that the only nonzero graded piece in the filtration on $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(K, L) = \text{Ext}^0_{\mathcal{D}}(K, L)$ is the $0^{th}$ and it coincides with $E_2^{00}$.

Note: $\text{Ext}^n(\text{Gr}^i_F K, \text{Gr}^j_F L) = \text{Ext}^{n+i-j}(\text{Gr}^i_F K[i], \text{Gr}^j_F L[j])$ so for example the condition $\text{Ext}^n(\text{Gr}^i_F K[-i], \text{Gr}^j_F L[-j]) = 0$ for $n < 0$ equates to $\text{Ext}^{n+j-i}(\text{Gr}^i_F K, \text{Gr}^j_F L) = 0$ for $n < 0$, which implies $\text{Ext}^n(\text{Gr}^i_F K, \text{Gr}^j_F L) = 0$ whenever $i > j$ and $n < 1$.

Remark (vague). As discussed in the note to (3.1.7) below, considering the $\text{Gr}^i_F$ as filtered objects in $\mathcal{D}$, $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^n(\text{Gr}^i_F K, \text{Gr}^j_F K) = 0$ when $i > j$ (any $n$). Of course, forgetting the filtration, $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^n(o \text{Gr}^i_F K, o \text{Gr}^j_F K)$ need not vanish. The result of (3.1.4) (i) can be seen as saying that this is precisely the difference between computing $\text{Hom}$ in $\mathcal{D}$ versus in $\mathcal{D}$, and that moreover it only need be checked for $n = 0$ and $-1$.

3.1.6. The filtration $T_i$ is now taken to be an increasing filtration, corresponding to the decreasing filtration $T^{-i}$. Under this correspondence $(\text{Gr}^{-i}_T K)[i]$ becomes $(\text{Gr}^{-i}_T K)[i]$. $\text{Hom}^n(A, B)$ should be written $\text{Ext}^n(A, B) = \text{Hom}(A, B[n])$, null for $n < 0$ when $A, B$ are in $\mathcal{C}$ by (1.3.1) (i).

3.1.7. A priori there is the matter of the uniqueness of the arrow of degree 1 $\text{Gr}^i_F K \to \text{Gr}^{i+1}_F K$ ‘defined’ by the distinguished triangle $(\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F, F^i/F^{i+2}, \text{Gr}^i_F)$. Recall [BBD 1.1.10] which says that this arrow is unique (and therefore actually defined by the
property that \((\text{Gr}_F^{i+1}, F^i / F^{i+2}, \text{Gr}_F^i)\) is distinguished) if \(\text{Hom}^{-1}_{\mathcal{D}(F)} (\text{Gr}_F^{i+1} K, \text{Gr}_F^i K) = 0\).

\[
\text{Hom}^{-1} (\text{Gr}_F^{i+1} K, \text{Gr}_F^i K) = \text{Hom} (\text{Gr}_F^{i+1} K, (\text{Gr}_F^i K)[-1]) \\
= \text{Hom} (\text{Gr}_F^{i+1} K, \text{Gr}_F^i (K[-1])) = 0
\]

(all Hom are in \(\mathcal{D}(F)\) as of course \(\text{Gr}_F^i = 0\).

For \(d^{i+1} \circ d^i = 0\) the point is that in the commutative diagram of distinguished triangles below, the two morphisms \(F^{i+1} / F^{i+3} \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^{i+1}\) coincide.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}_F^i [-1] & \rightarrow & F^{i+1} / F^{i+3} \\
& \downarrow & \downarrow \\
& \text{Gr}_F^{i+1} & \rightarrow F^i / F^{i+2} \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^i \\
& \downarrow & \downarrow \\
F^{i+1} / F^{i+3} & \rightarrow & \text{Gr}_F^{i+1} \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^{i+2} [1]
\end{array}
\]

3.1.8. On the subject of the differential \(d_1 (f) = df - f d\), we have to compute it. Illusie discusses the differential in \([12], V 1.4.10\). The spectral sequence (3.1.3.4) is isomorphic to the spectral sequence

\[
E_1^{pq} = H^{p+q} \text{Gr}_F^p R \text{Hom}(L, M) \Rightarrow \text{Ext}^{p+q} (L, M).
\]

We replace M by a filtered injective resolution of M, which is therefore (non-canonically) termwise-split as a direct sum of its graded pieces, which are also injective \((05TP)\), and we compute in the abelian category. General considerations \((012N)\) dictate that the differential \(d_1\) is equal to the coboundary map associated to the short exact sequence of complexes

\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}^{p+1} (\text{Hom}(L, M)) \rightarrow F^p / F^{p+2} \text{Hom}(L, M) \rightarrow \text{Gr}^p (\text{Hom}(L, M))) \rightarrow 0,
\]

where the differential on \(\text{Hom}(L, M)\) is defined by

\[
\text{Hom}^n (L, M) = \prod_i \text{Hom}(L^i, M^{i+1}), \quad d^p = d^L + (-1)^{i+1} d^M.
\]
We need only consider \( n = 0 \) and for simplicity we look at a single \( i \) at a time. Basically we need to translate this differential via the isomorphism

\[
E_i^{pq} \simeq \oplus_k \text{Ext}^{p+q}(\text{Gr}^k L, \text{Gr}^{k+p} M), \quad \text{or, more properly, through}
\]

\[
\text{Gr}^p(\text{Hom}(L^i, M^i)) \simeq \oplus_k \text{Hom}(\text{Gr}^k L^i, \text{Gr}^{k+p} M^i).
\]

The diagrams on the next page, combined with the fact that \( d^0 = d_L - d_M \), show that \( d_1 \), the coboundary map induced by \( d^0 \) and the relevant exact sequence, coincides with

\[
\prod_i \text{Hom}(\text{Gr}^k L^i, \text{Gr}^{k+p} M^i) \ni (f_i) \mapsto (f_id''_L - d'_Mf_{i-1}),
\]

for each \( k \), where \( d'_M \) and \( d''_M \) are induced on Hom by coboundaries associated to the exact sequences

\[
0 \to \text{Gr}^{k+p+1} M \to F^{k+p} M/F^{k+p+2} M \to \text{Gr}^{k+p} M \to 0 \quad \text{and}
\]

\[
0 \to \text{Gr}^k L \to F^{k-1}/F^{k+1} L \to \text{Gr}^{k-1} L \to 0, \quad \text{respectively.}
\]

So \( (f_i) \) belongs to \( \ker d_1 \) if \( f_id''_L - d'_Mf_{i-1} = 0 \) for all \( i \), and all that is left to observe is that \( d'_M \) and \( d''_L \) correspond with Deligne’s differential \( d \).
Let $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ (we care about $(a, b) = (i - 1, i), (i, i), \text{ or } (i, i + 1)$) and fix retractions to the monomorphisms $F^p / F^{p+k} M^b := F^p M^b / F^{p+k} M^b \hookrightarrow F^{p+1} / F^{p+k} M^b$ so that we can identify $M^b$ with the direct sum of its graded pieces, which are almost all zero.

$$F^p / F^{p+2} \text{Hom}(L^a, M^b) \simeq \oplus_k F^p / F^{p+2} \text{Hom}(L^a, \text{Gr}^k M^b) \simeq \oplus_k \text{Hom}(F^{k-p-1} / F^{k-p+1} L^a, \text{Gr}^k M^b)$$

The above diagram commutes. The bottom row and diagonal row are induced by the exact sequences

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}^{k+p+1} M^b \rightarrow F^{k+p} / F^{k+p+2} M^b \rightarrow \text{Gr}^{k+p} M^b \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{and}$$

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}^k L^a \rightarrow F^{k-1} / F^{k+1} L^a \rightarrow \text{Gr}^{k-1} L^a \rightarrow 0, \quad \text{respectively.}$$
Returning to the proof of (3.1.8), let's examine why the filtered complex $X$ in the first solution is taken by $G$ to a bounded complex of objects of $\mathcal{C}$ isomorphic to the given one. In the (unconventionally indexed) double complex

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
K^{i+1,j-1} & \rightarrow & K^{i+1,j} & \rightarrow & K^{i+1,j+1} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow d' & & \uparrow \\
K^{i,j-1} & \rightarrow & K^{i,j} & \rightarrow & K^{i,j+1} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
K^{i-1,j-1} & \rightarrow & K^{i-1,j} & \rightarrow & K^{i-1,j+1} \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\end{array}
$$

the terms $X^n$ correspond to the diagonals with slope $-1$ capturing all terms with biindex summing to $n$.

$$\text{Gr}^i X \cong (K^i[-i], (-1)^i d'') = K^i[-i].$$

It remains only to show that the morphism of degree one in the distinguished triangle associated to the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}^{i+1} X \xrightarrow{f} F^i/F^{i+2} X \xrightarrow{g} \text{Gr}^i X \rightarrow 0$$

coincides with $d^i$. Actually we will show that it coincides with $-d^i$. This is OK, as any complex $L = (L, d)$ is isomorphic to the complex $L' = (L, -d)$ by the morphisms $(-1)^i \text{id} : L^i \rightarrow L^i$ which induce an isomorphism of chain complexes $L \sim L'$. Therefore we will still have shown that $0 \rightarrow K^a \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow K^b \rightarrow 0$ is in the essential image of $G$. We have an isomorphism of distinguished triangles

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}^{i+1} X & \xrightarrow{f} & F^i/F^{i+2} X & \xrightarrow{g} & \text{Gr}^i X & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \text{Gr}^{i+1} X[1] \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\text{Gr}^{i+1} X & \xrightarrow{\text{Cyl}(f)} & C(f) & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \text{Gr}^{i+1} X[1]
\end{array}$$
where \( \delta : C(f) = \text{Gr}^{i+1} X[1] \oplus F^i/F^{i+2}X \to \text{Gr}^{i+1} X[1] \) corresponds componentwise to projection to the first factor and \( \gamma : C(f) \to \text{Gr}^i X \) is given by the composition \( C(f) \xrightarrow{pr_2} F^i/F^{i+2}X \xrightarrow{\rho} \text{Gr}^i X \), where here \( pr_2 \) denotes abusively the morphism of complexes induced by componentwise projection to the second factor.

\[
C(f) = K^{i+1} [-i] \oplus \text{Gr}^i \text{Gr}^{i+1} [-i - 1] \quad \text{with differential}
\]

\[
d^n(k^{i+1,n-i}, k_i, n-i, k^{i+1,n-i-1}) = ((-1)^i d''', (-1)^i d'', f(k^{i+1,n-i}) + d' k^{i,n-i} + (-1)^i d'' k^{i+1,n-i-1}).
\]

It suffices to show that \(-d' \circ \gamma \) is homotopic to \( \delta \). Consider the homotopy given by

\[
h^n : C(f)^n = K^{i+1,n-i} \oplus K^{i,n-i} \oplus K^{i+1,n-i-1} \xrightarrow{pr_3} K^{i+1,n-i-1} = (K^{i+1} [-i])^n = (-1)^i d''' k^{i+1,n-i-1}
\]

\[
dh(k^{i+1,n-i}, k^{i,n-i}, k^{i+1,n-i-1}) = d'(k^{i,n-i}) + (-1)^i d'' k^{i+1,n-i-1} + k^{i+1,n-i}
\]

so that \( dh + hd = k^{i+1,n-i} + d'(k^{i,n-i}) \).

Therefore \( h \) defines a homotopy between the two morphisms

\[
C(f) \xrightarrow{\delta} K^{i+1} [-i].
\]

As for the construction of the differential of the complex \( X \), let’s check that

\[
d_2 = H_0 + H_1 + H_2 = (-1)^i d''' + d' + \sum_i (-1)^i H_i^3
\]

satisfies (*) \( i.e. \) that \( d_2 \circ d_2 \) is of filtration \( \geq 3 \). To do this, it suffices to look at the terms of \( d_2 \circ d_2 \) which are of filtration \( < 3 \). We denote by \( (\geq n) \) terms of filtration \( \geq n \). It suffices to compute what \( d_2 \circ d_2 \) does to \( K^{i,j} \).

\[
d_2 \circ d_2 = d_1 \circ d_1 + d_1 \circ H_2 + H_2 \circ D_1 + H_2 \circ H_2
\]

\[
= d^{i+1} \circ d'' + (-1)^i d'' \circ H_2 + H_2 \circ (-1)^i d''
\]

\[
= d'' \circ H_i^2 + H_i^2 \circ d'' + (-1)^{2i+3} d'' \circ H_i^2 + (-1)^{2i+1} H_i^2 \circ d'' + (\geq 3)
\]

\[
= 0 + (\geq 3)
\]

as \( H_2 \circ H_2 \) is of filtration \( 4 \) and \( d' \circ H_2 \) and \( H_2 \circ d' \) are of filtration \( 3 \).
In the case \( p \geq 2 \), \( \varphi^i : K^i \to K^{i+p+1}[1-p] \) is a morphism of complexes. This is because the component of degree \( p+1 \) of \( d_p \circ d_p \) is bihomogenous of degree \((p+1, 1-p)\); indeed, it is a sum of morphisms obtained by composing two morphisms bihomogenous of degree \((a, -a+1)\) and \((b, -b+1)\), respectively, so that \( a + b = p + 1 \). Let’s verify that with 

\[
H_{p+1} = \sum_i (-1)^{i+p}H^i_{p+1}, \quad d_{p+1} \circ d_{p+1} \text{ is of filtration } \geq p + 2.
\]

We check what \( d_{p+1} \circ d_{p+1} \) does to \( K_{i-j} \).

\[
d_{p+1} \circ d_{p+1} = \left( d_p + \sum_i (-1)^{i+p}H^i_{p+1} \right) \circ \left( d_p + \sum_i (-1)^{i+p}H^i_{p+1} \right)
\]

\[
= \varphi + H_0 \circ H_{p+1} + H_{p+1} \circ H_0 + (\geq p + 2)
\]

\[
= \varphi^i + (-1)^{i+p+1}d'' \circ (-1)^{i+p}H^i_{p+1} + (-1)^{i+p}H^i_{p+1} \circ (-1)^i d'' + (\geq p + 2)
\]

\[
= \varphi^i - d'' \circ H^i_{p+1} + (-1)^pH^i_{p+1} \circ d'' + (\geq p + 2)
\]

\[
= 0 + (\geq p + 2),
\]

in light of the identity that shows \( \varphi^i \) homotopic to 0 (as a morphism of complexes \( K' \to K^{i+p+1}[1-p] \)) with homotopy \( H^i_{p+1} \).

2ème solution. Let’s check that the object \((C, F)\) of \( \mathbb{D}^bF_{\text{bête}} \) defined up to isomorphism by the distinguished triangle

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{(A, F[1])} & \xrightarrow{id_A} & \text{(A, F)} \\
\downarrow \varphi^i & & \downarrow \varphi^i \\
\text{(A, F)} & \xrightarrow{f} & \text{(A, F[1])}
\end{array}
\]

is sent by \( G \) to a complex in \( \mathbb{C}^b(\mathcal{C}) \) isomorphic to \( 0 \to K^a \to \cdots \to K^b \to 0 \). There is some ambiguity in the definition of \( A, B \) and \( f \). As we will see, we want \( f^{p+1} : K^p \to K^{p+1} \) to coincide with \(-d^p\), \( G(B) \) to coincide with the bête truncation \( \sigma_{\leq p+1}(\cdots \to K^i \xrightarrow{d^i} \cdots) \) of the desired complex, and \( G(A) \) to coincide with the translation of the bête truncation \( \sigma_{\leq p}(\cdots \to K^i \xrightarrow{d^i} \cdots)[-1] \). We have a commutative
diagram with distinguished rows and columns.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}^i_{F+2} A & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^i_{F+1} B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{F}^{i+1}/\text{F}^{i+2} A & \longrightarrow & \text{F}^{i}/\text{F}^{i+2} B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} A & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^{i}_{F} B
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} B & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}^{i+2}_{F} C & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} C & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^{i+1}_{F} C
\end{array}
\]

When \( i > p \), \( \text{Gr}^i_{\text{F}[1]} A = \text{Gr}^{i+1}_{\text{F}} A = 0 \), the left column vanishes, and we find an isomorphism of bête-truncated complexes \( \sigma_{>p} G(B) \sim \sigma_{>p} G(C) \):

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
(\text{Gr}^p F C) [p + 1] & \overset{d^{p+1}_C}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^b F C) [b] & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^{b+1} F C) [b + 1] & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
(\text{Gr}^{p+1} F B) [p + 1] & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^b F B) [b] & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^{b+1} F B) [b + 1] & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow & & & & \downarrow \\
K^{p+1} & \overset{d^{p+1}}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \longrightarrow & K^b & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & \cdots
\end{array}
\]

When \( i \leq p \), \( \text{Gr}^i F B = 0 \) and \( \text{Gr}^i F C \sim (\text{Gr}^{i+1} F A) [1] \). When \( i < p \), moreover the entire middle column vanishes, finding an isomorphism of bête truncated complexes \( \sigma_{<p} G(C) \sim \sigma_{\leq p} (G(A)[1]) \):

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
\cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^a F A)^{-1} [a - 1] & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^a F A) [a] & \overset{d^a}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^p F A) [p] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^a F A) [a] & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^a F A) [a + 1] & \longrightarrow & \cdots & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}^p F A) [p + 1] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\cdots & \longrightarrow & 0 & \longrightarrow & K^a & \overset{d^a}{\longrightarrow} & \cdots & \longrightarrow & K^p
\end{array}
\]
We will be done if we can join these diagrams with a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
(\text{Gr}_F^p C)[p] & \xrightarrow{d_c^p} & (\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} C)[p+1] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
(\text{Gr}_F^p A)[p+1] & \longrightarrow & (\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B)[p+1] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
K^p & \xrightarrow{d^p} & K^{p+1}
\end{array}
\]

When \(i = p\), part of our earlier commutative diagram looks like

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Gr}_F^{p+1} C \\
\beta \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\frac{F^{p+1}}{F^{p+3}} A & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \frac{F^p}{F^{p+2}} B & \longrightarrow & \frac{F^p}{F^{p+2}} C & \longrightarrow \\
\gamma \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Gr}_F^p C & \xrightarrow{d_{c1-p}^p} & \\
& & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

with distinguished row and column, inducing an isomorphism of distinguished triangles

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B & \longrightarrow & \frac{F^p}{F^{p+2}} C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} C & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}_F^p C \\
& & \xrightarrow{d_{c1-p}^p} \\
& & \\
\end{array}
\]
The commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{Gr}_{F[1]}^p A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \text{Gr}_F^{p+1} A & \xrightarrow{\delta} & \text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B \\
F^{p+1}/F^{p+3} A = (F[1])^p / (F[1])^{p+2} A & \xrightarrow{id} & F^p / F^{p+2} A & \xrightarrow{\varphi} & F^p / F^{p+2} B \\
\end{array}
\]

shows that \( \delta = \beta^{-1} \circ \alpha \circ \gamma^{-1} : \text{Gr}_F^{p+1} A \to \text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B \) has the property that \( -\delta[p+1] \) makes a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
(\text{Gr}_F^p C)[p] & \xrightarrow{d_c^p} & (\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} C)[p+1] \\
\downarrow & & \uparrow \\
(\text{Gr}_F^p A)[p+1] & \xrightarrow{-\delta[p+1]} & (\text{Gr}_F^{p+1} B)[p+1] \\
\downarrow & & \uparrow \\
K^p & \xrightarrow{-f^{p+1}} & K^{p+1} \\
\end{array}
\]

This is why we should take \( f^{p+1} = -d^p \).

**Remark.** There is a related construction involving décalage as defined by Deligne in *Théorie de Hodge II* (1.3.3). (The choice of name, décalage, refers not to a shift of the filtration, but rather to a shift in the page numbering of the spectral sequences associated to the filtration.) The décalage functor \((X, F) \mapsto (X, \text{Dec}(F))\) is defined componentwise by

\[
(\text{Dec} F)^a(X^i) := \ker(d : F^{i+a}(X^i) \to F^{i+a}(X^{i+1})/F^{i+a+1}(X^{i+1})).
\]

By construction, the differential on \((\text{Dec} F)^a\) coincides with the coboundary map on cohomology so that if we define (for each \( a \)) the complex \( H^a(X, F)^i \) with \( H^a(X, F)^i := H^i \text{Gr}_F^{i+a} X \) with differential coming from the coboundary, the obvious map

\[
\text{Gr}_{\text{Dec} F}^a X \to H^a(X, F)
\]
is a quasi-isomorphism. There is a t-structure on the filtered derived category $\text{DF}$ with

$$(\text{DF})^{\leq 0} = \{(X, F) \text{ s.t. } \text{Gr}^i X \text{ is acyclic in degrees } > i\}$$

$$(\text{DF})^{\geq 0} = \{(X, F) \text{ s.t. } \text{Gr}^i X \text{ is acyclic in degrees } < i\}$$

whose heart coincides with the category of bête-filtered complexes. The truncation $\tau_{\leq 0}$ for this t-structure is the functor

$$(X, F) \mapsto ((\text{Dec } F)^0 X, F \cap (\text{Dec } F)^0)$$

which lands in $\text{DF}^{\leq 0}$ since $(\text{Dec } F)^0$ lies in $F^{i+1}$ in degrees $> i$. Under the equivalence of categories $G$, the corresponding cohomological functor is the functor $H'$. This is (3.11) in Beilinson’s Notes on Absolute Hodge Cohomology.

3.1.9. The isomorphisms (3.1.9.2) render anticommutative the given square because the isomorphisms $\text{Gr}^i_F(K[1]) = (\text{Gr}^i_F K)[1]$ together with their translations render anticommutative the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}^i_F(K[1]) & \xrightarrow{d_{i[-i]}} & \text{Gr}^{i+1}_F(K[1])[1] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
(\text{Gr}^i_F K)[1] & \xrightarrow{d_0[1-i]} & (\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F K)[2]
\end{array}$$

where we have added subscripts for clarity. As discussed in the note to (3.1.7) above, $d_0[1-i] : (\text{Gr}^i_F K)[1] \to (\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F K)[2]$ is the translation of the morphism $d_0[-i]$ defined by the distinguished triangle

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F K & \xrightarrow{u} & F^i/F^{i+2} K & \xrightarrow{\nu} & \text{Gr}^i_F K \\
& \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
& \text{Gr}^{i+1}_F(K[1]) & \xrightarrow{d_{i[-i]}} & \text{Gr}^i_F(K[1])
\end{array}$$

On the other hand, $d_1[-i] : \text{Gr}^i_F(K[1]) \to \text{Gr}^{i+1}_F(K[1])$ is the morphism defined by the triangle in the second row

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F K)[1] & \xrightarrow{u[1]} & (F^i/F^{i+2} K)[1] & \xrightarrow{v[1]} & (\text{Gr}^i_F K)[1] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Gr}^{i+1}_F(K[1]) & \xrightarrow{d_1[-i]} & \text{Gr}^i_F(K[1])
\end{array}$$
once we show that this triangle is distinguished. If we can show there is a morphism of degree 1 \( d_1 \) making this triangle distinguished, this morphism of degree 1 will be unique by the considerations of the note to (3.1.7). The diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
(\text{Gr}_{F}^{i+1} K)[1] \xrightarrow{-u[1]} (\mathcal{F}^i/\mathcal{F}^{i+2} K)[1] \xrightarrow{-v[1]} (\text{Gr}_{F}^{i} K)[1] \xrightarrow{-d_0[1-i]} \\
\downarrow \text{id} \quad \downarrow \text{id} \quad \downarrow \text{id} \\
(\text{Gr}_{F}^{i+1} K)[1] \xrightarrow{u[1]} (\mathcal{F}^i/\mathcal{F}^{i+2} K)[1] \xrightarrow{v[1]} (\text{Gr}_{F}^{i} K)[1] \xrightarrow{-d_0[1-i]} \\
\text{Gr}_{F}^{i+1}(K[1]) \longrightarrow \mathcal{F}^i/\mathcal{F}^{i+2}(K[1]) \longrightarrow \text{Gr}_{F}^{i}(K[1]) \longrightarrow \\
\end{array}
\]

is an isomorphism of triangles with the top row distinguished. We conclude \( d_1[-i] = -d_0[1 - i] \) after the canonical isomorphisms \( \text{Gr}_{F}^{i+1}(K[1])[j] = (\text{Gr}_{F}^{i} K)[1 + j] \).

3.1.11. The point is that we already computed the differential on the \( E_1 \) page to be \( d_1(f) = df - fd \) in the note to 3.1.8 and the image of \( d_1 : E_1^{-1,0} \to E_1^{0,0} \) consists of precisely the homotopies. As computed in 3.1.8, the kernel of \( d_1 : E_1^{0,0} \to E_1^{1,0} \) consists of precisely the morphisms of complexes in \( C^b(\mathcal{C}) \).

3.1.12. We can choose a representative \( f \) for a homotopy class of morphisms of complexes in \( K^b(\mathcal{C}) \). Typos & clarifications: ‘\( G(C(f), \bar{F}) = C(G(f)) \). En particulier, si \( (K, F) \) et \( (L, F) \) sont bêtes, \( (C(f), \bar{F}) \) l’est aussi, et \( C(\omega f) = \omega(C(f), \bar{F}) \) s’identifie à \( \text{real}(C(f)) \).’ The isomorphism \( G(C(f), \bar{F}) = C(G(f)) \) relies on the earlier calculation \( G(K[1], F[1]) = (GK)[1] \). Interestingly,

\[
G(K, L, C(f)) = \omega((K, F), (L, F), (C(f), \bar{F})) = (K, L, C(f))
\]

where the middle triangle is not distinguished, but after forgetting the filtration, it is.

3.1.13. We will compute the differentials of \( G(\Sigma) \) to verify that \( S\Sigma^* = G(\Sigma) \), but before we do, a few words on the matter of sign that was also an issue in the discussion of both solutions to (3.1.8) in the note to 3.1.8. Given a map \( f : A^* \to B^* \) of complexes (considered as a double complex with first degree concentrated in 0 and 1) and the filtration by first degree on the associated simple complex \( K \), it is easy to compute that
the coboundary \( \partial \) on cohomology associated to the exact sequence

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^1 K & \xrightarrow{\nu} & F^0/F^2 K & \longrightarrow & \text{Gr}^0 K & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\| & & \| & & \| & & \| \\
0 & \longrightarrow & B[-1] & \longrightarrow & B[-1] \oplus A & \longrightarrow & A & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array}
\]

coinsides with \( f \), as the differential on \( F^0/F^2 K \cong B[-1] \oplus A \) is given by

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
d_{B[-1]} & f \\
0 & d_A
\end{pmatrix}.
\]

The issue appears to be that when one defines the differential on the cone of a morphism of complexes \( u : L \rightarrow M \) in the usual way as

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
d_{L[1]} & 0 \\
u & d_M
\end{pmatrix},
\]

then given the exact sequence of complexes with coboundary \( \partial \)

\[
0 \rightarrow L \xrightarrow{u} M \rightarrow \text{coker} \, u \rightarrow 0,
\]

the morphism of degree one \( \delta \) in the distinguished triangle \((L, \text{Cyl}(u), C(u))\) coincides on cohomology with \(-\partial\) after the isomorphism with \((L, M, \text{coker} \, u)\). (This is consistent with Weibel’s book but Gelfand-Manin say, I believe incorrectly, \( \partial \).)

Applying this in the case of \( u : \text{Gr}^1 K \rightarrow F^0/F^2 K \), we expect that the map of degree one \( \text{Gr}^0 K \rightarrow (\text{Gr}^1 K)[1] \) will coincide with \(-f\). As before, this isn’t really a problem in view of the isomorphism

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{g} & C & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow \text{id} & & \downarrow \text{-id} & & \downarrow \text{id} \\
0 & \longrightarrow & A & \xrightarrow{-f} & B & \xrightarrow{-g} & C & \longrightarrow & 0.
\end{array}
\]

It is also possible to define the differential of the cone of the morphism \( u \) to be

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
d_{L[1]} & 0 \\
-u & d_M
\end{pmatrix},
\]

and although less standard, this would correct our sign, but we don’t proceed this way.
Returning to the notation in the beginning of this paragraph, we will show that the differentials on $G(s\Sigma^*)$ coincide with the differentials of $\Sigma$ with the sign reversed. In fact, it suffices to do so for the single morphism of complexes $f$. In the double complex

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
A^p \begin{array}{c} f^p \\
\uparrow \\
A^{p-1} \begin{array}{c} f^{p-1} \\
\uparrow \\
\end{array}
\end{array} \begin{array}{c} B^p \\
\uparrow \\
B^{p-1}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

we consider first degree concentrated in 0, 1, and we let $K$ denote the associated simple complex. With $v$ as above,

\[
\begin{array}{c}
C(v) \xrightarrow{\delta} (\text{Gr}^1 K)[1] \\
\downarrow \\
\text{Gr}^0 K \xrightarrow{f} (\text{Gr}^1 K)[1]
\end{array} \cong \begin{array}{c}
B \oplus B[-1] \oplus A \xrightarrow{\delta} B \\
\downarrow \gamma \\
A \xrightarrow{f} B
\end{array}
\]

where $\delta$ is projection to the first factor, $\gamma$ to the last, and we wish to show these squares commute up to homotopy. The differential on $C(v) = B \oplus B[-1] \oplus A$ is given by

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
d_B \\
id \\
d_{B[-1]} \\
d_A
\end{pmatrix} f
\]

and we compute $dh - hd$ for the homotopy $h^p : B^p \oplus B^{p-1} \oplus A^p \to B^{p-1}$ which is projection to the middle factor:

\[
\begin{align*}
&dh(b^p, b^{p-1}, a^p) = db^{p-1}, \\
&hd(b^p, b^{p-1}, a^p) = b^p + f(a^p) - db^{p-1}.
\end{align*}
\]

This shows that $\delta \sim -f$ so that if $\Sigma^* = A^* \xrightarrow{f} B^* \xrightarrow{g} C^*$, the differentials of $G(s\Sigma^*)$ coincide with $-f$ and $-g$ which, as discussed above, is ok.
3.1.14. We check that the cone $C$ of the inclusion $\iota : \tau_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^* \rightarrow \tau'_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^*$ is homotopic to the complex $L$ given by $\ker d \rightarrow K^i \rightarrow \im d$ in degrees $i - 1, i, i + 1$. The morphisms of complexes $f$ and $g$ are given componentwise by

$$
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\cdots & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \ker d & \rightarrow & K^i & \rightarrow & \im d & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow^{f^{i-1}} & & \downarrow^{f^{i-1}} & & \downarrow^{f^i} & & \downarrow^{f^{i+1}} & & \downarrow^{f^{i+2}} & & \\
\cdots & \rightarrow & K^{i-1} & \rightarrow & \ker d & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \cdots \\
& \oplus & d^{[1]} & \oplus & i^{i-1} & \oplus & i^i & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \\
\cdots & \rightarrow & K^{i-2} & \rightarrow & K^{i-1} & \rightarrow & K^i & \rightarrow & \im d & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \cdots \\
\downarrow^{g^{i-2}} & & \downarrow^{g^{i-1}} & & \downarrow^{g^i} & & \downarrow^{g^{i+1}} & & \downarrow^{g^{i+2}} & & \\
\cdots & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \ker d & \rightarrow & K^i & \rightarrow & \im d & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & \cdots 
\end{array}
$$

where $f^{i-1}$ is inclusion into the first factor and $f^i, f^{i+1}$ are inclusion into the second factor, while $g^i, g^{i+1}$ are projection to the second factor, $g^j = 0$ for $j < i - 1$, and $g^{i-1} = \text{pr}_1 - d \circ \text{pr}_2$. Evidently $g \circ f = \text{id}_{\mathbb{L}}$ and we need to construct a homotopy $h$ so that $f \circ g = \text{id}_{\mathbb{L}} + dh + hd$. Set each $h^p : C^p \rightarrow C^{p-1}$ for $p > i - 1$ to zero, while for $p \leq i - 1$, let $h^p$ be the projection to the second factor of $C^p$ followed by inclusion into the first factor of $C^{p-1}$ so that if we only draw arrows for the components of $h$ which are nonzero, $h$ is given by

$$
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
\cdots & K^{i-2} & \oplus & K^{i-1} & \oplus & \ker d & \oplus & 0 & \oplus & 0 & \oplus & 0 & \oplus & \cdots \\
\downarrow & \text{id} & \oplus & \text{id} & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \oplus & \\
K^{i-3} & K^{i-2} & \oplus & K^{i-1} & \oplus & K^i & \oplus & \im d & \oplus & 0 & \oplus & 0 & \oplus & \\
\end{array}
$$

Now let’s examine why an isomorphism between $H^{i\mathbb{K}}[-i]$ and a cone on $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq i-1} \mathbb{K}^*) \rightarrow \text{real}(\tau_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^*)$ is enough to conclude that $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^*) \cong \tau_{\leq i}(\text{real} \mathbb{K}^*)$ and $pH^{i\mathbb{K}} \text{real} \mathbb{K}^* \cong H^{i\mathbb{K}} \mathbb{K}^*$. As $\mathbb{K}^*$ is an object of $C^b(\mathcal{C})$, there are integers $a, b$ such that $K^i = 0$ for $i < a$ and $i > b$. Then $\tau_{\leq a-1} \mathbb{K}^* = 0$ and we find $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq a} \mathbb{K}^*) \cong (H^{a\mathbb{K}} \mathbb{K}^*)[-a]$. As $H^{i\mathbb{K}} \mathbb{K}^*$ is in $\mathcal{C}$, proceeding inductively we find that $pH^{i}(\text{real}(\tau_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^*))$ equals $H^{i\mathbb{K}} \mathbb{K}^*$ for $j \leq i$ and is null for $j > i$. As $H^{b+1} \mathbb{K}^* = 0$, $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq b} \mathbb{K}^*) \cong \text{real}(\tau_{\leq b+1} \mathbb{K}^*) = \text{real} \mathbb{K}^*$ so that $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq b} \mathbb{K}^*) \cong \mathbb{K}^* \cong \tau_{\leq b} \text{real} \mathbb{K}^*$ since as we have seen, $pH^{i}(\text{real} \mathbb{K}^*) = 0$ for $j > b$. Now supposing $\text{real}(\tau_{\leq i} \mathbb{K}^*) \cong \tau_{\leq i}(\text{real} \mathbb{K}^*)$ has been established, the isomorphism of
distinguished triangles
\[
\begin{align*}
\text{real}(\tau_{\leq i-1} K^*) & \longrightarrow \text{real}(\tau_{\leq i} K^*) & \longrightarrow & (H^i K^*)[-i] & \longrightarrow \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\tau_{\leq i-1}(\text{real } K^*) & \longrightarrow \tau_{\leq i}(\text{real } K^*) & \longrightarrow & pH^i(\text{real } K^*)[-i] & \longrightarrow 
\end{align*}
\]
achieves the same for \(i - 1\).

Now we show that the cone \(C^*\) on the morphism \(\tau'_{\leq i-1} K^* \to \tau_{\leq i} K^*\) is homotopic to the complex \(L^*\) reduced to \(\text{im } d^{i-1} \to \text{ker } d^i\) in degrees \(i - 1\) and \(i\). The story is the same as what we just did. We define morphisms \(f : L^* \to C^*\) and \(g : C^* \to L^*\) which compose to morphisms homotopic to the identity.

Here the morphisms \(f^i, g^i\) is the obvious inclusion and projection, while \(f^{i-1}\) is the inclusion to the first factor and \(g^{i-1} = \text{pr}_1 - d^{i-1} \circ \text{pr}_2\). Then \(g \circ f = \text{id}_{L^*}\) and \(f \circ g = \text{id}_{C^*} + dh + hd\) where \(h\) is the homotopy with all components nonzero except for the arrows in the below diagram.

The complex \(L^*\) is the cone of the morphism
\[
\text{im}(d^{i-1})[-i] \to \text{ker}(d^i)[-i]
\]
(shifted by \([-i]\) not \([i]\)) and the point is that the realization functor sends an object \(D\) of \(\mathcal{C}\) shifted by \(i\) to the same object shifted by \(i\): the complex \(D[i]\) with one-step
filtration $F^j(D[i]) = D[i]$ for $j \leq -i$, $F^j(D[i]) = 0$ for $j > -i$ is bête-filtered with $\text{Gr}^{-i}(D[i])[-i] = D$ and all other $\text{Gr}^j = 0$, so that $\text{real}(D[i]) = D[i]$. Of course, the exact sequence

$$0 \to \text{im} \ d^{i-1} \to \ker \ d^i \to H^i K^* \to 0$$

gives rise to a distinguished triangle (where the cone is unique up to unique isomorphism)

$$(\text{im} \ d^{i-1})[-i] \to (\ker \ d^i)[-i] \to (H^i K^*)[-i] \to .$$

**Remark.** The functor real is exact and t-exact.

### 3.1.16.** The claim about the characterization of the $\text{Hom}_{D\mathbb{Z}}(A, B[n])$ is effectively the classical Tôhoku statement, with the twist that it suffices to efface morphisms one at a time, rather than the whole Hom group at once. Swan calls this weaker effaceability property described in 3.1.16 ‘weak effaceability.’ Grothendieck’s statement about a $\delta$-functor $F^n$ being universal if $F^n$ is effaceable for $n > 0$ holds with ‘effaceable’ replaced by ‘weakly effaceable’ if $F$ takes values in a module category. The $\delta$-functor $\text{Hom}_{D\mathbb{Z}}(A, -[n])$ takes values in abelian groups and is weakly effaceable. See Buchsbaum, *Satellites and Universal Functors* (4.2) & (4.3) and Swan, *Cup products in sheaf cohomology, pure injectives, and a substitute for projective resolutions* (1.1) & (6.1) for the full story.

The bit about every object of $D^b\mathbb{C}$ se dévissant en objets de $\mathbb{C}$ is combined with the exact sequence of $\text{Hom}^i$ of proposition 1-2 of ‘état 0’ of Verdier’s thesis in SGA 4$\frac{1}{2}$.

### 3.1.17. As remark (ii) is a corollary of remark (i), let it suffice to prove (i). There is some trivial ambiguity: where remark (i) writes ‘pour $A, B$ in $\mathbb{C}$’ it means ‘for any $A, B$ in $\mathbb{C}$.’ On the one hand, if $f \in \text{Hom}_\mathbb{Z}(A, B[N])$ is in the image of real, say $\text{real}(\bar{f}) = f$, then $\bar{f}$ can be represented in $\text{Hom}_{D\mathbb{Z}}(A, B[N])$ by a Yoneda Ext and either the monomorphism at the left end or the epimorphism at the right will efface $\bar{f}$, and, after realization, $f$ (see below). On the other hand, let’s suppose $f$ is effaceable in the sense of (3.1.16) and we have an epimorphism $u : A' \twoheadrightarrow A$ and monomorphism $v'[-N] : B \hookrightarrow B'$ such that $v'fu = 0$. In light of (1.2.3), these morphisms give rise to distinguished triangles $(A'', A', A)$ and $(B, B', B'')$ in $\mathcal{D}$ which are unique up to unique
isomorphism, and, in view of (1.1.9), a morphism of triangles

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
A' & \xrightarrow{a} & A & \xrightarrow{A''[1]} & B''[N-1] & \xrightarrow{\nu'} \\
\downarrow{g} & & \downarrow{f} & & \downarrow{h} & \\
B'[N] & \xrightarrow{\nu'} & B'[N] & \xrightarrow{\nu'} & B'[N] & \\
\end{array}
\]

where now the two dashed arrows lie in a $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{N-1}$. All the data of this morphism of triangles (except $f$) is lifted uniquely to $\mathcal{D}\mathcal{C}$, where we can complete it to a morphism of triangles (in possibly several different ways) and then apply real. We would like to show that real establishes a bijection between the morphisms $\tilde{f}$ which complete the lift of the above to a morphism of triangles in $\mathcal{D}\mathcal{C}$ and those $f$ which complete the morphism of triangles in $\mathcal{D}$. This will simultaneously show that our original $f$ is in the image of real and prove that real : $\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}\mathcal{C}}^{N}(A, B[N]) \to \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}^{N}(A, B[N])$ is injective.

We have a commutative diagram with exact rows and columns on the next page. From this diagram we see that if $g \in \text{Hom}^{-1}(A', B''[N])$ and $h \in \text{Hom}(A''[1], B'[N])$ such that there is at least one $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B[N])$ such that $fu$ is in the image of $g$ and $\nu'f$ is in the image of $h$, the set of all $f \in \text{Hom}(A, B[N])$ satisfying this same property is in bijection with

\[
X \cap Y, \quad \text{where}
\]

\[
X := \text{coker}(\text{Hom}^{-1}(A', B[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A''[1], B[N])) \quad \text{and}
\]

\[
Y := \text{coker}(\text{Hom}^{-1}(A, B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A, B''[N])).
\]

Both $X$ and $Y$ are considered as subgroups of $\text{Hom}(A, B[N])$. The point is that real sends $X$ and $Y$ (Hom taken in $\mathcal{D}\mathcal{C}$) isomorphically to $X$ and $Y$, respectively (Hom taken in $\mathcal{D}$) by the hypothesis that real is an isomorphism on $\text{Hom}^{n}$ for $n < N$. Therefore real does the same for $X \cap Y$. This proves our claim.
\[ \cdots \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A', B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A', B''[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A', B[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A', B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A', B''[N]) \to \cdots \]

\[ \cdots \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A, B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A, B''[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A, B[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A, B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A, B''[N]) \to \cdots \]

\[ \cdots \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A''[1], B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{-1}(A''[1], B''[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A''[1], B[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A''[1], B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}(A''[1], B''[N]) \to \cdots \]

\[ \cdots \to \text{Hom}^{-2}(A', B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{-2}(A', B''[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{1}(A', B[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{1}(A', B'[N]) \to \text{Hom}^{1}(A', B''[N]) \to \cdots \]

\[ \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \]
Annihilating Yoneda Exts. Now we verify that given $f \in \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{D}}(A, B[N])$ represented by the Yoneda Ext

$$Q := \cdots \to 0 \to B = K^{-N} \xrightarrow{\alpha} K^{-N+1} \to \cdots \to K^0 \xrightarrow{\beta} A \to 0 \to \cdots$$

either the monomorphism $\alpha$ or the epimorphism $\beta$ will efface $f$. The postcomposition with $\alpha[N]$ is represented by the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & A & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \beta & & \uparrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & B = K^{-N} & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & K^{-N+1} & \to & \cdots & \to & K^0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow_{\text{id}_B} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & B & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow_{\alpha} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & K^{-N+1} & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\end{array}
\]

with $\beta$ inducing a quasi-isomorphism, and the point is that the morphism of complexes

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & B = K^{-N} & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & K^{-N+1} & \to & \cdots & \to & K^0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow_{\alpha} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & K^{-N+1} & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\end{array}
\]

is homotopic to 0 via the obvious homotopy. On the other hand, the precomposition with $\beta$ is represented by the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & K_0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \beta & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & A & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \beta & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & B = K^{-N} & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & K^{-N+1} & \to & \cdots & \to & K^0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow_{\text{id}_B} & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \to & 0 & \to & B & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots & \to & 0 & \to & 0 & \to & \cdots \\
\end{array}
\]
and here the point is that this morphism is in the same equivalence class as the morphism

\[ \cdots \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow K_0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \cdots \]
\[ \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \]
\[ \cdots \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow B = K^{-N} \rightarrow K^{-N+1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow K^0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \cdots \]
\[ \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \hspace{1cm} \downarrow \]
\[ \cdots \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow B \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \cdots \]

as the diagram

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
K^0 & \xrightarrow{\id} & K^0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\beta & & \beta \\
A & \xleftarrow{\id} & Q
\end{array} \]

commutes, where here the arrow decorations refer only to the degree 0 component of the morphism, the other components being obvious. Now it is obvious this composition is null.

### 4.1.1. The following proof of Artin’s theorem was given to me by Sasha Beilinson.
The \( \eta \) notation, along with the construction of a retraction, is discussed after the proof.

Below \( D(X) := D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n) \), \( D(X)_{\leq 0} := \{ \mathcal{F} \in D(X) : \dim \text{supp} \, H^i \mathcal{F} \leq -i \} \), i.e., this is \( \rho \)\( D(X)_{\leq 0} \) where \( \rho \) is the middle perverse \( t \)-structure.

**Theorem (Artin).** — For an affine map \( f : X \rightarrow Y \) of schemes of finite type over a field \( k \) (with char \( k \) prime to \( \ell \)) the functor \( f_* : D(X) \rightarrow D(Y) \) is right \( t \)-exact.

**Proof.** — Pick \( \mathcal{F} \in D(X)_{\leq 0} \); we want to show that \( f_* \mathcal{F} \in D(Y)_{\leq 0} \). Let \( d(\mathcal{F}) \) be the dimension of support of \( \mathcal{F} \). We use induction by \( d(\mathcal{F}) \), so we assume that for every \( f, k \) as in the theorem and \( \mathcal{G} \in D(X)_{\leq 0} \) with \( d(\mathcal{G}) < d(\mathcal{F}) \) one has \( f_* \mathcal{G} \in D(Y)_{\leq 0} \).

(o) We can assume that \( k \) is algebraically closed (since \( f_* \) commutes with the base change to an algebraic closure of \( k \)).
(i) *It is enough to show that for every closed point* $y \in Y$ *the complex* $(f_*\mathcal{F})_y$ *is connective* (i.e., acyclic in degrees $> 0$): We need to check that for a point $\eta$ of $Y$ of dimension $\delta > 0$ the complex $(f_*\mathcal{F})_\eta[-\delta]$ is connective. Let $Z \subset Y$ be the closure of $\eta$. Replacing $Y$ by an étale neighborhood of $\eta$, choose a retraction $Y \to Z$ (it exists since $k$ is perfect). Consider $Y$ as a $Z$-scheme and $f$ as a map of $Z$-schemes. Let $f^\circ : X^o \to Y^o$ be the map of the generic fibers (over $\eta = \text{Spec } k_\eta \in Z$); this is an affine morphism of $k_\eta$-schemes. Since $\mathcal{F}|_{X^o} \in D(X^o)_{\leq -\delta}$ and $d(\mathcal{F}|_{X^o}) \leq d(\mathcal{F}) - \delta$, one has $f^\circ_*(\mathcal{F}|_{X^o})[-\delta] \in D(Y^o)_{\leq 0}$ by the induction assumption applied to $f^\circ$, $k_\eta$, and $\mathcal{F}|_{X^o}[-\delta]$. Now $(f_*\mathcal{F})|_{Y^o} = f^\circ_*(\mathcal{F}|_{X^o})$, hence $(f_*\mathcal{F})_\eta[-\delta] = f^\circ_*(\mathcal{F}|_{X^o})_\eta[-\delta]$ is connective, q.e.d.

(ii) *The case when* $f$ *is an open embedding* $j : X \hookrightarrow \overline{X}$ *with* $Q := \overline{X} - X$ *a Cartier divisor*: We can assume that $y$ as in (i) lies in $Q$ which is a principal divisor $h = 0$. Let $K$ be the field of fractions of the henselian local ring at $0 \in A^1_k$, $\overline{K}$ its separable closure, $G := \text{Gal}(\overline{K}/K)$, and $\Psi = \Psi_h : D(X) \to D(Q)$ be the nearby cycles functor. One has $(j_*\mathcal{F})_y = R\Gamma(G, \Psi(\mathcal{F})_y)$, so, since $G$ has cohomological dimension 1, it is enough to check that $\Psi(\mathcal{F})_y[-1]$ is connective. By definition, $\Psi(\mathcal{F})_y$ is inductive limit of complexes $R\Gamma(U_K, \mathcal{F}|_{U_K})$ where $U/\overline{X}$ runs the category of affine étale neighborhoods of $y$, $U_K := U \times \text{Spec } K$, $\mathcal{F}|_{U_K}$ is the pullback of $\mathcal{F}$ by the map $U_K \to X$. Since $\mathcal{F}|_{U_K} \in D(U_K)_{\leq -1}$ and $D(\mathcal{F}|_{U_K}) < d(\mathcal{F})$, each complex $R\Gamma(U_K, \mathcal{F}|_{U_K})[-1]$ is connective by the induction assumption applied to the affine map $U_K \to \text{Spec } K$, and so $\Psi(\mathcal{F})_y[-1]$ is connective.

(iii) *The case when* $f$ *is the projection* $p : X = A^1 \times Y \to Y$: For $y$ as in (i) consider the complementary embeddings $i_y : X_y = A^1_y \leftarrow X$, $j_y : X - X_y \hookrightarrow X$. Applying $p_*(-)_{\overline{y}}$ to the exact triangle $j_y! i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F} \to i_{\overline{y}}* i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F}$ we see that it is enough to show that $(p* i_y i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})_y$ and $(p* j_y! i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})_y$ are connective.

$(p* i_y i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})_y$ is connective: One has $(p* i_y i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})_y = R\Gamma(A^1_k, i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})$, so it is enough to check that for every successive quotient of the (usual) canonical filtration on $i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F}$ the complex $R\Gamma(A^1_k, \text{Gr}_n i_{\overline{y}}^* \mathcal{F})$ is connective. Since $\text{Gr}_{r=0} \mathcal{F} = 0$ and $\text{Gr}_0 \mathcal{F}$ is supported at finitely many points, we are reduced to the claim that for a (usual) sheaf $\mathcal{G}$ on $A^1_k$ one has $H^{r+1}(A^1_k, \mathcal{G}) = 0$ which is SGA 4 IX 5.7.
(p, j_y ! j_y^* \mathcal{F})_y \text{ is connective:} One has \( \mathcal{G} := j_y^* j_y^* \mathcal{F} \in D(X)_{\geq 0} \). Consider the open embedding \( j : X = (\mathbb{P}^1 - \{\infty\}) \times Y \hookrightarrow \overline{X} := \mathbb{P}^1 \times Y \). Let \( \overline{p} : \overline{X} \to Y \) be the projection, and \( \tilde{i}_y : \mathbb{P}^1_k \to \overline{X} \) be the embedding \( \tilde{i}_y(a) = (a, y) \). Then \( p = \overline{p} \circ j_y \), \((p_* \mathcal{G})_y = (\overline{p}_* j_y^* \mathcal{G})_y = R\Gamma(\mathbb{P}^1_k, \tilde{i}_y^* j_y^* \mathcal{G}) \) be proper base change, and so \((p_* \mathcal{G})_y = (\tilde{i}_y^* \mathcal{G})_{\overline{i}_y(\infty)} \) since \( \tilde{i}_y^* \mathcal{G} = 0 \). We are done by (ii) applied to \( j \) and \( \mathcal{G} \).

(iv) The general case: It is enough to write \( f \) as a composition \( f = f_n f_{n-1} \cdots f_0 \) of affine maps \( f_i \) such that our claim is true for each \( f_i \) (indeed, the sheaves \( \mathcal{F}_i := (f_i f_{i-1} \cdots f_0)_* \mathcal{F} \) satisfy \( d(\mathcal{F}_i) \leq d(\mathcal{F}_i) \)), and so \( \mathcal{F}_i = f_i_* \mathcal{F}_{i-1} \in D_{\leq 0} \) by induction by \( i \).

Now locally on \( Y \) we can factor \( f \) as composition \( X \hookrightarrow A^n \times Y \rightarrow Y \) where \( \hookrightarrow \) is a closed embedding and \( \rightarrow \) is the projection. Thus \( f = f_n f_{n-1} \cdots f_0 \) where \( f_0 \) is \( \hookrightarrow \) and \( f_i \) is the projection \( A^{n-i+1} \times Y \rightarrow A^{n-i} \times Y \) for \( i > 0 \). Our claim is true for \( f_0 \) since \( f_0^* \) is t-exact and for \( f_i, i > 0 \), by (iii), and we are done. \( \square \)

Constructing retractions. In the above, \( \eta \) is used simultaneously for a point of the topological space of the scheme \( Y \) and for a geometric point centered on this (scheme-theoretic) point. Let \( \overline{\eta} \) be a geometric point of \( Y \) centered on a point \( \eta \) of \( Y \) and \( Z = f \eta \). As \( k \) is perfect, the smooth locus of \( Z \) is nonempty, so we may assume that \( Z \) factors as \( Z \hookrightarrow A^\delta \rightarrow \text{Spec } k \) for \( h \) étale. Suppose \( Y = \text{Spec } A, Z = \text{Spec } B \) and form the pullback

\[
A' \longrightarrow k[x_1, \ldots, x_\delta] \\
\downarrow \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \quad \downarrow r \\
A \longrightarrow B
\]

of rings; it is easy to find a retract \( k[x_1, \ldots, x_\delta] \to A' \). Let \( Y' = \text{Spec } A' \).

\[
Z \hookrightarrow Y \\
\downarrow h \\
A^\delta \longrightarrow Y'
\]

The map \( Z \times_{A^\delta} Y \to Y \) is étale and the base change by \( Z \to Y \) is given by \( Z \times_{A^\delta} Z \to Z \), which admits the diagonal as section. As \( h \) is étale, this diagonal is is an isomorphism onto a connected component of \( Z \times_{A^\delta} Z \) (SGA 1 I 9.3) and we identify \( Z \) with this component. Let \( U \) denote \( Z \times_{A^\delta} Y \) minus the closed subscheme \( Z \times_{A^\delta} Z - Z \); \( U \) is an
étale neighborhood of $\eta$ and is equipped with a retract $U \to Z$, namely the one

$$Z \hookrightarrow U = Z \times_{A^1} Y - (Z \times_{A^1} Z - Z) \to Z$$

induced by the first projection $Z \times_{A^1} Y \to Z$.

4.1.7. The Čech spectral sequence is also called the Cartan-Leray spectral sequence and its existence in an arbitrary topos is established in SGAA, Exp. V 3.3.

4.1.8. The only thing worth mentioning is that the entire second paragraph is implicitly local to $U_i$. After all, on $U_i$ we have that $\tau_i^*K$ is in $pD^{\leq 0}$, and to show that $K|U_i$ is in $pD^{\leq 0}$, it suffices to show that $H^q(\tau_{U_i}\to K)|U_i$ is 0 for all $q$ (i.e. for all $q > -i$). Proceeding by descending induction on $q > -i$, the induction step consists of showing that $H^q(V \cap W_i, \mathcal{L}) = 0$ for all affine open $V$ implies that $\mathcal{L} = 0$.

4.2.5. As $f^*$ and $R\mathcal{H}om$ commute with reduction modulo $\ell^n$, it is enough to prove the statement in the category $D^b_c(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$, and the equality $\Gamma H^0 R\mathcal{H}om = H^0 R\Gamma R\mathcal{H}om$ holds in $D(X, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$ because, as $R\mathcal{H}om$ is in $D^c_\delta$, $H^0 = \tau_{\leq 0} ker d_0$, and $\Gamma$ commutes with the formation of kernels. For (4.2.5.3), the retraction $\mathcal{H} \to \circ f_* f^* \mathcal{H}$ is $\circ f_* (\eta(f^* \mathcal{H})$ where $\eta$ is the unit $\text{id} \to \circ e_* e^*$: 

$$\mathcal{H} \to \circ f_* f^* \mathcal{H} \to \circ f_* \circ e_* e^* f^* \mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H},$$

and it remains to check that the first arrow is surjective. The references in the rest of this paragraph are to SGAA Exposé XV. By (1.1), it suffices to show that $H^0(Y', \mathcal{H}) \to H^0(X', f'^* \mathcal{H})$ is bijective for each $Y' \to Y$ étale. Replacing $Y$ by $Y'$, we know by (1.5) that $f$ is $(-1)$-acyclic; i.e. that $\alpha : H^0(Y, \mathcal{H}) \to H^0(X, f^* \mathcal{H})$ is injective, as $f$ is surjective. Moreover, $f$ is locally acyclic as it is smooth. Then, (1.16) shows that $\alpha$ is surjective iff for every geometric point $\overline{y}$ of $Y$ algebraic over a point $y$ of $Y$, $\overline{\alpha} : H^0(\overline{y}, \mathcal{H}_{\overline{y}}) \to H^0(X_{\overline{y}}, f^* \mathcal{H}|X_{\overline{y}})$ is, so we may assume $Y$ is the spectrum of an algebraically closed field, in which case $X$ is connected, as the fibers of $f$ were assumed geometrically connected. Then $\alpha$ is seen to be bijective by another application of (1.1), which reduces the matter to the corresponding question for a constant sheaf. Note that the existence of a retraction discussed above is irrelevant to this argument.
4.2.6. This paragraph, as written, is nonsense. The correct (equivalent) statements are

(a) \( u^* \) identifies \( \mathcal{A} \) with a subcategory of \( \mathcal{B} \) closed under subquotients.

(b) the unit of adjunction \( \eta_! : \text{id}_{\mathcal{B}} \to u^* u_! \) is a natural epimorphism;

(b') the counit of adjunction \( \varepsilon_* : u^* u_* \to \text{id}_{\mathcal{B}} \) is a natural monomorphism.

Note that statement (a) is different from \( \mathcal{A} \) being épaisse, as an épaisse subcategory is also closed under extensions. A general remark: an adjunction \( F : \mathcal{C} \rightleftarrows \mathcal{D} : G \) with unit \( \eta \) and counit \( \varepsilon \) is called idempotent if it can be factored as a reflection and a coreflection, in which case many things are true; see the nLab page ‘idempotent adjunction.’ In particular, \( \varepsilon F \) and \( \eta G \) are natural isomorphisms. In our situation, both \( u_! \circ u^* \) and \( u^* \circ u_* \) are idempotent adjunctions as they are reflective and coreflective, respectively, so we get that \( \varepsilon_* u_* \) and \( \eta_! u^* \) are natural isomorphisms. Of course, \( u_! \) is right exact and \( u_* \) is left exact. We prove (a)\(\iff\)(b'); dual arguments give (a)\(\iff\)(b).

To prove (a)\(\Rightarrow\)(b'), let \( B \) be an object of \( \mathcal{B} \). In the commutative diagram with exact rows,

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \to & \ker \varepsilon_*(B) & \to & u^* u_* B & \to & B \\
& & \uparrow \alpha & & \uparrow \beta & & \uparrow \\
0 & \to & u^* u_* \ker \varepsilon_*(B) & \to & u^* u_* u^* u_* B & \to & u^* u_* B \\
& & \uparrow \gamma & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

\( \ker \varepsilon_*(B) \) is in the essential image of \( \mathcal{A} \) as \( \mathcal{A} \) is closed under subobjects. Therefore \( \alpha, \beta, \) and \( \gamma \) are isomorphisms, which shows \( u^* u_* \ker \varepsilon_*(B) = 0 \) and therefore \( \ker \varepsilon_*(B) = 0 \).

Now let’s prove (b')\(\Rightarrow\)(a). In the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
0 & \to & A & \to & u^* B & \to & C & \to & 0 \\
& & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow & & \uparrow \\
0 & \to & u^* u_* A & \to & u^* u_* u^* B & \to & u^* u_* C \\
\end{array}
\]

with exact rows, the middle arrow is an isomorphism and the outer arrows are monomorphisms. By the four-lemma, the first arrow is also an epimorphism, hence an isomorphism, identifying \( A \) in the essential image of \( \mathcal{A} \). Therefore this essential image is closed under subobjects and hence also under subquotients, as \( u^* \) is exact.
Identifying $\mathcal{A}$ with its essential image, a full subcategory of $\mathcal{B}$, every object $B$ of $\mathcal{B}$ has a largest subobject in $\mathcal{A}$, viz. $u^*u_*B$, and a largest quotient in $\mathcal{A}$, viz. $u^*u_!B$. To see this, simply observe that both candidates are indeed in $\mathcal{A}$, and if $A$ is in $\mathcal{A}$ and a subobject of $\mathcal{B}$, then $A \cong u^*u_*A \hookrightarrow u^*u_*B \hookleftarrow B$, and dually.

The example adjunction is backwards: $u_!(X \to Y) = (Y \tilde{\to} Y)$ is the left adjoint, $u_*(X \to Y) = (X \tilde{\to} X)$ is the right adjoint, since the diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C & \longrightarrow & D
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C & \longrightarrow & D
\end{array}
\]

have unique completions to commutative squares. Then $\varepsilon_* : u^*u_* \to \text{id}_{\mathcal{B}}$ needn’t be a natural monomorphism, as a commutative diagram of the sort

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \longrightarrow & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C & \longrightarrow & D
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\sim} & B \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C & \longrightarrow & D
\end{array}
\]

determines the morphism $A \to C$ but isn’t enough to determine the morphism $B \to D$.

**4.2.6.1.** The Jordan-Hölder theorem holds in any abelian category, and since $u^*$ is exact and preserves simple objects, identifying $\mathcal{A}$ with its essential image, it follows that the components of any $A$ in $\mathcal{A}$ also belong to $\mathcal{A}$. To show that $\mathcal{A}$ is closed under subobjects, and therefore subquotients, it will suffice to show that if $0 \to B \to A \to S \to 0$ with $A$ in $\mathcal{A}$, $B$ in $\mathcal{B}$, and $S$ simple, then $B$ is in $\mathcal{A}$. Since $S$ is simple, it is a component of $A$ and therefore in $\mathcal{A}$. The five-lemma, applied to the diagram with exact rows obtained by applying $\varepsilon_*$

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & B \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
u^*u_*B & \longrightarrow & u^*u_*A \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
0 & \longrightarrow & u^*u_*S,
\end{array}
\]

shows that indeed $u^*u_*B \tilde{\to} B$, and $B$ is in $\mathcal{A}$. 
4.2.6.2. Notes on the proof are below; the proof depends on the middle perversity insofar as the commutativity of intermediate extension with $f^*[d]$ relies on the relative dimension coinciding with the change in perversity between an irreducible component and its inverse image by $f$. The proof doesn’t work for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves as it relies on 4.3.1 which fails for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-cohomology.

Commutation of $f^*[d]$ with intermediate extension. We wish to show that $f^*[d]j_*! = j_*f^*[d]$. The transitivity of $j_!$ for $j$ the inclusion of a locally closed subset allows us to factorize the inclusion of $V$ as the open immersion $V \hookrightarrow Y$ followed by the closed immersion $\overline{V} \hookrightarrow Y$; the latter posing no problem as in this case lower shriek, lower star, and intermediate extension all coincide and commute with $f^*[d]$ by smooth base change. Reduced to the case of open immersion $Y = \overline{V}$, let $m$ be minimal such that $F = Y - V$ is of dimension $\leq m$, and put $t := p(2m)$. We can find a stratification of $F$ into strata satisfying 2.2.10 (a) so that for $A$ in $\mathcal{D}_c^b(V, \mathbb{R}^m)$, the $H^i j_*A$ are locally constant on each stratum for $i \geq t$. Let $U_n$ (resp. $F_n$) denote the union of strata $S$ in this stratification of $F$ satisfying $p(S) \leq n$ (resp. $p(S) \geq n$). For such an $S$, $\overline{S} - S$ is a union of strata of dimension strictly less than $\dim S$. Therefore each $S$ in the stratification of $U_n - U_{n-1}$ is closed in $U_n$. By transitivity of the intermediate extension, it will suffice to extend $A$ from $V$ to $V \cup U_t$, as the complement of the latter in $Y$ is $F_{t+1}$, closed; $V \cup U_t - V = U_t$ is also closed in $V \cup U_t$, and nonempty. $U_t$ is a disjoint union of equidimensional strata smooth over $\overline{k}$ (hence by the note to 2.2.10, the étale topology sees them as smooth), so that the $H^i j_*A$ are locally constant on $U_t$ for $i \geq t$. We have reduced to the setting of 2.2.4: $Y = \overline{V}$, $F = Y - V$ smooth of dimension $m$, $H^i j_* A$ are locally constant on $F$ for $i \geq t := p(2m)$, and $j_*A = \tau_{\leq t-1} A$. As $f$ is smooth of relative dimension $d$, $f^{-1} F$ is also equidimensional, now of dimension $m + d$. As pullbacks of locally constant sheaves, the $H^i j_* f^* A$ are still locally constant on $f^{-1} F$. If $t' = p(2(d + m)) = -d - m$, then shifting by $d$ and applying $\tau_{\leq t'} F$ is the same as applying $\tau_{\leq t'} F$ and then shifting by $d$. It only remains to verify that $f^*$ commutes with $\tau_{\leq 0} F$, but this is easy: letting $i : F \hookrightarrow Y$ be the closed immersion, $(f^* \tau_{\leq 0} F A, f^* A, f^* i_* \tau_{> 0} i^* A)$ defines $f^* \tau_{\leq 0} F A$, but $f^* i_* \tau_{> 0} i^* A = i_* \tau_{> 0} i^* f^* A$ (notating $i$ as usual for the base extension as well), hence also defines $\tau_{\leq 0} F A$. 


Irreducibility of the inverse image of an irreducible local system on an irreducible scheme by a smooth morphism with geometrically connected fibers. SGA 1, Exp. IX, 5.6 shows that if \( f : S' \to S \) is universally submersive (e.g. faithfully flat and quasi-compact) with geometrically connected fibers, and \( S \) is connected, then \( S' \) is connected, and, choosing a geometric point \( s' \) of \( S' \) and letting \( s \) be the image of \( s' \) in \( S \), the homomorphism \( \pi_1(S', s') \to \pi_1(S, s) \) is surjective. This immediately implies that if \( L \) is an irreducible local system on \( S \), \( f^*L \) is an irreducible local system on \( S' \). Of course, smooth with geometrically connected fibers means smooth with geometrically irreducible fibers as these fibers are themselves smooth (SGA 1, Exp II, 2.1) and therefore regular. It is a topological fact (Stacks 004Z) that if \( Y \) is irreducible and \( f : X \to Y \) is open with irreducible fibers, then \( X \) is irreducible. This verifies that if \( V \) is irreducible and \( f \) is smooth with connected fibers, the inverse image on \( f^{-1}V \) of an irreducible local system on \( V \) is again irreducible.

4.2.7. Let \( X', X, Y \) be of finite type over a field \( k \) and \( f : X' \to X \). We wish to show that \( \otimes \) commutes with direct image; i.e. that the below arrow is an isomorphism.

\[
f_*(K \boxtimes L) \to (f \times \text{id})_*(K \boxtimes L)
\]

We will compute locally about a geometric point \( \xi := (x, y) \to X \times Y \) (\( x, y \) geometric points of \( X, Y \) respectively), so that all the objects in \( X \leftarrow (X \times Y)_\xi \to Y \) are spectra of strictly henselian local rings. Let \( t \to X_t \) be a geometric point centered on the generic point of an irreducible component of \( X_t \). Th. finitude 2.16 gives that \( Y \to \text{Spec } k \) is universally locally acyclic, so for any \( M \) in \( \text{D}^+(X \times Y, \mathbb{Z}/\ell) \),

\[
\Gamma((X \times Y)_\xi, M) = \Gamma((X \times Y)_\xi, M),
\]

where \( (X \times Y)_{\xi,t} \) denotes the geometric fiber in \( t \) of \( (X \times Y)_{\xi} \to Y \). To pass from \( X_t \) to \( (X_t)_t = t \) we can first pass to the limit of Zariski neighborhoods of \( t \), which is the spectrum of an artinian local ring, then kill nilpotents and extend scalars. As lower star commutes with smooth base change and the étale topology doesn’t see nilpotents, we may therefore assume \( X = t \), the spectrum of a separably closed extension \( k(t) \) of \( k \), and \( Y = Y_y \). As \( X_t \to \text{Spec } \bar{k} \leftarrow Y_y, \text{Spec } \bar{k} \times_k Y_y \) is the disjoint union of copies of \( Y_y \), and
\( \xi \) picks one of them; i.e. \((\text{Spec } \overline{k} \times_{k} Y_{y})_{\xi} = Y_{y} \). So we may assume \( Y_{y} \to \overline{k} \), and write
\[
\Gamma((X \times Y)_{\xi,t}, \mathcal{M}) = \Gamma(Y_{y} \times_{\overline{k}} k', \mathcal{M}) = \Gamma(Y_{y}, \mathcal{M}),
\]
where the second equality is Arcata V 3.3. We are reduced to \( k = \overline{k}, X = \overline{k}, Y = Y_{y}, \) in which case the formula is
\[
\Gamma(X', K) \otimes \Gamma(Y, L) \to \Gamma(X' \times Y, K \boxtimes L),
\]
which is obtained from the K"unneth formula of Th. finitude 1.11 by smooth base change and passage to the limit along \( Y_{y} \to Y \).

4.2.8. It would appear that \( \boxtimes \) is only right t-exact in \( \mathbb{Z}_{\ell} \)-cohomology, due to the possible appearance of \( \text{Tor} \).

4.3.1. This is a theorem in \( \mathbb{Q}_{\ell} \)-cohomology and not in \( \mathbb{Z}_{\ell} \)-cohomology because the latter has few irreducible objects; in particular, the category of lisse \( \mathbb{Z}_{\ell} \)-sheaves is not artinian; the irreducible lisse \( \mathbb{Z}_{\ell} \) sheaves are torsion.

4.3.3. ‘la monodromie de \( \mathcal{L} \) ne change pas par r"{e}striction à \( U \)’ \( \leadsto \text{[SGAT] I 10.3} \).

4.3.4. The d"{e}vissage of the perverse sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) should occur over an irreducible affine smooth open so that we can apply the results of 4.1.10–4.1.12. The sequence 4.1.10.1 has outer terms supported on \( X - U \) and so reduces the problem for \( \mathcal{F} \) to that for \( j_{\ast} j^{-\ast} \mathcal{F} = j_{\ast} \mathcal{L}[\dim U] \); 4.1.12.3 then reduces the problem for \( j_{\ast} \mathcal{L}[\dim U] \) to that for \( j_{\ast} \mathcal{L}[\dim U] \). This allows us to proceed by induction on the length of \( \mathcal{L} \). Let \( \mathcal{L}' \subset \mathcal{L} \) be a simple lisse subsheaf. It suffices to remark that the kernel of \( j_{\ast} \mathcal{L}'[\dim U] \to j_{\ast} \mathcal{L}[\dim U] \) is supported on \( X - U \), and the restriction of the cokernel to \( U \) has strictly lesser length than that of \( \mathcal{L}' \).

4.4. \( \leadsto \text{note to Appendix A} \)

4.5.1. The formula for \( E_{2}^{pq} \) is direct from
\[
H_{c}^{q}(\breve{U}_{1}, \mathcal{L}) = H^{2}(\breve{U}_{1}, \mathcal{L}^{\vee}(1))^{\vee} = ((\mathcal{L}^{\vee}(1))^{\pi_{1}(\breve{U}_{1}, \mathcal{J}))^{\vee} = (\mathcal{L}(-1))^{\pi_{1}(\breve{U}_{1}, \mathcal{J})},
\]
where the first equality is Poincaré duality.
The multiplicativity of $\chi$ in $d_1$ follows from the Euler-Poincaré formula by the corresponding statement for the constant sheaf (which follows from Hurwitz’s formula) and the fact that the number of points of the fiber above each $x \in X_1 - U_1$ is equal to $d_1$.

The equality $H^q(\tilde{Y}, K_1) = H^q(\tilde{Y}, \Psi_{\overline{\eta}}K_1)$ follows from the fact that [SGA 7, XIII, 2.1.8.3] is an isomorphism as $\tilde{p}$ is proper.

The second-to-last displayed equation is the definition of the Swan conductor [SGA5, X, 6.2.1]. One can understand the last displayed equation as an equality of constructible sheaves of modules over the torsion ring $\mathbb{Z}/\ell[Q]$. In particular, this is a statement in a ringed topos where the ring is noncommutative. This poses no problem: $\mathcal{H}om$ still sends injective sheaves to (flasque) sheaves acyclic for $R\Gamma$ [SGAA V, 6.1 (3)], so that in particular $R\Gamma R\mathcal{H}om = R\mathcal{H}om$, and (as $Sw$ is projective) we have:

$$H^{q+1}(\tilde{Y}, \mathcal{H}om_Q(Sw, \Psi_{\overline{\eta}}K_1[-1])) = H^{q+1} Hom_Q(Sw, R\Gamma(\tilde{Y}, \Psi_{\overline{\eta}}K_1[-1]))$$

$$= Hom_Q(Sw, H^{q+1}(\tilde{Y}, \Psi_{\overline{\eta}}K_1[-1])).$$

5.1.1. Recall the commutative diagram defining relative Frobenius [1.3.1] and that

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
[\mathcal{F}] & \xrightarrow{Fr_q} & [\mathcal{F}] \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \xrightarrow{Fr_q} & X
\end{array}
\]

is in fact cartesian, which defines the Frobenius correspondence $F^*_q : Fr^*_q \mathcal{F} \sim \mathcal{F}$ as the inverse of the universal arrow; i.e. if $g : [\mathcal{F}] \to X$ is the structure morphism,

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
[\mathcal{F}] & \xrightarrow{Fr_q} & [\mathcal{F}] \\
\sim & Fr^*_q & \sim \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
X & \xrightarrow{Fr_q} & X
\end{array}
\]

commutes.
4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS

As Fr_q is integral, radicial, and surjective, the natural morphisms Fr_q^* Fr_q^* \to id \to Fr_q^* Fr_q^* are isomorphisms; this implies that for each x ∈ X, the base change morphism [SGAA, XVIII 3.14.2]

Fr_q^! i_{Fr_q(x)}^! \to i_x^! Fr_q^*

is an isomorphism. As Fr_q is a universal homeomorphism, this implies that Fr_q^* is left t-exact (2.2.12); as it is right t-exact (2.2.5), it is t-exact. As X is a variety, Fr_q is actually finite and Fr_q^! = Fr_q^* is t-exact (2.2.5).

5.1.2. I find the proof of this proposition remarkable. The morphisms in the target category are those f : F \to G making commutative squares

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Fr_q^* F & \xrightarrow{Fr_q^*(f)} & Fr_q^* G \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f \\
F & \xrightarrow{f} & G.
\end{array}
\]

As F (i.e. F_q^*, recall Rapport 1.8) acts on Hom(K, L) by conjugation f \mapsto F f F^{-1}, this is the same as the morphism f being fixed by F.

In the paragraph discussing Ext^1 in M(X), clearly an extension of type (G ⊔ F, (ϕ Uϕ)) in the kernel of the ‘forget ϕ’ map on Ext^1. Such an extension is already trivial in the ϕ-category if it splits; i.e. if I can write down a map G ⊔ F \to G of the form (id, f) compatible with (ϕ Uϕ); i.e. if I can find a f to make the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Fr_q^* G \oplus Fr_q^* F & \xrightarrow{(id, Fr_q^*(f))} & Fr_q^* G \\
\downarrow (ϕ Uϕ) & & \downarrow ϕ \\
G \oplus F & \xrightarrow{(id, f)} & G
\end{array}
\]

commute; i.e. if there is a f : F \to G such that Uϕ + fϕ = ϕ Fr_q^*(f); i.e. if U = ϕ Fr_q^*(f)ϕ^{-1} − f for some f : F \to G.

5.1.3. The point is that in our case P(Y_0) (a priori a subcategory of the category of pairs) is equivalent to the category of perverse sheaves on Y_0, so that conditions (a) and (b) are obvious for this subcategory.
In the following paragraph, ‘sheaf’ means ‘perverse sheaf for perversity 0’; i.e. a complex concentrated in degree zero. Transposed into the language of [WeilIII], condition (c) reads: ‘every lisse subquotient in the category of Weil sheaves of a lisse étale sheaf is again a lisse étale sheaf.’ The point is that in the language of [SGA 7] XIII 1.1, the category of pairs \( (\mathcal{F}, \phi) \) where \( \mathcal{F} \) is a sheaf (concentrated in degree zero) and \( \phi : \text{Fr}_q^* \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F} \) is the same as the category of sheaves on \( X \) with action of \( \text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}, \mathbf{F}_q) \) compatible with the action of Galois on \( X \). In any event, we can ask that the action of Galois be not only compatible, but also continuous, and this is the distinction between Weil sheaves and étale sheaves [WeilIII 1.1.11], as [SGA 7] XIII 1.1.3 shows that the category of étale sheaves on \( X_0 \) is the same as the category of étale sheaves on \( X \) with a compatible, continuous action of Galois. This would mean that \( \phi : \text{Fr}_q^* \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F} \) would extend to an action of \( \hat{\mathbf{Z}} \). Suppose \( \mathcal{F} = \mathbf{Q}_\ell \) (so that \( \text{Fr}_q^* \mathcal{F} = \mathbf{Q}_\ell \)). Then a choice of \( \phi \) amounts to a choice of element in \( \mathbf{Q}_\ell^\times \), but this \( \phi \) extends to an action of \( \text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}, \mathbf{F}_q) \) iff it gives a continuous action of \( \hat{\mathbf{Z}} \), which is true if the powers of \( \phi \) preserve a \( \mathbf{Z}_\ell \) lattice inside \( \mathbf{Q}_\ell \). As there is only one, this amounts to asking that the choice of element of \( \mathbf{Q}_\ell^\times \) corresponding to \( \phi \) have valuation zero for the \( \ell \)-adic valuation; i.e. be an \( \ell \)-adic unit (element of \( \mathbf{Z}_\ell^\times \)). This is why (given a geometric point \( \overline{x} \) of \( X \)) the category of lisse Weil sheaves is equivalent to the category of representations of \( W(\overline{x}) \), while the category of lisse étale sheaves is equivalent to the category of representations of \( \pi_1(\overline{x}) \) [WeilIII 1.1.12]. To see that condition (c) is satisfied for our category of lisse étale sheaves, therefore, one must simply remark that given a representation \( V_0 \) of \( \pi_1(\overline{x}) \) and a \( W(\overline{x}) \)-subrepresentation \( V_1 \subset V_0 \), \( V_1 \) is in fact a \( \pi_1(\overline{x}) \)-subrepresentation. Let \( r_\ell \), equal \( \dim V_\ell, r_\ell = 0, 1 \); let \( E \) be a finite extension of \( \mathbf{Q}_\ell \) such that the action of \( \pi_1 \) on \( V_0 \) factors through \( \text{GL}(r_\ell, E) \) and let \( R \) be the ring of integers of \( E \). The action of \( \pi_1 \) on \( V_0 \) stabilizes a lattice \( L_0 \approx R^{r_\ell} \subset V_0 \) so that we may identify the image of \( \pi_1 \) in \( \text{GL}(V_0) \) with a compact subgroup \( G_\pi \subset \text{GL}(r_\ell, R) \) and \( W_0 \) with a dense subgroup \( G_W \subset G_\pi \). Finding a basis for \( V_1 \) lying in \( L_0 \) identifies a free submodule \( L_1 \approx R^{r_1} \subset L_0 \) stable

\footnote{To digress further in that reference for a moment, given a sheaf \( \mathcal{F}_0 \), its base extension \( \mathcal{F} \) carries a compatible action of Galois since the morphism \( u(g), \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F} \) is given on \( U \to X \) étale as follows: \( U \to U \) is an isomorphism and the functor \( \mathcal{F} \) applied to this morphism gives the isomorphism \( \mathcal{F}(U) \to u(g), \mathcal{F}(U) \). That it is compatible over a field \( k \) which is not topologically cyclic follows from the fact that \( \mathcal{F} \) is a functor.}
by $G_W$ such that $L_1 \otimes E = V_1$. The image of $G_\pi \times L_1 \to L_0 \subset V_0$ is compact and the image of $G_W \times L_1$ is dense in it; as the latter is contained in $L_1$, the former is too ($L_1$ is compact, hence a closed subgroup of $L_0$, hence contains the closure of the image of $G_W \times L_1$, which is the image of $G_\pi \times L_1$).

5.1.8. $(D^b_{\leq w})[1] = D^b_{\leq w+1}$, and, as $D$ exchanges $D^b_{\leq -w}$ and $D^b_{\geq w}$, $(D^b_{\geq w})[1] = D^b_{\geq w+1}$.

‘$D^b_{\leq w} \cap D^b_{\geq w+1}$ est réduit aux objets nuls’ $\mapsto$ while the morphism

$$\text{Hom}^1(K_0, K_0[-1]) \to \text{Hom}^1(K, K[-1])$$

has kernel $\text{Hom}(K_0, K_0[-1])_P$ by (5.1.2.5), this map takes $\text{id} : K_0 \to K_0$ to $\text{id} : K \to K$. Since, by 5.1.15 (iii), the map is null, $\text{id} : K \to K$ is null, so $K$ is null, so $K_0$ is null.

5.1.14. (ii) Passing to stalks, one uses the stability of $D^b_{\leq w}$ under $\tau_{\leq i}$ and $\tau_{\geq i}$ to assume that one’s complexes are concentrated in one degree, and then the statement is the same as for ordinary sheaves [Weil II 1.2.5 (ii)].

(ii*) If $K$ and $L$ are in $D^b_{\leq w}$ and $D^b_{\geq w'}$, respectively, then $DL$ is of weight $\leq -w'$ and so by (ii) $K \otimes DL$ is of weight $\leq w' - w$. Therefore

$$\mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}\text{om}(K, L) = \mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}\text{om}(K, \mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}\text{om}(DL, K_0))$$

$$= \mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}\text{om}(K \otimes DL, K_0) = D(K \otimes DL)$$

is of weight $\geq w' - w$.

5.2.2. ‘les $\mathcal{L}_0$ sont purs’ $\mapsto$ as every sub-quotient of a mixed perverse sheaf is mixed, the sheaves $(\circ j_\circ \mathcal{L}_0)[1]$ are mixed, so the sheaves $\mathcal{L}_0$ are mixed, so the $\mathcal{L}_0$ are pure, since every irreducible lisse $\mathcal{O}_f$-sheaf $\mathcal{L}_0$ on a normal connected $\mathcal{F}_q$-variety is pure. (Following the argument of [Weil II 1.8.11], $\mathcal{L}_0$ admits a filtration with successive quotients pure sheaves, and shrinking the open locus $\mathcal{L}_0$ remains irreducible. Therefore after shrinking enough, the filtration has only one nonzero graded piece: the restriction of $\mathcal{L}_0$. Now apply [Weil II 1.8.10] to conclude that $\mathcal{L}_0$ was pure before restriction.)
\[ \sum_{p} \dim H^{-1}(U, \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} \mathcal{F}) \leq r \iff \text{a graded piece with punctual support has } \dim H^{-1} = 0; \text{ a graded piece of the form } (\circ j_{*} \mathcal{L})[1] \text{ has} \]
\[ H^{-1}(U, (\circ j_{*} \mathcal{L})[1]) = H^{0}(U, \circ j_{*} \mathcal{L}) = H^{0}(u^{-1}(Y), \mathcal{L}). \]
The latter group is the global sections of \( \mathcal{L} \), which is lisse, on \( u^{-1}(Y) \), which is computed by taking invariants of monodromy acting on the stalk of \( \mathcal{L} \), and which therefore has dimension less than or equal to the rank of \( \mathcal{L} \).

We would like to find a \( g \) such that \( \dim H^{1}(U, \circ k_{*} u^{*} \mathcal{L}) > r \). By the Euler-Poincaré formula (Laumon, Transformation de Fourier 2.2.1.2)
\[ \sum_{i=0}^{2} (-1)^{i} \dim H^{i}(\overline{U}, \circ k_{*} u^{*} \mathcal{L}) = (2 - 2g) r(\mathcal{L}) - \sum_{x \in [U]} a_{x}(\mathcal{L}), \]
where the numbers \( a_{x}(\mathcal{L}) \) are natural numbers and \( r(\mathcal{L}) \) is the generic rank of \( \mathcal{L} \) (the number \( r \) is the sum of the \( r(\mathcal{L}) \) over all graded pieces). Therefore \( \dim H^{1}(\overline{U}, \circ k_{*} u^{*} \mathcal{L}) \geq (2g - 2) r(\mathcal{L}) \) and when \( g > 0 \), this number is \( \geq 2g - 2 \). If \( g \) is chosen so that \( 2g - 2 > r \), we have the desired lower bound.

In the end we have shown that each constituent in a Jordan-Hölder series for \( \mathcal{F} \) is pure of weight \( \geq w \). Therefore every constituent in such a series for \( D\mathcal{F} \) is pure of weight \( \leq -w \), so \( D\mathcal{F} \) is mixed of weight \( \leq -w \) and \( \mathcal{F} \) is mixed of weight \( \geq w \).

5.2.3. This remark is in effect a translation of the spectral sequence
\[ E^{pq}_{1} = H^{p+q}(U, \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} \mathcal{F}) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(U, \mathcal{F}). \]
There are only two nonzero diagonals: the diagonals where \( p + q = -1 \) or \( 0 \). Considered as a presheaf of spectral sequences, the \( E_{1} \)-terms on the \( p + q = -1 \) diagonal are in the subcategory \( \mathcal{N} \). The spectral sequence degenerates on \( E_{2} \) so that the cokernel of \( H^{-1}(U, \text{Gr}^{p-1}_{F} \mathcal{F}) \xrightarrow{d_{1}} H^{0}(U, \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} \mathcal{F}) \) coincides with \( E^{p,-p}_{2} = E^{p,-p}_{\infty} = \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} H^{0}(U, \mathcal{F}) \) for the filtration induced on cohomology. The presheaf \( U \mapsto H^{-1}(U, \text{Gr}^{p-1}_{F} \mathcal{F}) \) is in \( \mathcal{N} \), so that \( \bigoplus \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} \mathcal{F} \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Gr}^{p}_{F} \bigoplus \mathcal{F} \) in pf(\( \mathcal{F} \))/\( \mathcal{N} \). We’re done, since an exact sequence in the category of perverse sheaves on \( X \) is the same as a perverse sheaf with a one-step decreasing filtration \( F \) with perverse successive quotients as above, and as we have just
seen, \( f \) applied to the exact sequence
\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^1 \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^0 \mathcal{F} \rightarrow 0
\]
is isomorphic in \( \text{pf}(S)/\mathcal{N} \) to
\[
0 \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^1 \int \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \int \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \text{Gr}_F^0 \int \mathcal{F} \rightarrow 0.
\]

5.2.4. The point is that regardless of whether \( \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}_0 \) is of type (a) or (b), \( u : U \rightarrow X \) can be chosen so that \( H^0(U, \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}) \) grows linearly with \( \deg u \). Modulo some bounded presheaf (i.e. belonging to the subcategory \( \mathcal{N} \)), \( H^0(U, \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}) \) is a subquotient of \( H^0(U, \mathcal{F}) \), so its image still grows linearly with \( \deg u \). As \( W_{w-1} H^0(U, \mathcal{F}) \) grows like \( o(\deg u) \), there is a \( U \) so that \( W_{w-1} \text{Gr}_F^p H^0(U, \mathcal{F}) \) does not contain the image of \( H^0(U, \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}) \) in \( \text{Gr}_F^p H^0(U, \mathcal{F}) \). Then the arguments provided show that either (a) \( \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F} \) injects into a quotient of \( H^0(U, \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}) \) of weight \( w \), or (b) \( H^1(U, {}^*k_*u^*\mathcal{L}) \), which is pure, admits a nonzero quotient of weight \( \geq w \). In any case, the same conclusion holds.

It remains to see that \( u \) can be chosen so that \( H^0(U, \text{Gr}_F^p \mathcal{F}) \) grows linearly with \( \deg u \). In the punctual case (a) this is trivial. In case (b) as was analyzed using Euler-Poincaré, \( H^1(U, {}^*k_*u^*\mathcal{L}) \) grows linearly with \( g \). By the Hurwitz formula, provided that \( \bar{U}_1 \) has genus > 1, the genus of a revêtement étale \( u_1 : \bar{U} \rightarrow \bar{U}_1 \) is linear with \( \deg u_1 \). It remains to be seen that one can find a nonconstant separable (i.e. generically étale) map \( \bar{U}_1 \rightarrow \bar{X} \) with \( \bar{U}_1 \) a curve of genus > 1. When \( \bar{X} = \mathbb{P}^1 \), this is easy, as any curve admits a nonconstant separable map to \( \mathbb{P}^1 \) corresponding to any choice of separating transcendence base for its function field. When \( \bar{X} \) has genus 1, by the Hurwitz formula it will suffice to find a finite separable branched cover of \( \bar{X} \) which is not everywhere unramified. By [SGA1 XIII 2.12], finding such a covering that is tamely ramified at its branch points is a purely topological problem: if \( V \subset \bar{X} \) is the open obtained by removing \( n \) distinct closed points \( a_1, \ldots, a_n \), then the tame fundamental group \( \pi_1(V) \) is generated by \( 2 + n \) elements \( x, y, \sigma_j \), with \( 1 \leq j \leq n \), such that \( \sigma_j \) is a generator of the tame inertia at \( a_j \), subject to the relation
\[
xyx^{-1}y^{-1} \cdot \prod_{1 \leq j \leq n} \sigma_j = 1. \tag{*}
\]
For every finite group $G$ of order prime to the characteristic $p$ generated by the elements $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{\sigma}_j$ and satisfying the relation $[\bar{x}]^p = [\bar{y}]$, there exists a revêtement étale of $V$, of group $G$, corresponding to a homomorphism $\pi'_1(U) \to G$ sending $x, y, \sigma_j$ to $\bar{x}, \bar{y}, \bar{\sigma}_j$. If $m$ is any integer not divisible by $p$, then the above tells us there exists a galois cover $U_1 \to V$ with galois group $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ so that the tame inertia at $a_1, a_2$ acts nontrivially: if we write $\mathbb{Z}/m\mathbb{Z}$ multiplicatively as $\langle q | q^m = e \rangle$, then we can take, e.g., $x = q, y = q, \sigma_1 = q, \sigma_2 = q^{-1}$.

If $\overline{U}_1$ denotes the normalization of $\overline{X}$ in $U_1$, then $\overline{U}_1 \times_X V = U_1, \overline{U}_1$ is smooth and complete, and the map $u_1 : \overline{U}_1 \to \overline{X}$ is nonconstant, finite, and separable. As $\sigma_1$ and $\sigma_2$ act nontrivially on $u_1^{-1}(V)$, $\overline{U}_1 \to \overline{X}$ is tamely ramified over $a_1$ and $a_2$.

By the Hurwitz formula, the genus of $U_1$ is $> 1$.

5.2.5. ‘On laisse au lecteur le soin’ it suffices to check the conclusion over an affine Zariski covering of $X_0$ and the hypothesis is inherited by each affine Zariski open $V_0 \subset X_0$; if $\varphi : V_0 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}^n_0$ denotes the embedding of $V_0$ into affine space, the hypothesis is inherited by $\varphi, \mathcal{F}_0$ and the conclusion holds for $(\mathcal{A}^n_0, \varphi, \mathcal{F}_0)$ iff it does for $(V_0, \mathcal{F}_0)$.

5.2.6. To be clear, one needs (4.5.4) with $X_\alpha = \overline{U}, X = \overline{U}^n, U = U^n, f$ the open immersion $U^n \hookrightarrow \overline{U}^n, \overline{X}_\alpha = \overline{U}_\alpha$, and $\overline{X} = \overline{U}^n_\alpha$. As $U_\alpha$ is affine and $U_\alpha \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}^n$ is étale, $H^0(U^n_\alpha, \mathcal{F})$ is of weight $\geq w$ (see the paragraph after (5.2.1)). (This argument is the one of (5.2.4).)

5.2.7. ‘$p u^! \mathcal{F}$ est donc nul’ it suffices, if $p u^! \mathcal{F} \neq 0$, it would have a nontrivial simple perverse subsheaf $0 \neq \mathcal{F} \subset p u^! \mathcal{F}$ and $u_* \mathcal{F}$ would be a simple (1.4.26) perverse subsheaf (4.1.10.2) of $\mathcal{F}$ with support contained in $H$.

5.2.8. The morphism $\text{Fr} : X \to X$ is integral, radical, surjective so that $\text{Fr}^* \text{Fr}_* \mathcal{F} \sim \mathcal{F} \sim \text{Fr}_* \text{Fr}^* \mathcal{F}$. The perverse sheaf $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G}$ has punctual support (base change for $i : \text{Supp} \mathcal{G} \hookrightarrow X)$ and is the maximal perverse subsheaf of $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G}$ with punctual support, since if $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} \subset \mathcal{G}', \mathcal{G} \hookrightarrow \text{Fr}_* \mathcal{G} \subset \text{Fr}_* \mathcal{G}'$ and as $\text{Fr}_* \mathcal{G}'$ has punctual support, it must

\[4\]Indeed, replacing $X$ by $X_{(a_1)}$, its henselization at $a_1$, $U_{(a_1)} := \overline{U} \times_X X_{(a_1)}$ splits into the direct product of henselian traits, indexed by the geometric points in the fiber of $a_1$. If there as as many as the degree of $U_1 \to V, U_{(a_1)} \to X_{(a_1)}$ is étale and the tame inertia must act trivially.
equal $\mathcal{G}$, so that $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} \sim \text{Fr}^* \text{Fr}_* \mathcal{G}' \sim \mathcal{G}$. We have a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} & \xleftarrow[i]{} & \text{Fr}^* \mathcal{F} \\
\downarrow \quad & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{G} & \xleftarrow[i]{} & \mathcal{F}.
\end{array}
$$

Tracing the diagram right down is a monomorphism with image having punctual support, hence factors through $\mathcal{G} \xleftarrow[i]{} \mathcal{F}$ yielding a map $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} \xleftarrow[i]{} \mathcal{G}$; tracing right up the same is true, giving a factorization through $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} \xleftarrow[i]{} \text{Fr}^* \mathcal{F}$ and a map $\mathcal{G} \xleftarrow[i]{} \text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G}$. Both compositions give the identity, hence an isomorphism $\text{Fr}^* \mathcal{G} \sim \mathcal{G}$ making the above diagram commute. Now cite (5.1.2).

5.3.2. Deuxième preuve (a) Let $F_0 := X_0 \setminus U_0$ and $i : F_0 \xleftarrow[i]{} X_0$; as $F_0$ is finite by assumption we can use the formula $j_{!*} = \tau_{\leq -1} F_0$ of (2.2.4), which also shows that $v^* j_{!*} = j_{!*} v^*$ as $v^*$ is $t$-exact and commutes with lower star. Then the correct formula would be $j_{!*} v^* F_0 = \tau_{\leq -1} j_{!*} v^* F_0$ fitting into the distinguished triangle $(\tau_{\leq -1} j_{!*} v^* F_0, j_{!*} v^* F_0, i_* \tau_{\geq 0} j_{!*} v^* F_0)$, where $i_* \tau_{\geq 0} j_{!*} v^* F_0$ is acyclic off degree 0 and supported on $F_0$. In particular, its hypercohomology is acyclic off degree 0, giving the injection $H^0(V, v^* j_{!*} F) \xleftarrow[i]{} H^0(V, j_{!*} v^* F)$.

(b) Let’s start by saying $v_0$ is in $V_0$ if $f^{-1}(v_0)$ does not contain the support of a simple perverse quotient of $F_0$ (4.1.10.1). The support of the finitely many constituents of $F_0$ is contained in the closure of finitely many points of $X_0$.

$i^* j_{!*} F_0[-1]$ is perverse $\sim$ recall that $i$ is the immersion of a closed fiber $f^{-1}(v_0)$ chosen with the property that it does not contain the support of any simple quotient of $F_0$. The perverse sheaf $i_* p H^0 i^* j_{!*} F_0$ is a quotient of $j_{!*} F_0$ (1.4.10.1). Applying $i^*$, we get a quotient of $F_0$ supported on $f^{-1}(v_0)$, which must be zero. Therefore $i_* p H^0 i^* j_{!*} F_0$ is supported on $f^{-1}(v_0) \cap F_0$, and must be zero by (1.4.25).

$i^*(j_{!*} F_0)[-1] = j_{!*} (i^* F_0[-1])$ $\sim$ over a nonempty open subset of $A^1$, $j_*$ commutes with arbitrary base change (Th. finitude 1.9), so we may assume $i^* j_{!*} = j_* i^*$ after possibly shrinking $V_0$. Let $F_0$ be as above; then $j_{!*} F_0 = p \tau_{\leq -1} j_{!*} F_0$. Let $K_0 = j_{!*} F_0$. In order to conclude, it would suffice to show that $i^*(p \tau_{\leq -1} K_0)[-1] = p \tau_{\leq -1} i^* K_0[-1]$; i.e. that the triangle $(i^*(p \tau_{\leq -1} K_0)[-1], i^* K_0[-1], k^* \tau_{\geq 1} (i^* K_0[-1]))$ is distinguished, where $k$
is defined by the diagram

\[ F_0 \cap f^{-1}(v_0) \xleftarrow{k} f^{-1}(v_0) \xrightarrow{i} F_0 \xrightarrow{k} X_0. \]

In other words, setting \( L_0 := k^*K_0 \), we must show \( p^*\tau_{>1}i^*L_0[-1] \sim i^*(p^*\tau_{>1}L_0)[-1] \). As \( i^*[-1] \) has perverse amplitude in \([0, 1] \), we need only find an open locus of \( v_0 \) so that if \( \mathcal{L}_0 := p^*H^{-1}L_0, i^*\mathcal{L}_0[-1] \) is perverse (then the first and third terms of the distinguished triangle \( (i^*(p^*\tau_{\leq1}L_0)[-1], i^*L_0[-1], i^*(p^*\tau_{>1}L_0)[-1]) \) will belong to \( \mathcal{D}^{\leq1} \) and \( \mathcal{D}^{>1} \), respectively). As remarked above, this will be true if \( F_0 \cap f^{-1}(v_0) \) does not contain the support of any simple perverse quotient of \( \mathcal{L}_0 \), so shrinking \( V_0 \), we can make it true for every \( v_0 \in |V_0| \).

Let \( M_0 \) be any complex in \( D^b_c(X_0) \). For each closed point of \( A^1_0 \), we have distinguished triangles exchanged by duality involving the unipotent nearby and vanishing cycles

\[ \Psi_j^u(M_0) \xrightarrow{\text{can}} \Phi_j^u(M_0) \xrightarrow{i^*} i^!M_0 \xrightarrow{\text{can}} \]

\[ i^!M_0 \xrightarrow{\Phi_j^u(M_0) \xrightarrow{\text{var}} \Psi_j^u(M_0)(-1) \xrightarrow{\text{can}}}. \]

There is an nonempty open locus of \( A^1_0 \) over which \( f \) is locally acyclic rel. \( M_0 \) (Th. finitude 2.13). For each closed point of this open locus, therefore, we have \( \Phi_f(M_0) = 0 \) and an isomorphism \( i^*M_0[-2](1) \sim i^!M_0 \). Specializing \( M_0 \) to \( j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0 \), we have found that we can shrink our \( V_0 < A^1_0 \) to make

\[ i^*(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0)[-2](1) \xrightarrow{*} i^!(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0) \]

hold for all closed points in \( V_0 \).

Let’s see how the induction hypothesis combined with the above imply that \( j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0 \) is of weight \( \geq w \) on \( f^{-1}(V_0) \). By (5.1.9), it will suffice to show that for each closed point \( x_0 \) in \( f^{-1}(V_0) \), letting \( g \) denote its inclusion in \( f^{-1}(V_0) \), \( g^!(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0) \) is of weight \( \geq w \), and as \( x_0 \) lies in \( f^{-1}(f(x_0)) \), it will suffice to show that \( i^!(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0) \) is of weight \( \geq w \). For this it will suffice by (*) to show that \( i^*(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0) \) is of weight \( \geq w \); i.e. that \( i^*(j_0^!, \mathcal{F}_0)[-1] = j_0^!(i^!\mathcal{F}_0[-1]) \) is of weight \( \geq w - 1 \). Restricting \( i^! \mathcal{F}_0 \) to \( U_0 \) finds \( i^*\mathcal{F}_0[-1] \sim i^!\mathcal{F}_0[1](1) \) is of weight \( \geq w - 1 \); now use the induction hypothesis.
4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS

To finish, one uses the projection trick. By assumption $X_0$ is a closed subscheme of some $A^n_0$ and we have shown that for each of the $n$ projections to $A^n_0$, $j_i^*F_0$ is of weight $\geq w$ on $pr_i^{-1}(V_{0,i})$ for some nonempty open $V_{0,i} \subset A^n_0$. Then the same is true on $\bigcup_{i=1}^n pr_i^{-1}(V_{0,i})$, and it suffices to show that its complement $Q_0$ (in $A^n_0$, hence also in $X_0$) is finite. This is obvious as the residue field of any point of $A^n_0$ is generated by $x_1, \ldots, x_n$ and the image of each of these coordinate functions in the residue field of any point of $Q_0$ is algebraic over $F_q$, so every irreducible component of $Q_0$ has dimension 0.

5.3.5. We have as a consequence of (5.3.6) that $W_{i-1}F_0 = W_{i-1}F_0$ since the left hand side is indeed a subobject of $F_0$, has all simple subquotients of weight $\leq i - 1$, and we have the extension

$$0 \to W_iF_0/W_{i-1}W_iF_0 \to F_0/W_{i-1}W_iF_0 \to F_0/W_iF_0 \to 0$$

in which the outer terms are of weight $\geq i - 1$.

5.3.7. We can restrict the long exact sequence of cohomology by $j^*$ and the cokernel of the map $H^{-d}(F_0)|Y_0 \to H^{-d}(\mathcal{H}_0)|Y_0$ is a (constructible) subsheaf of $H^{-d+1}(\mathcal{H}_0)|Y_0$, where $\mathcal{H}_0 := \ker(F_0 \to \mathcal{G}_0)$. Let $i$ denote the inclusion of the generic point of $Y_0$: then $i^*$ of this cokernel is zero, since $H^{-d+1}i^*\mathcal{H}_0 = 0$ (2.2.12).

5.3.8. C.f. note to Weil II (3.4.5).

5.3.9. The analysis makes repeated use of (5.1.2), as it deduces sheaves on $X_0$ or $X_1$ from $F_0$ or $F_0^{\alpha}$-stable subsheaves of the perverse sheaf $\mathcal{F}$, which comes from a perverse sheaf on $X_0$. Recall the basics of $Fr_q$ from the note to (5.1.1); in particular $Fr_q^*$ and $Fr_{q^*}$ are t-exact and the morphisms of adjunction $Fr_q^*Fr_{q^*} \to id \to Fr_{q^*}Fr_q^*$ are isomorphisms.

If $\mathcal{F}_0$ is simple (but not a priori mixed – the distinction is irrelevant after L. Lafforgue’s work), then $\mathcal{F}$ is readily seen to be semisimple by following the proof of (5.3.8) to find the existence of a nonzero $\mathcal{F}_0' \subset \mathcal{F}_0$ so that $\mathcal{F}'$ is semisimple. As $\mathcal{F}_0$ is by assumption simple, $\mathcal{F}_0' = \mathcal{F}_0$. 
Therefore $\mathcal{F}_q$ acts on $A$, the set of isomorphism classes of simple constituents of $\mathcal{F}$, with inverse $\mathcal{F}_q$. So if $\mathcal{F}_q^* a = a'$, then $\mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F}_a \subset \mathcal{F}_a'$; applying $\mathcal{F}_q$, finds $\mathcal{F}_a \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F}_a \subset \mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F}_a' \subset \mathcal{F}_a$ so that actually $\mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F}_a = \mathcal{F}_a'$ and $\mathcal{F}_a = \mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F}_a'$.

$\mathcal{F}_{0C} \simeq \mathcal{F}_{1, a} \mapsto (\pi^*, \pi_*)$ are adjoint functors on perverse sheaves. By (5.1.2), the category of perverse sheaves $\mathcal{F}_0$ on $X_0$ embeds fully faithfully into the category of perverse sheaves on $X$ with an isomorphism $\mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$, and the functor $\pi^*$ corresponds to forgetting the isomorphism $\mathcal{F}_q \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ and remembering only the isomorphism $\mathcal{F}_q^d \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}$ induced by it. Continuing to use $\pi^*, \pi_*$ for the corresponding adjoint functors on the essential image, $\pi_* \mathcal{F}_{1, a} = \pi_*(\mathcal{F}_a, \mathcal{F}_q^d)$ corresponds to the perverse sheaf on $X$ stable under $\mathcal{F}_q^*$ with the property that given any perverse sheaf $\mathcal{G}$ on $X$ stable under $\mathcal{F}_q^*$ in the essential image, to give a $\mathcal{F}_q^*$-equivariant morphism $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \pi_*(\mathcal{F}_a, \mathcal{F}_q^d)$ is the same as giving a $\mathcal{F}_q^d$-equivariant morphism $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_a$.

Claim: to give a $\mathcal{F}_q^*$-equivariant morphism $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_C$ is the same as giving a $\mathcal{F}_q^d$-equivariant morphism $\mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_a$ for any perverse sheaf $(\mathcal{G}, \mathcal{F}_q^*)$ on $X$.

To see the claim, as $\mathcal{F}_C = \oplus \mathcal{F}_a'$ is a product of the $\mathcal{F}_a'$ $(a' \in A)$, to give a morphism $\alpha : \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_C$ is the same as giving morphisms $\alpha_{a'} : \mathcal{G} \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_a'$ for all $a' \in A$. The condition that $\alpha$ be $\mathcal{F}_q^*$-equivariant is that $\mathcal{F}_q^* \alpha_{a'} = \alpha_b$ for all $n$, where $b = \mathcal{F}_q^n (a')$; i.e.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_q^* \mathcal{G} & \mathcal{F}_q^* \mathcal{F}_a' & \subset \mathcal{F}_C \\
\mathcal{F}_q^* \mathcal{G} & \mathcal{F}_q^* \mathcal{F}_a' & \subset \mathcal{F}_C \\
\mathcal{G} & \mathcal{F}_b & \subset \mathcal{F}_C
\end{array}
$$

must commute for all $n$. This shows that such a $\mathcal{F}_q^*$-equivariant $\alpha$ is determined totally by $\alpha_a$, and that moreover, giving an $\mathcal{F}_q^*$-equivariant $\alpha$ is the same as giving an $\alpha_a$ with the property that $\mathcal{F}_q^d \alpha_a = \alpha_a$, i.e. that $\alpha_a$ is $\mathcal{F}_q^d$-equivariant. This proves the claim.

The claim combined with the adjunction give isomorphisms of functors

$$
\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{F}_q^*} (-, \mathcal{F}_C) \sim \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{F}_q^d} (-, \mathcal{F}_a) \sim \text{Hom}_{\mathcal{F}_q^*} (-, \pi_*(\mathcal{F}_a, \mathcal{F}_q^d))
$$
on the essential image of the functor given in (5.1.2). This shows $\mathcal{F}_C \cong \pi_*(\mathcal{F}_a, F^*_q)$ in this essential image and therefore $\mathcal{F}_C \cong \pi_*\mathcal{F}_1$.

Any endomorphism $G_a$ is null or an isomorphism, so $\text{End} G_a$ is a finite-dimensional division algebra over $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$. But any such coincides with $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$, so every automorphism of $G_a$ is of the form $\lambda \cdot \text{id}$ with $\lambda \in \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$. That every finite-dimensional division algebra $D$ over an algebraically closed field $F$ is trivial follows from the following elementary argument: given $a \in D$, the powers of $a$ are linearly dependent over $F$ and satisfy some monic polynomial $f(x) \in F[x]$ of least degree. As $F$ is algebraically closed, $f(x) = (x-\lambda)g(x)$ for some $\lambda \in F$; by minimality of $f$, $g(a) \neq 0$, so $a = \lambda \in F$ and $D = F$.

$\text{ev} : G_a \otimes V_a \to \mathcal{F}_a$ est $F^*_q$-equivariant we must check that $F^*_q \text{ev} = \text{ev}$. In this paragraph we write $F$ and $Fr$ for $F^*_q, Fr^q$, respectively. $F^* \text{ev}$ is defined by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
Fr^* G_a \otimes Fr^* V_a & \xrightarrow{F^* \text{ev}} & Fr^* \mathcal{F}_a \\
\phi \otimes Fr^* & \downarrow \iota & F^* \downarrow \iota \\
G_a \otimes V_a & \xrightarrow{F^* \text{ev}} & \mathcal{F}_a
\end{array} \quad (\ast)$$

$F^* : Fr^*_q V_a \to V_a$ sends $Fr^* f \in \text{Hom}(Fr^* G_a, Fr^* \mathcal{F}_a)$ to the morphism $F^* f$ defined by

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
Fr^* G_a & \xrightarrow{F^* f} & Fr^* \mathcal{F}_a \\
\phi \downarrow \iota & & F^* \downarrow \iota \\
G_a & \xrightarrow{F^* f} & \mathcal{F}_a.
\end{array} \quad (\dagger)$$

It is an isomorphism with inverse obtained by replacing upper stars by lower stars and reversing the direction of the vertical arrows. The assignment $f \mapsto F^* f$ is an automorphism of $\text{Hom}(G_a, \mathcal{F}_a)$ also denoted by $F^*$. It is an automorphism since $Fr^*$ is fully faithful and $F^* : \text{Hom}(Fr^* G_a, Fr^* \mathcal{F}_a) \to \text{Hom}(G_a, \mathcal{F}_a)$ is an isomorphism. (This defines the action $\text{ev} \mapsto F^* \text{ev}$ coming from the analogous automorphism of $\text{Hom}(G_a \otimes V_a, \mathcal{F}_a)$.)
The morphism \( \text{ev} : G_a \otimes \text{Hom}(G_a, F_a) \to F_a \) is evaluation. The commutativity of the diagram \( \text{(1)} \) with \( \text{ev} \) in place of \( F^* \), \( \text{ev} \) results from the fact that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Fr}^* G_a & \text{Fr}^* f & \text{Fr}^* F_a \\
\downarrow \phi & \downarrow \phi & \downarrow \phi \\
\text{Fr}^* G_a & \text{Fr}^* F_a & \phi
\end{array}
\]

commutes with the dashed arrow the identity.

‘\((V_a, F^* q^d)\) est indécomposable’ \( \Leftrightarrow \) a \( F^* q^d \)-equivariant decomposition of \( V_a \), would, via \( G_a \otimes V_a \twoheadrightarrow F_a \), give rise to a \( F^* q^d \)-equivariant decomposition of \( F_a \), hence a decomposition of \( F_{1a} \), hence a decomposition of \( F_0 = F_{0C} = \pi_* F_{1a} \).

‘on peut supposer \( F^* q^d \) sur \( V_a \) unipotent’ \( \Leftrightarrow \) as \( F^* q^d \) acts on \( V_a \) with only one Jordan block, there is an \( f \in V_a \) so that \( F^* q^d f = \lambda f \) for some \( \lambda \in \overline{Q}_l \). As \( \dim \text{Hom}(\text{Fr}^* q^d G_a, G_a) = 1 \), replacing \( \phi \) by \( \lambda \phi \), one sees via the diagram \( \text{(2)} \) that \( F^* q^d f = f \), and therefore \( F^* q^d \) acts unipotently on \( V_a \). Moreover \( f \) identifies \( (G_a, \phi) \) as a subobject of \( (F_a, F^* q^d) \) and if \( (e_i)_{1 \leq i \leq n} \) is a base for \( V_a \) \( (n = \dim V_a) \), putting \( V_a \) in Jordan normal form for the action of \( F^* q^d \), (with the notation as in the top of the page) then \( e_n \) is the sole eigenvector and \( e_n = f \). In this base (and with this \( \phi \)), the action of \( F^* q^d \) on \( V_a \) looks like

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\
& \ddots & & & \vdots & \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 1
\end{pmatrix}
\]

and we have \( F^* q^n \)-equivariant isomorphisms \( G_a \otimes E_n = G_a \otimes V_a \twoheadrightarrow F_a \) descending to an isomorphism \( G_1 \otimes E_n \twoheadrightarrow F_{1a} \).

‘l’image inverse sur \( \text{Spec}(F_q^d) \) de \( E_n \) est isomorphe au faisceau analogue sur \( \text{Spec}(F_q^d) \)’ \( \Leftrightarrow \) this observation is equivalent to the observation that if \( M \) denotes the unipotent Jordan block matrix of dimension \( n \) (written explicitly in \( \text{(3)} \) above), then
\[ M^d \] and \( M \) are similar matrices. This fact remains true over any field, provided the characteristic does not divide \( d \). To see why, write \( M = I + N \) with \( N \) nilpotent; then \( M^d = I + dN + \ldots + d^N d^{-1} + N^d \) is again unipotent, so all eigenvalues of \( M^d \) are 1 and \( M^d \) can be put in Jordan normal form. Provided \( d \neq 0 \), \( \dim \ker(M^d - I) = 1 \): \( e_n \) is in the kernel, and \( e_2, \ldots, e_n \) are in the image of \( M^d - I \), since \( Ne_{n-1} = e_n, N^i e_{n-1} = 0 \) for \( i > 1 \), and \( (M^d - I)e_{n-j} = de_{n-j+1} \mod \text{span}(e_{n-j+2}, \ldots, e_n) \) for \( j > 0 \). In conclusion, \( M^d \) can be put in Jordan normal form with only one Jordan block corresponding to the eigenvalue 1, and is therefore similar to \( M \).

\[ '\pi(\mathcal{G}_1 \otimes E_n) \cong \pi(\mathcal{G}_1) \otimes E_n' \rightarrow [\text{SGAA}, \text{XVII} 5.2.9] \text{ la 'formule des projections.'} \]

\[ '\pi(\mathcal{G}_1) \text{ est simple}' \rightarrow \text{clearly } \mathcal{G}_1 \text{ is simple because } \mathcal{G}_a \text{ is simple, and (5.1.2) tells that subobjects of } \mathcal{G}_1 \text{ correspond to } \phi \text{-invariant subobjects of } \mathcal{G}_a. \text{ Moreover, } \phi \text{ has been chosen so that } (\mathcal{G}_a, \phi) \text{ is isomorphic to a subobject of } (\mathcal{F}_a, F^{q^a}_q), \text{ i.e. } \mathcal{G}_1 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{F}_{1a}, \text{ so } \pi_* \mathcal{G}_1 \hookrightarrow \pi_* \mathcal{F}_{1a} = \mathcal{F}_{0C} \text{ and the diagram} \]

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{Hom}_\phi(-, \mathcal{G}_a) & \rightarrow & \text{Hom}_{F^q}(\mathcal{F}_a, \mathcal{G}_a) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Hom}_{F^{q^a}}(-, \mathcal{F}_a) & \rightarrow & \text{Hom}_{F^q}(\mathcal{F}_C)
\end{array}
\]

commutes, since if \( u : (\mathcal{G}_a, \phi) \hookrightarrow (\mathcal{F}_a, F^{q^a}_q) \) and \( f \in \text{Hom}_\phi(-, \mathcal{G}_a) \), tracing the diagram down right gives \( \pi_*(u \circ f) \circ \eta \) while tracing it right down gives \( \pi_*(u) \circ (\pi_* (f) \circ \eta) \), where \( \eta \) is the counit of the adjunction. We have seen that the lower horizontal isomorphism is obtained by taking \( F^{q^a}_q \)-conjugates of the \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant morphism to \( \mathcal{F}_a \). The commutativity of the diagram implies that the resulting \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant morphism to \( \mathcal{F}_C \) lands in \( \pi_*(\mathcal{G}_a, \phi) \) if the original \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant morphism to \( \mathcal{F}_a \) lands in \( \mathcal{G}_a \) (\( F^{q^a}_q \) on \( \mathcal{F}_a \) induces \( \phi \) on \( \mathcal{G}_a \)). Moreover, the \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant map to \( \mathcal{F}_C \) is a monomorphism iff the \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant map to \( \mathcal{F}_a \) is, as \( F^{q^a}_q \) is exact for all \( n \) so all the \( F^{q^a}_q \)-conjugates of a monomorphism are monomorphisms. We conclude that a \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant monomorphism to \( \pi_*(\mathcal{G}_a, \phi) \) is uniquely determined by a \( F^{q^a}_q \)-equivariant monomorphism to \( \mathcal{G}_a \). As \( \mathcal{G}_a \) is simple, any such must be null or an isomorphism, in which case the \( F^{q^a}_q \)-conjugates will be null or isomorphisms, respectively. Therefore \( \pi_*(\mathcal{G}_a, \phi) \), i.e. \( \pi_* \mathcal{G}_1 \), is simple.
(ii) As \( \dim V_a = 1 \) in this case, \( G_1 \cong \mathcal{F}_{1a} \); we have seen that \( G \) is simple and corresponds to \((G_a, \phi)\) on \( X \), where \( G_a \) is simple. The isomorphism classes of the \( F^*_q \)-conjugates of \( G_a \) (which are in this case the conjugates of \( \mathcal{F}_a \)) are determined by the \( F^*_q \)-orbit \( \mathcal{A} \) of \( a \); as \( d \) is the least integer with the property that \( F^*_q \) stabilizes \( \mathcal{F}_a = G_a \), we have \( F^*_q G_a \cong F^*_q G_a \) iff \( i \equiv j \mod d \).

**5.3.10.** The place we used that \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \) is algebraically closed in the argument in (5.3.9) and its note is when we concluded that \( \text{End} G_a \) is 1-dimensional since it is a finite-dimensional division algebra over \( \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell \).

**5.3.11.** These \( \text{Hom} \)s are null by (1.4.25).

‘Chacun d’eux est de l’une des formes \( j^*, G' \) ou \( i^*, \mathcal{G}' \)’ \( \sim \) (1.4.26).

Indeed \( p^{-1} j^* = 0 = p^* i^* \) by (1.4.24) and of course \( j^* i^* = 0 \).

The list of compatibilities to verify is short (0103) and immediate on \( X \) from the above.

**5.4.1.** ‘il existe un ouvert dense \( U_0 \)’ \( \sim \) (2.2.12).

**5.4.5.** Rappelons que \( \text{Ext}^1 = \text{Hom}^1_D \) by (3.1.17) (ii). Since \( p^{\tau_{\leq i}} K_0 \) is a successive extension of \( (\mathcal{P} H/K_0)[-j] \) for \( j \leq i \), and these are pure of the same weight as \( K_0 \) by (5.4.4), \( p^{\tau_{\leq i}} K_0 \) is pure of the same weight for any \( i \).

**5.4.7.** To see

\[
\mathcal{H}^i(j^* \mathcal{L}[d]) = \begin{cases} 
\mathcal{L} & i = -d, \\
0 & i < -d,
\end{cases}
\]

take the long exact sequence of ordinary \((p = 0)\) cohomology associated to the distinguished triangle \((j^* \mathcal{L}[d]), j^*(\mathcal{L}[d]), i^* p^{\tau_{\geq i}} j^*(\mathcal{L}[d]))\) of (1.4.23), where \( i : X \rightarrow U \hookrightarrow X \). Well actually one could replace \( X \) by \( \overline{U} \) and the point is that as \( \dim \overline{U} - U < \dim U \), \( \mathcal{H}^i(p^{\tau_{\geq i}} j^*(\mathcal{L}[d])) = 0 \) for \( i \leq -d \) (2.1.2.1).
To see $H^{-d}(X, j_!\mathcal{L} [d]) = H^0(X, ^o j_!\mathcal{L})$, use

$$E^{p q}_i = H^q(X, \mathcal{H}^p (j_!\mathcal{L} [d]) \Rightarrow H^{p + q}(X, j_!\mathcal{L} [d]).$$

Since $j_!\mathcal{L} [d]$ is a perverse sheaf on $\overline{U}$ of dimension $d$, $E^{p q}_i = 0$ for $p < -d$, and we’ve seen above that $\mathcal{H}^{-d} (j_!\mathcal{L} [d]) = ^o j_!\mathcal{L}$.

5.4.8. As $f : X_x \to X$ is flat, by going down the generic point $\eta$ of each irreducible component of $X_x$ is sent to the generic point $\xi$ of an irreducible component of $X$. With $K = j_! (\mathcal{L} [d]) [n]$, this shows that

$$H^i(K)_\eta = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if no such } \xi \text{ is in } U \text{ or if } i \neq -d - n, \\ (\mathcal{L}_\eta = \mathcal{L}_\xi) & \text{if such a } \xi \in U \text{ and } i = -d - n. \end{cases}$$

At most one such $\xi$ can be in $U$.

Claim: at most one $\eta$ can belong to $U'_x$.

Let’s assume the claim. By the note to (5.4.7)

$$H^{-d-n}(X_x, K) = H^0(X_x, ^o j_!\mathcal{L}) = \prod H^0(U'_x, \mathcal{L}),$$

the product taken over the various connected components $U'_x$ of $X_x$. As the various connected components $U'_x$ are disjoint, and at most one $\eta$ belongs to each, one is indeed reduced to showing

$$H^0(U'_x, \mathcal{L}) \to (\mathcal{L}_\eta)^{\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)}$$

if $\eta \in U'_x$.

The claim follows from the fact that the irreducible components and connected components of $U_x$ coincide, since if $U'_x$ is irreducible and $\eta \in U'_x$, $\eta$ is automatically the generic point of $U'_x$. To see that the irreducible and connected components of $U_x$ coincide, as $f : U_x \to U$ is flat, the generic points of irreducible components of the former map to the generic point $\zeta$ of the latter, so we see they are in bijection with the finitely many points of $f^{-1}(\zeta)$ (07QQ). Assume $X = \text{Spec } A$, then with $X_x = \text{Spec } C$, the ideals of $C$ corresponding to the finitely many points of $f^{-1}(\zeta)$ are each finitely generated, so there exists some étale neighborhood $g : \text{Spec } B = X' \to X$ of $x$ so that the
image of \( B \) in \( C \) contains all the generators of the prime ideals of \( C \) corresponding to the points of \( f^{-1}(\zeta) \), and therefore the map \( X_\eta \to X' \) sends the fiber \( f^{-1}(\zeta) \) injectively into \( g^{-1}(\zeta) \). As \( g^{-1}(U) \) is smooth and \( g \) is flat, the points of \( g^{-1}(\zeta) \) are in bijection with the irreducible components of \( g^{-1}(U) \), which are the same as the connected components of \( g^{-1}(U) \). We’re done, because this gives a partition of \( U_\eta = f^{-1}(U) \) into a disjoint union of subschemes \( \sqcup U_\eta' \) so that each \( U_\eta' \) contains precisely one point of \( f^{-1}(\zeta) \), hence is irreducible.

5.4.9. (a) As the \( H^i f_! L_\xi \) are lisse on \( U \), the stalks \( H^i (Y_\xi, L) \) are all the same for various geometric points \( x \) of \( U \). Looking at (5.4.7), we indeed have \( H^i (Y, L) \) on the left, and we are reduced to showing for \( K \) of the form \( (j_* \mathcal{L} [d]) [n] \) with \( j \) the immersion of a smooth connected open locus \( V \) in an irreducible component of \( X \) of dimension \( d \) with generic point \( \eta \), \( \mathcal{L} \) lisse on \( V \), and \( U \subset X \) open with the property that the \( H^i K \) are lisse on \( U \), that \( (H^i K)_{\pi^i (U, x)} = (H^i K)_{\eta}^{\text{Gal}(\eta/\eta)} \), as \( f_! L \) is a direct sum of such \( K \). As the note to (5.4.7) shows that \( H^i K = \circ j_* \mathcal{L} \) when \( i = -d - n \) and vanishes on \( V \) in other degrees, the condition that the \( H^i K \) are lisse on \( U \) means that either they are all zero, or \( K|U \) is acyclic off degree \(-d - n \), \( \eta \in U \) and \( \circ j_* \mathcal{L} \) is lisse on \( U \). Then indeed

\[
(H^{-d-n} K)_{\pi^i (U, x)} = H^0 (U, \circ j_* \mathcal{L}) = H^0 (V, \mathcal{L}) = L_{\eta}^{\text{Gal}(\eta/\eta)} = (H^{-d-n} K)_{\eta}^{\text{Gal}(\eta/\eta)}.
\]

(b) Suppose \( \bar{x} \) is centered on \( \eta \), a generic point of an irreducible component of \( X_{(x)} \). Then the local monodromy is \( \text{Gal}(\bar{x}/\eta) \) acting on \( (H^r f_! L)_{\bar{x}} = H^r (Y_{\bar{x}}, L) \) and the statement is a literal translation of (5.4.8).

**Intermezzo: SGA 5 Exposé VII.** In this intermezzo and in this intermezzo only, we write the \( R \) when writing a right-derived functor, so \( ?_* \) means \( R^0 ?_* \), etc.

See also the notes to this exposé.

**Cup-products.** There are several notions of cup-product, each with its own merits, and we discuss three below.

First and most direct is the method of \( \theta \text{B68} \). Let \( f : X \to Y \) be a morphism of schemes and \( K, L \) in \( D(X, \mathcal{O}_X) \). Using the results of Spaltenstein and Serpé, we can dispense once and for all with considerations of cohomological dimension or
tor-dimension when discussing the definition of derived functors $\mathcal{R}f_*$ and $\otimes^L$ in étale cohomology and define a map (called cup-product)

$$\mathcal{R}f_*(K) \otimes^L \mathcal{R}f_*(L) \to \mathcal{R}f_*(K \otimes^L L)$$

(†)

by adjunction from the map $f^*(\mathcal{R}f_*(K) \otimes^L \mathcal{R}f_*(L)) \to K \otimes^L L$ obtained by compositing the isomorphism $f^*(\mathcal{R}f_*(K) \otimes^L \mathcal{R}f_*(L)) = f^*\mathcal{R}f_*(K) \otimes^L f^*\mathcal{R}f_*(L)$ with the counits of adjunction. The second method follows [SGA5, VII 2.1.1] and is more explicit: one proceeds in the style of Godement to define an explicit morphism of resolutions which, precomposed with a K-flat resolution, gives the above arrow.

To define the cup-product in $\ell$-adic cohomology, consideration must be given to questions of finiteness, and so one should ask that $X$ and $Y$ be of finite type over a regular scheme of dimension $\leq 1$ so that $\mathcal{R}f_*$ is of finite cohomological dimension and the six functors preserve the property of being of finite tor-dimension. Then one should ask that $K, L$ be in $D^b_{ctf}(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ and proceed similarly.

The cup-product induces maps

$$\mathcal{R}^a f_*(K) \otimes \mathcal{R}^b f_*(L) \to H^{a+b}(\mathcal{R}f_*(K) \otimes^L \mathcal{R}f_*(L)) \to \mathcal{R}^{a+b} f_*(K \otimes^L L),$$

where the first map is obtained by replacing $\mathcal{R}f_*K$ or $\mathcal{R}f_*L$ by a K-flat resolution and then using the general recipe that bilinearly associates to elements $x \in H^aK, y \in H^bL$ an element of $H^{a+b}(K \otimes L)$. This recipe represents $x$ and $y$ by cycles so that $x \otimes y$ is a cycle in the total complex $K \otimes L$ of the double complex; the class of $x \otimes y$ is independent of the choice of representatives and the association is clearly bilinear (068G).

It is possible to interpret the cup product with the fundamental class of a divisor $Y$ (or more general kinds of closed loci such as locally complete intersections) in a variety $X$ as a composition of morphism of restriction followed by Gysin morphism (as alluded to in [SGA5, VII §4]). To do so it is useful to review the definition of cup-product as it appears in [SGA4_2, Cycle 1.2] (the third and final definition of cup-product we will use). Let $i : Y \hookrightarrow X$ be the inclusion; we will suppose for simplicity that $Y$ is a (Cartier) divisor since the case we are concerned with is the inclusion of a hyperplane in projective space.
As defined in \[\text{[SGA4}_2\text{]}, \text{Cycle 2.1}\], \(Y\) determines a class in \(H^2_Y(X, \mu)\). Here \(R\Gamma_Y = R\Gamma \circ Ri^!\) is endowed with the natural ‘forget supports’ map given by the counit \(i_* Ri^! \to \text{id}\). Forgetting supports of the class in \(H^2_Y(X, \mu)\) gives the Chern class in \(H^2(X, \mu)\) as defined in \[\text{[SGA5], VII 2.2}\].

The cup-product as defined in \[\text{[SGA4}_2\text{]}, \text{Cycle 1.2}\] is the map, for \(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}\) abelian sheaves on \(X\),

\[
\Gamma_Y(X, \mathcal{F}) \otimes \Gamma(Y, \mathcal{G}) \to \Gamma_Y(X, \mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{G})
\]

which to a section \(s\) of \(\mathcal{F}\) supported on \(Y\) and a section \(t\) of \(\mathcal{G}\) over \(Y\) applies the following recipe: represent \(t\) by any section \(t'\) over \(X\) and tensor with \(s\) to produce \(s \otimes t'\); as \(s\) is supported on \(Y\), the result doesn’t depend on the choice of \(t'\) and is also supported on \(Y\). This prescription derives to give an arrow

\[
R\Gamma_Y(X, K) \otimes^L R\Gamma(Y, L) \to R\Gamma_Y(X, K \otimes^L L)
\]

for complexes \(K\) and \(L\).

The advantage of this definition of cup-product is that it is more precise: the cup-product with the fundamental class of \(Y\) as defined previously factors through this map.

Let \(\xi\) denote the fundamental class of \(Y\) in \(H^2_Y(X, \mu)\) (or in \(H^2(X, \mu)\)) and \(L\) be in \(D(X)\).

The diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
H^i(X, L) & \xrightarrow{\xi_U} & H^{i+2}(X, L)(1) \\
\downarrow & & \uparrow\text{forget} \\
H^i(Y, L) & \xrightarrow{\xi_U} & H^{i+2}(X, L)(1)
\end{array}
\]

commutes, where the upper cup product is the map \((\text{1})\) while the lower one is \((\text{3})\).

The local version goes like this: \(\xi\) corresponds to a map \(\mathcal{A}_Y \to Ri^!(\mu)[2]\) in \(D(Y)\), which via adjunction and the counit \(i_* i^! \to \text{id}\) gives a map \(\mathcal{A}_X \to i_* Ri^!(\mu)[2] \to \mu[2]\) which is the map we encounter in \[\text{[SGA5], VII 2.2}\] and its note. Given any \(K\) in \(D(X)\),
the cup-product on cohomology above is obtained by applying $R\Gamma$ to the maps

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
K = K \otimes^L A_X & \xrightarrow{\xi} & K[2](1) \\
\downarrow & & & & \uparrow \\
i_*(i^*K \otimes^L A_Y) & \xrightarrow{\xi} & i_*(i^*K \otimes^L R^i(\mu)[2]) & \longrightarrow & i_*R^i(K(1)[2]),
\end{array}
\tag{\ast}
$$

where the vertical arrows are units or counits. Here the map

$$i^*(\mathcal{F}) \otimes i^1(\mathcal{G}) \to i^1(\mathcal{F} \otimes \mathcal{G})$$

is the local version of (\text{[\ref{4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS} 2.8]}), which derives to give

$$i^*(K) \otimes^L R^i(L) \to R^i(K \otimes^L L),$$

whence (\text{[\ref{4. FAISCEAUX PERVERS} 6.5]}) by application of $R\Gamma$. This arrow is obtained by adjunction from the arrow

$$i_*(i^*(K) \otimes^L R^i(L)) = K \otimes^L i_*R^i(L) \to K \otimes^L L.$$
In light of the above, which shows $R_Y p_* = f_* \beta^1$, the correct reference for the isomorphism

$$R^2_Y p_*(p^* \mathcal{L}) \sim \mathcal{L} \otimes \mu^{\otimes -r}_S$$

is [SGAA XVI 3.8].

(ii) a) The bizarre notation $i \neq (1, 2r)$ means ‘$i$ is not equal to 1 or 2r.’

c) Evidently the trace morphism is $R^2_Y q(q^* \mathcal{L}) \rightarrow \mathcal{L} \otimes \mu^{\otimes -r}_S$. Let’s see that it is an isomorphism. As $q$ is lisse with geometrically connected fibers, by [SGAA XV 1.16] it is 0-acyclic, so that the unit of adjunction $id \rightarrow q^* q$ is a natural isomorphism, which implies that $q^*$ is fully faithful, since for sheaves $\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}$ one has

$$\text{Hom}(q^* \mathcal{F}, q^* \mathcal{G}) = \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, q^* q \mathcal{G}) = \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}).$$

Now to see that $Rq!(q^* \mathcal{L}) = \mathcal{L} [-2r] (-r)$, as $Rq^! K = q^* K [2r] (r)$, just write

$$\text{Hom}(\mathcal{L} [-2r] (-r), K) = \text{Hom}(q^* \mathcal{L} [-2r] (-r), q^* K) = \text{Hom}(q^* \mathcal{L}, q^* K [2r] (r))$$

$$= \text{Hom}(q^* \mathcal{L}, Rq^! K) = \text{Hom}(Rq!, q^* \mathcal{L}, K).$$

2.1. The morphism of Godement resolutions

$$C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X) \otimes C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X) \rightarrow C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X \otimes \mathcal{A}_X)$$

is defined in Godement §6.6 using his (4.3.2), which describes sections of $C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X)$ in terms of functions similar to Alexander-Spanier cochains. This gives a morphism

$$f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X) \otimes f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X) \rightarrow f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X \otimes \mathcal{A}_X)$$

and as $f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X)$ computes $Rf_* \mathcal{A}_X$, by taking a K-flat resolution $K \rightarrow f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X)$ of Spaltenstein (06Y7), $K \otimes f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X)$ computes $Rf_* \mathcal{A}_X \otimes^L Rf_* \mathcal{A}_X$ with a morphism to $f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X) \otimes f_* C'(X, \mathcal{A}_X)$. When $Rf_* \mathcal{A}_X$ is in $D^{-}(Y)$, you don’t need Spaltenstein and can use a usual bounded-above flat resolution. (I have no clue how Jouanolou intended to define this arrow without finiteness hypotheses on $f$ in ’77.)
2.2. ‘La classe $\xi$ s’identifie à une flèche $\mathcal{A}_P \to \mu_P[2]$’ $\Leftrightarrow$ $\xi$ is an element of

$$H^2(P, \mu_P) = \text{Ext}^2(\mathcal{A}_P, \mu_P) = \text{Hom}_{D(P)}(\mathcal{A}_P, \mu_P[2])$$

$$= \text{Hom}_{D(P)}((\mu_P[2]) \otimes^L (\mu_P^{-1}[-2]), \mu_P[2])$$

$$= \text{Hom}_{D(P)}(\mu_P^{-1}[-2], \mathcal{R}\mathcal{H}om(\mu_P[2], \mu_P[2]))$$

$$= \text{Hom}_{D(P)}(p^*\mu^{-1}_S[-2], \mathcal{A}_P) = \text{Hom}_{D(S)}(\mu^{-1}_S[-2], Rp_*\mathcal{A}_P)$$

coinciding with $\eta$ on the cohomology of dimension 0, not 2.

2.2.2. b) Of course the map has target $\otimes_i R^{2r} p_*(\mu^{\otimes i}_P)$. The cup-product map is the one discussed at the beginning of this intermède.

In the proof, it suffices to show that $\xi^r$ generates all of $H^{2r}(P, \mu^{\otimes i}_P)$ to conclude that $\xi^i$ does for $i < r$ since the cup-product is $A$-bilinear.

c) ‘en d’autres termes, on a $\text{Tr}(\eta^i) = 1$’ $\Leftrightarrow$ $\xi : \mathcal{A}_P \to \mu_P[2]$ in $D(P)$ gives $\mathcal{A}_S \to Rp_* (\mu_P[2])$ in $D(S)$ hence by tensorization and cup product a map $\mathcal{A}_S \to (Rp_*(\mu_P[2]))^{\otimes r} \to Rp_* (\mu^{\otimes r}_P[2r])$ inducing $\eta^r : \mathcal{A}_S \to R^{2r} p_*(\mu^{\otimes r}_P)$ on $H^0$.

The stability of $\text{Tr}$ under base change is [SGAA XVIII 2.9].

How to see (c)? Here is one way:

1) Show that the cup product on $P^0_k$ induces the cup product on $P^{n-1}_k$.
2) As Poincaré duality gives a perfect pairing $(x, y) \mapsto \text{Tr}(x \cup y)$, induction on $n$ reduces to the case $n = 1$.
3) When $n = 1$, the Chern class map can be identified with $\text{deg} : \text{Pic } P^1_k \sim \mathbb{Z}$.

[1] is formal and tautological since the cup-product is obtained from adjunction from the map $f^*Rf_*(K) \otimes^L f^*Rf_*(L) \to K \otimes^L L$ obtained from the counits of adjunction, which are natural. Let $i : P^{n-1}_k \hookrightarrow P^n_k$ denote the imbedding at infinity; then the units of adjunction $K \to i_* i^* K$ and $L \to i_* i^* L$ give a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
  f^*Rf_*(K) \otimes^L f^*Rf_*(L) & \longrightarrow & K \otimes^L L \\
  \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
  f^*Rf_*(i_* i^* K) \otimes^L f^*Rf_*(i_* i^* L) & \longrightarrow & i_* i^* K \otimes^L i_* i^* L \sim i_* i^*(K \otimes^L L).
\end{array}$$
is obtained by assuming \( n > 1, i > 0 \), and that \( \xi \) and \( \xi^{n-i} \) are free elements of the \( \mathbb{A} \)-modules \( H^2(P^n_k, \mu) \) and \( H^2(n-i)(P^n_k, \mu^{\otimes (n-i)}) \), respectively. As \( \text{Tr}(- \cup -) \) induces a perfect pairing
\[
H^2(P^n_{k}, \mu) \times H^2(n-i)(P^n_{k}, \mu^{\otimes (n-i)}) \to H^2(n-i+1)(P^n_{k}, \mu^{\otimes (n-i+1)}) \cong \mathbb{A}
\]
and the cup product on \( P^n_{k} \) induces the one on \( P^n_{k} \) by (1), \( \xi \cup \xi^{n-i} = \xi^{n-i+1} \) is a free element of the \( \mathbb{A} \)-module \( H^2(n-i+1)(P^n_{k}, \mu^{\otimes (n-i+1)}) \cong H^2(n-i+1)(P^n_{k}, \mu^{\otimes (n-i+1)}) \).

Last, recall that on a smooth projective curve \( X \) over a separably closed field, one has
\[
H^2(X, \mu) = \text{Pic}(X)/\nu \text{Pic}(X) \xrightarrow{\text{deg}} \mathbb{A}
\]
coming from the Kummer exact sequence, and under this identification the the Chern class map is identified with the degree map. This shows (3).

5.4.10. The references for the definitions of the Chern class (it is the obvious one coming from the Kummer exact sequence), the cup product and Gysin morphism is \[ \text{(4.1)} \] Cycle] \& \[ \text{SGA5 VII}. \]

As mentioned above in the note to SGA 5 VII 2.2 \( \ell \in H^2(X_0, \mathbb{Q}_\ell(1)) \) corresponds to an element of \( \text{Hom}_{D(X_0)}(\mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell[2](1)) \) and by tensorization a morphism \( K_0 \to K_0[2](1) \) for any \( K_0 \) in \( D^b(X_0, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell) \).

The restriction of our relatively ample invertible sheaf on \( X_0/Y_0 \) over \( f^{-1}(U_0) \) for \( U_0 \subset Y_0 \) corresponds to the restriction of the cohomology class \( H^2(X_0, \mathbb{Q}_\ell(1)) \to H^2(U_0, \mathbb{Q}_\ell(1)) \): if \( j : f^{-1}(U_0) \hookrightarrow X_0, j_! \mathbb{Q}_\ell \to \mathbb{Q}_\ell \) induces a map
\[
\text{Hom}_{D(X_0)}(\mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell[2](1)) \to \text{Hom}_{D(X_0)}(j_! \mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell[2](1)) = \text{Hom}_{D(U_0)}(\mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell[2](1)).
\]
This shows that the map \( \ell^n \) commutes with restriction and the problem is local. Since on each affine open of \( Y_0 \) some power of our relatively ample invertible sheaf on \( X_0/Y_0 \) is very ample (\#2NP), we may assume our invertible sheaf is the reciprocal image of \( \theta(1) \) along a closed immersion \( X_0 \hookrightarrow P^d_0 \times Y_0 \).

To define the universal family of hyperplane sections parametrized by \( Y_0 \), consider \( X_0 \) as a closed locus in \( P^d_0 \times Y_0 \) and let \( p : P^d_0 \times Y_0 \to P^d_0 \) denote the projection. Then
$H_0$ is defined as a closed locus in $X'_0$ by the condition that $(a,x)$ is in $H_0$ if $a(p(x)) = 0$; i.e. by the condition that $p(x)$ lie in the hyperplane defined by $a$.

5.4.11. The last part of (iii) is true if $pH^{d-1}f_\ast u^\ast K \simeq u^\ast(pH^{-d}u_\ast pH^{d-1}h_\ast(\nu)^\ast K)[d]$ by (4.2.6.2). As $u^\ast[d]$ is fully faithful (4.2.5), the unit $id \to pH^{-d}u_\ast(u^\ast[d])$ is a natural isomorphism. By (i) we can write

$$u^\ast(pH^{-d}u_\ast pH^{d-1}f_\ast u^\ast K)[d] \simeq u^\ast(pH^{-d}u_\ast u^\ast(pH^{-1}f_\ast K)[d])[d] \simeq u^\ast(pH^{-1}f_\ast K)[d] \simeq pH^{d-1}f_\ast u^\ast K.$$

Therefore (5.4.11.1) does suffice to show the second part of (iii).

5.4.12. $\rightsquigarrow$ [SGA5] VII 2.2.1.

5.4.13. To see that $H_0$ is indeed a projective sub-bundle of $X'_0$ over $X_0$, we see easily that the fibers are indeed hyperplanes in $\mathbf{P}^d_0$: given $x \in [X]$, the locus $(\nu u)^{-1}(x) \subset H_0$ is described inside of $\mathbf{P}^d$ by the condition that a given hyperplane contain $x$. Moreover this condition trivializes over the open locus $U_j \subset X_0$ given by points $x$ with $p(x)$ missing the $j$th coordinate hyperplane by projection from the point $a \in \mathbf{P}^d$ with a 1 in the $j$th coordinate and 0 elsewhere. In more words, given $x \in [U_j]$, $p(x)$ is not contained in the hyperplane $a$. The hyperplanes containing $p(x)$ form a hyperplane $L_x \subset \mathbf{P}^d$ not containing $a$. Let $L \subset \mathbf{P}^d$ denote the hyperplane given by the vanishing of the $j$th coordinate in $\mathbf{P}^d$. Then projection from $a$ sends $L_x$ isomorphically onto $L$ and trivializes $H_0$ over $U_j$.

5.4.14. It is easy to see that the morphism of restriction dualizes to give the Gysin morphism, but to see that the composition gives the $u^\ast[d]$ of the map $\ell$ is trickier. The $u^\ast[d]$, $pH^j$, $f_i$ is all junk and (with $\mathcal{G} = u^\ast\mathcal{F}[d]$) what we are really looking at are maps

$$\mathcal{G} \to v_\ast v^\ast \mathcal{G} \iff v_\ast v^\ast \mathcal{G} \to \mathcal{G}[2](1).$$

The key point is that with $Y$ a hyperplane in $X = \mathbf{P}^n_k$ and $K$ constant on $X$, the isomorphism of purity $i^\ast K \simeq i^! K(1)[2]$ is obtained via the composition of the lower horizontal maps of (4). One may replace $K$ by $\mathcal{M}_X$, in which case this composition corresponds to the
cup-product with the fundamental class of \([\text{SGA}^4_1, \text{Cycle}]\), and \([\text{SGA}^4_2, \text{Cycle} 2.1.4]\) gives that indeed the class of \(Y\) (i.e. \(\xi\)) generates \(R^2\mu\). In other words, one could say that the isomorphism of purity in this situation is induced by cup-product with the fundamental class of the hyperplane.

In the situation of the universal family of hyperplane sections of \(X_0\), the point is that the fiber over any geometric point \(x \in X\) of \(H_0 \subset X_0\) is just the inclusion of a hyperplane in \(\mathbf{P}^d_x\), and the previous discussion applies.

**Appendix A: t-exactness of nearby & vanishing cycles.** To understand the argument in Appendix A, [I, §3.1] is very helpful. In Appendix A, the calculation of \(R\Gamma\) proceeds along identical lines to [D, 7.11.3 & 10.7].

There is a discrepancy between (4.4.2) the the proposition of Appendix A; namely (4.4.2) says that \(\Psi_{\eta} := R\Psi_{\eta}\) is right t-exact, while the appendix claims that the same functor has perverse amplitude \(-1\); i.e. that \(\Psi_{\eta}[-1]\) is t-exact. This discrepancy is due to a difference of t-structures; both are relative to the middle perversity function \(p_{1/2}\), but the dimension function in (4.4.2) is the naïve one, while the dimension function in the appendix is the rectified dimension function introduced by Artin in [SGAA, XIV 2.2], which is also the one described in Remark (i) to Appendix A. The point is that if \(S\) admits structure morphism to a field \(k\) and \(x \in X\) maps to the generic point of \(S\),

\[
\text{tr. deg.}(k(x)/k) = \text{tr. deg.}(k(x)/k(\eta)) + 1;
\]

in general if \(x\) has image \(s\) in \(S\), Artin rectifies the naïve dimension function by adding \(\text{tr. deg.}(k(x)/k(y))\) so that

\[
\delta(x) = \dim \{y\} + \text{tr. deg.}(k(x)/k(y)).
\]

This has the effect of shifting the naïve t-structure on \(X_{\eta}\) by 1 to the left, so that if \(\Psi_{\eta}\) is t-exact with respect to the naïve t-structure (4.4.2), \(\Psi_{\eta}[-1]\) is t-exact with respect to the rectified t-structure. The point is that we would like to think of \(S\) as the henselization of a curve at a regular point; if \(S\) were instead the curve instead of its localization and \(X \to S\) were still of finite type, any point \(x\) of \(X\) lying over the generic point of \(S\) would have strictly positive dimension (\(\dim \{x\} > 0\)), and indeed if \(S\) were a curve of finite type over a field \(k\), \(\dim \{x\}\) would be given by precisely \(\text{tr. deg.}(k(x)/k)\).
On the matter of invariants of a $\Lambda[G]$-module when $G$ is a finite group of order invertible in $\Lambda$: the functor ‘invariants under $G$’ $\text{Hom}_{\Lambda[G]}(\Lambda, -)$ is exact if $\Lambda$ is projective as $\Lambda[G]$-module. The canonical surjection $\Lambda[G] \rightarrow \Lambda$ is split by

$$1 \mapsto \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{g \in G} g =: \omega,$$

which recognizes $\Lambda$ as projective $\Lambda[G]$-module. Therefore when $Q$ is a profinite group of order prime to $\ell$ acting on a finite $\Lambda$-module $(\Lambda \supset \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n)$, the functor ‘invariants under $Q$’ is exact. This argument can be applied stalkwise, and gives more. Namely, if $M$ is a $\Lambda[G]$-module, the map $M \rightarrow M^G$ factors as

$$M \overset{\omega}{\rightarrow} M^G \hookrightarrow M_G.$$

This shows that the map $M^G \hookrightarrow M_G$ is an isomorphism; the inverse is given by the map which to a class $[m] \in M_G$ associates $\omega m$.

There is the matter of how to define the nearby cycles: in [SGA 7, XIII 2.1] the functor $R\Psi$ is defined in a somewhat different way from the functor $\Psi$ of [SGA 7, I 2.2]. Let $(S, \eta, s)$ be a henselian trait and let $\bar{\eta}, \overline{\eta}$ denote the spectra of respectively the maximal unramified extension of $k(\eta)$ and the separable closure of $\eta$. Let $\bar{S}$ denote the normalization of $S$ in $k(\bar{\eta})$; and $\bar{s}$ its closed point; $\overline{s}$ is the spectrum of the separable closure of $k(s)$ and $\overline{S}$ is the strict henselization of $S$ at $\overline{s}$. Let $\bar{S}$ denote the normalization of $S$ in $k(\bar{\eta})$: $\bar{S}$ is the spectrum of a valuation ring with value group $\mathbb{Q}$, generic point $\bar{\eta}$, and closed point $\bar{s}$ with residue field a purely inseparable extension of $k(\bar{s})$. Let $\rho : \bar{\eta} \rightarrow \eta$ denote the chosen geometric generic point of $S$. We have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{c}
\bar{s} \overset{i}{\rightarrow} \bar{S} \overset{j}{\leftarrow} \bar{\eta} \\
\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \\
\overline{s} \overset{i}{\rightarrow} \overline{S} \overset{j}{\leftarrow} \overline{\eta} \\
\downarrow \downarrow \downarrow \\
\bar{s} \overset{i}{\rightarrow} \bar{S} \overset{j}{\leftarrow} \eta.
\end{array}$$
Let $f : X \to S$ and $G := \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$. Exposé 1 (and Appendix A) suppose $S$ is strictly henselian to begin with, in which case the tilde is superfluous, and define a functor $\psi$. On the other hand, in Exposé XIII, Deligne defines for (a not necessarily strictly henselian $S$)

$$R\Psi_\eta(K) := \overline{i}^* Rj_\eta^* K_\eta, \quad K \in D^+(X_\eta, \Lambda).$$

Let $\overline{\rho} : \overline{s} \to s$ denote the morphism obtained by base change of $\overline{S} \to S$ along $i : s \to S$ (technically the base change of the latter morphism has its source in the spectrum of a field purely inseparable over $k(\overline{\eta})$, but the map to $s$ from the spectrum of this larger field factors through our $\overline{\rho}$), and define

$$\psi(K) := \overline{\rho}^* i^* Rj_\eta^* \rho_* \rho^* K, \quad K \in D^b_c(X_\eta, \Lambda).$$

When $S$ is strictly henselian, this coincides with the functor $i^* Rj_\eta^* \rho_* \rho^* K$. But now $\psi$ and $R\Psi_\eta$ coincide on an arbitrary henselian trait $S$: the fact that an integral morphism commutes with all base extension [SGAA, VIII 5.6] allows one to write

$$\psi(K) = \overline{\rho}^* i^* Rj_\eta^* \rho_* \rho^* K = \overline{\rho}^* i^* \rho_* Rj_\eta^* K_\eta = \overline{\rho}^* \overline{\rho}^* i^* Rj_\eta^* K_\eta = i^* Rj_\eta^* K_\eta = R\Psi(K).$$

Note that in the case $X = S$, $R\Psi(K)$ just gives the sheaf $K_\eta$ on the topos $s \times_s \eta \simeq \eta$, and the distinguished triangle defining $R\Psi$ can be written as

$$\text{sp}^* K_s \to K_\eta \to R\Psi(K) \to \ldots.$$

One obtains the isomorphism

$$K \to \tilde{\text{R}}\Gamma(G, \rho_* \rho^* K) \quad K \in D^b_c(X_\eta, \Lambda)$$

of Appendix A from the same argument, namely by passage to the limit from

$$K \to \tilde{\text{R}}\Gamma(G_i, \rho_i^* \rho_i^* K) \quad K \in D^b_c(X_\eta, \Lambda).$$

This isomorphism can be proved after a base change $\eta_i \to \eta$ after which it is literally Shapiro’s lemma (compare [SGA 7, XIII §1]). (The passage to the limit is justified in light of the isomorphisms

$$H^q(G, A) \to H^q(G/U, A^U)$$

as $U$ runs over open subgroups of $G$ and $A$ is a discrete $G$-module (c.f. Serre, Cohomologie Galoisienne §2.2.).)
Appendix A (i). In light of the above, the identity $i^*R_jK = R\Gamma(G, R\Psi(K))$ is definitional [I, 3.1.3], but perhaps not quite – a detailed argument is written in the note to Morel’s article on gluing perverse sheaves. The spectral sequence associated to the perverse canonical filtration is the spectral sequence associated to the filtration of complexes given by the $p\tau_{\leq i}$; see [BBD, §3.1.5] for the definition of the filtration and [012N] for the formulation of the spectral sequence arising from a filtration of complexes (see also [015X]). Unfortunately when writing down the spectral sequence in Appendix A there is a collision of notation, as $a, b$ are used as indexes in the spectral sequence while $R\Psi(\mathcal{F})$ still has perverse amplitude $[a, b]$. The perverse amplitude of $i^*j_*\mathcal{F}$ is contained in $[-1, 0]$ by [BBD, 4.1.10 (ii)]. The compatibility of $R\Psi$ with change of trait is Th. finitude (3.7).

Appendix A (ii). Y must denote the closed fiber $X_s$. When $\mathcal{G}$ is supported on the closed fiber, $R\Psi_\eta(\mathcal{G}) = 0$ and the claim is clear. Therefore we assume the support of $\mathcal{G}$ has nonempty intersection with $X_\eta$ and $\mathcal{G}$ is a simple perverse sheaf. [BBD, 4.3.1 & 4.3.2] gives $\mathcal{G} = j_!j^*\mathcal{G}$, and [BBD, 4.1.12] allows us to write the distinguished triangle

$$i^*\mathcal{G} \to R\Psi(\mathcal{G}_\eta) \to R\Phi(\mathcal{G}) \to$$

as

$$(pH^{-1}i^*j_*\mathcal{F})[1] \to R\Psi(\mathcal{F}) \to R\Phi(\mathcal{G}) \to .$$

This shows that $R\Psi(\mathcal{G})[-1]$ is a perverse sheaf, and using (i) and (*) obtains

$$R\Psi(\mathcal{G})[-1] = \theta H^{-1}R\Psi(\mathcal{F})/(pH^{-1}R\Psi(\mathcal{F}))^G.$$
Bibliography

[BBD] Faisceaux Pervers par Beilinson, Bernstein, Deligne & Gabber
[CD] Catégories Dérivées (Etat 0) par Verdier, dans SGA 4\frac{1}{2}
[D] Les constantes des équations fonctionnelles des fonctions L par Deligne, dans LNM 349
[I] Autour du théorème de monodromie locale par Illusie, dans Astérisque 223
[I2] Complexe Cotangent et déformations I par Illusie, dans LNM 239
[SGA1] SGA 1
[SGAA] SGA 4
[SGA4\frac{1}{2}] SGA 4\frac{1}{2}
[SGA5] SGA 5
[SGA7] SGA 7
[WeilII] La conjecture de Weil: II par Deligne
5. Applications de la formule des traces aux sommes trigonométriques

1.2. Suppose $X$ is locally noetherian and $X'$ is a connected component of $X$ pointed by a geometric point $a \rightarrow X'$. Via Grothendieck’s Galois theory, over $X'$, the $A$-torsor $T$ can be identified (after a choice $e$ of identity for the stalk of $T$ at $a$) with the set $A$ with (continuous) left action of $\pi_1(X', a)$ and right action of $A$.

Given a homomorphism $\tau : A \rightarrow B$, we wish to produce a map of sets $\tau : A \rightarrow B$ so that $\tau(ta) = \tau(t)\tau(a)$ and give the set $B$ with right action of $B$ a left action of $\pi_1(X', a)$ with respect to which $\tau$ is equivariant. The given homomorphism of groups sets up a map of sets compatible with the actions of $A$ and $B$, and the formula

$$g\tau(t) := \tau(gt)$$

defines a left $\pi_1$ action on $\tau(A)$. For $s \in B$ not necessarily in $\tau(A)$,

$$gs := g\tau(e)s = \tau(ge)s$$

extends the left action of $\pi_1$ to all of $B$. The $B$-torsor $\tau(T)$ is then identified with the set $B$ with right action of $B$ and the given left action of $\pi_1$, with respect to which $\tau : T \rightarrow \tau(T)$ is equivariant by construction. This discussion depends on the choice of identity for the torsor $T$ (the identity for $\tau(T)$ is obtained from the choice for $T$ and the homomorphism $\tau$) and therefore only defines the torsor $\tau(T)$ up to isomorphism.

Let $R$ (resp. $E_\lambda$) be a finite $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-algebra (resp. finite $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-algebra). Recall (SGA 5 Exp. VI (α) 1.2.4, (β) 1.4.1, (γ) 1.4.2, (δ) 1.4.3) that the category of

(α) lisse $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaves
(β) lisse $R$-sheaves
(γ) lisse $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaves
(δ) lisse $E_\lambda$-sheaves

on a connected locally noetherian scheme $X$, pointed by a geometric point $a \rightarrow X$ is equivalent to the category of

(α) $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-modules of finite type on which $\pi_1(X) := \pi_1(X, a)$ acts continuously for the $\ell$-adic topology
(β) \( \mathbb{R} \)-modules of finite type equipped with a continuous and \( \mathbb{R} \)-linear action of \( \pi_1(X) \) on the underlying \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell \)-module of finite type

(γ) \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-vector spaces of finite dimension equipped with a continuous action of \( \pi_1(X) \)

(δ) \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-vector spaces of finite dimension equipped with a continuous and \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-linear action of \( \pi_1(X) \) on the underlying \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-vector space.

Given an \( A \)-torsor \( T \) on \( X \) and a finite-dimensional \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-vector space \( V \), the data of an \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-sheaf \( F \), lisse of rank \( \dim V \), together with a morphism of sheaves \( \rho: T \to \text{Isom}(V, \mathcal{F}) \) satisfying \( \rho(ta) = \rho(t)\rho(a) \) is the same (after a choice of identity \( e \) for the stalk of \( T \) at \( a \)) as the data of a continuous and \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-linear action of \( \pi_1(X) \) on the underlying \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-vector space of \( V \) and a \( \pi_1 \)-equivariant group homomorphism \( \rho: A \to \text{GL}(V) \), where the action of \( \pi_1 \) on \( \text{GL}(V) \) is induced by the action of \( \pi_1 \) on the second factor of \( \text{Hom}(V, V) \).

Given \( \rho: A \to \text{GL}(V) \) a linear representation of \( A \), there is a unique continuous and \( \mathbb{E}_\lambda \)-linear action of \( \pi_1 \) on the \( \mathbb{Q}_\ell \)-vector space underneath \( V \) that makes \( \rho \pi_1 \)-equivariant:

\[
\pi_1(X) \times V \to V
\]

\[
(g, v) \mapsto \rho(ge)v \quad \leadsto \quad \rho(ga) = \rho(gea) = \rho(ge)\rho(a) = g\rho(a).
\]

1.3. Torsors can be discussed in the language of schemes or sheaves; the distinction comes down to whether the torsor is representable as a sheaf, and this distinction motivates the introduction of algebraic spaces. In SGA 1 Exp. V §2 and SGAD Exp. III §0 & Exp. IV §5 the notion of principal homogeneous space is developed; these are the representing objects for certain (sheaf) torsors. There, an \( A \)-torsor is called a principal homogeneous space under \( A \). More precisely, given a category \( \mathcal{C} \), let \( \hat{\mathcal{C}} \) denote its category of set-valued presheaves \( \text{Hom}(\mathcal{C}^\circ, \text{Set}) \). If \( A \) is a \( \hat{\mathcal{C}} \)-group acting on \( X \) an object of \( \hat{\mathcal{C}} \), \( X \) is formally principal homogeneous under \( A \) (i.e. an \( A \)-pseudo torsor) if the equivalent conditions below are satisfied:

(i) for each object \( S \) of \( \mathcal{C} \), the set \( X(S) \) is empty or principal homogeneous under \( A(S) \);

(ii) the morphism of functors \( A \times X \to X \times X \) defined setwise by \( (a, x) \mapsto (ax, x) \) is an isomorphism.
It amounts to the same to say that the canonical morphism of functors

\[ X \times A \to X \times X \]

is an isomorphism. If \( \mathcal{C} \) is equipped with a topology, then one says that the \( S \)-object \( X \) with \( S \)-group of operators \( A \) is fibered principal homogeneous under \( A \) (i.e. is an \( A \)-torsor) if it is locally trivial; i.e. there exists a covering family \( \{ S_i \to S \} \) such that for each \( i \), the \( S_i \)-functor \( X \times_S S_i \) with \( S_i \)-functor-group of operators \( A \times_S S_i \) is trivial.

The category \( \hat{\mathcal{C}} \) has a final object \( e \) which sends an object of \( \mathcal{C} \) to \( \{ \emptyset \} \), the set with one element. This functor is representable iff \( \mathcal{C} \) admits a final object. The ‘sections’ functor \( \Gamma \) is defined on \( \hat{\mathcal{C}} \) as \( \text{Hom}(\ - , e) \) and on \( \mathcal{C} \) via \( X \mapsto h_X \); if \( \mathcal{C} \) admits a final object, this latter functor is isomorphic to \( \text{Hom}(e, -) \). SGAD Exp. IV 5.1.2, 5.1.3 observes that \( X \) is formally principal homogeneous under \( A \), there is an isomorphism

\[ \Gamma(X) \sim \text{Isom}_{A\text{-obj.}}(A, X) \]

of principal homogeneous sets under \( \Gamma(A) \); therefore an isomorphism of \( A \)-objects

\[ X \sim \text{Isom}_{A\text{-obj.}}(A, X). \]

The proof is simply that to each section \( x \) of \( X \) one associates the morphism \( A \to X \) defined setwise by \( a \mapsto xa \). This implies that an object with group of operators is trivial iff it is formally principal homogeneous and possesses a section.

The algebraic group schemes in the given extension can also be considered as sheaves for the fpqc topology on \( S \). En effet, the surjectivity of \( \pi \) implies that \( \pi \) is faithfully flat, and therefore an fpqc covering.

\textit{Proposition (SGAD Exp. IV 5.1.7.1). — Let} \( \mathcal{C} \) \textit{denote a category possessing a final object, stable by fiber products, and equipped with a subcanonical topology} \( \mathcal{T} \) \textit{(such as Sch equipped with fppf, fpqc, étale)}. \textit{Suppose} \( \pi : G' \to G \) \textit{is a morphism of} \( \mathcal{C} \)-\textit{groups which is covering for the topology} \( \mathcal{T} \), \textit{and} \( A = \ker \pi \). \textit{Then} \( G \) \textit{represents the quotient sheaf} \( G'/A \), \textit{and} \( \pi \) \textit{is an} \( A \)-\textit{torsor; i.e.} \( G' \) \textit{is an} \( A \)-\textit{torsor on} \( G \).

Therefore it makes sense to say ‘\( G' \) is an \( A \)-torsor on \( G' \)’ or that ‘the sheaf \( T \) of local sections of \( \pi \), \( T = \text{Hom}_G(-, G') \), is an \( A \)-torsor on \( G' \); the former represents the latter. The \( A \)-torsor \( G' \) on \( G \) is indeed locally trivial for fpqc: pulling back along the faithfully
flat covering $\pi$, we find
\[
G' \times_G A \to G' \times_G G' \\
(g', a) \mapsto (g', g'a)
\]
is indeed an isomorphism, as can be checked setwise.

In order to understand how to add torsors, it is instructive to first recall how to add extensions of abelian groups. Suppose
\[
0 \to A \to G' \to G \to 0 \\
0 \to A \to G'' \to G \to 0
\]
are exact sequences of abelian groups. $G'$ and $G''$ are $A$-torsors in $\text{Set}$. The Baer sum $G' + G''$ is constructed from the direct sum of extensions by pushout along addition for $A$ and pullback along the diagonal for $G$.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & \to & A \oplus A & \to & G' \oplus G & \to & G \oplus G & \to & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \to & A & \to & +_*(G' \oplus G'') & \to & G \oplus G & \to & 0 \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow & & \downarrow & & \Delta & & \Delta \\
0 & \to & A & \to & \Delta^* +_*(G' \oplus G'') & \to & G & \to & 0
\end{array}
\]

Here, the square marked with $\downarrow$ is cocartesian while the one marked with $\uparrow$ is cartesian. The Baer sum of $G'$ and $G''$ is $\Delta^* +_*(G' \oplus G'')$. Now consider the case of 1.3 where we are given an extension of commutative algebraic group schemes over $S$, and $G'$ is an $A$-torsor over $G$. Pulling back $G'$ along addition for $G$ yields the fiber product $+_G^*G' = G' \times_G G \times_S G$. If $X$ is a scheme over $S$, to give a morphism over $S$ to $+_G^*G'$ amounts to giving two objects $g_1, g_2 \in G(X)$ and an object in $g \in G'(X)$ such that $\pi g = g_1 + g_2$. This data is equivalent to the data of two objects $g_1', g_2'$ in $G'(X)$ mapping to $g_1, g_2$, respectively, modulo the relation which considers two such pairs equivalent if their sum is the same. This generalizes pushing out by addition on $A$ to the case of torsors. The pullback of torsors is given on representing objects by fiber product, so that given an $S$-morphism $f : X \to G$, $f^*T = \text{Hom}_X(-, X \times_{f, \pi} G')$. This torsor is trivial if
there is a section $X \to X \times_{f, \pi} G'$ over $X$; i.e. a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & G' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\pi & \searrow & \\
& G.
\end{array}
\]

In other words, the torsor $f^*T$ is defined up to isomorphism by the image of $f$ in $\text{Hom}_S(X, G)/\pi \text{Hom}_S(X, G')$.

If $g : X \to G$ is another $S$-morphism, then $g^*T$ is represented by $X \times_{g, \pi} G'$. The fiber products $X \times_{f, \pi} G'$ and $X \times_{g, \pi} G'$ are $A$-torsors over $X$. In analogy with Baer sum, a sum of torsors is given by pushing out by the addition on $A$ followed by pulling back by the diagonal $\Delta_X : X \to X \times_S X$. Since $G'$ is defined by an extension and both torsors come from pulling back $G'$ (i.e. $T$), this is the same as pulling back $G'$ along the composition of morphisms

\[
X \xrightarrow{(f, g)} G \times_S G \xrightarrow{\Delta} G.
\]

More explicitly, the morphism $X \to G \times_S G$ factors as

\[
X \xrightarrow{\Delta} X \times_S X \xrightarrow{(f \circ \text{pr}_1, g \circ \text{pr}_2)} G \times_S G
\]

and therefore pulling back along this morphism corresponds to pulling back $(f^*T, g^*T)$ along the diagonal $\Delta_X$. Of course, the fiber product $G' \times_{G'} (G' \times_S G') \simeq G' \times_S G'$ corresponds to the $A \times A$-torsor $(T, T)$. As we have already seen, pulling back $G'$ along $G \times_S G \xrightarrow{\Delta} G$ is the quotient of $(T, T)$ by the relation the action of $(a_1, a_2)$ and $(a'_1, a'_2)$ if $a_1 + a_2 = a'_1 + a'_2$. Therefore, $(f + g)^*T$ is the quotient of $(f^*T, g^*T)$ by this same relation, which verifies the formula

\[
(f + g)^*T = f^*T + g^*T.
\]

**The Lang torsor.** For the development of the Lang isogeny and its properties, see Borel, *Algebraic Groups* §16. There, he proves that $\mathcal{L}$ is surjective when $G^0$ is connected. If the group $G^0$ is smooth (i.e. geometrically reduced), then $\mathcal{L}$ is seen to be étale (as a morphism of schemes) by computing its differential and Milne, *Algebraic Groups*, 1.63.
That the functor $G^F_0 = G_0(F_q)$ is a consequence of the description of $F$ on the set $G_0(F)$; see Rapport 1.1.

1.6. If $G_0$ is a commutative algebraic group defines over $F_q$, then the norm map

$$N : G_0(F_{q^n}) \to G_0(F_q) \subset G_0(F_{q^n})$$

is defined, as $F$ is a group homomorphism. In the case $G_0 = G_a$, then $G_a(F_{q^n}) = F_{q^n}$ and $N$ coincides with the field $\text{trace} N(x) = x + x^q + \cdots + x^{q^{n-1}}$, as the group operation is addition. If $G_0 = G_m$, on the other hand, then $G_m(F_{q^n}) = F_{q^n}^{\times}$, and $N$ coincides with the field $\text{norm} N(x) = x \cdot x^q \cdots x^{q^{n-1}}$, as the group operation is multiplication.

1.7. The formulæ $\mathcal{F}(\chi, f_0) = f_0^* \mathcal{F}(\chi, id_{G_0})$, etc. result from the fact that the pullback of lisse sheaves corresponds to the homomorphism of $\pi_1$ induced by $f_0$; i.e. if $x \to X_0$ is a geometric point and $g = f_0(x)$, then both sides of these identities result from the composition of maps

$$\pi_1(X_0, x) \to \pi_1(G_0, g) \xrightarrow{L_0} G_0(F_q) \xrightarrow{\chi^{-1}} E^*_\lambda,$$

where the $L_0$ indicates the homomorphism of groups defining the Lang torsor $L_0(G_0)$.

The formula that motivates this whole business

$$F^*_x = \chi f_0(x)$$

follows from the hint that the fiber in $x$ of the morphism 1.2.2 commutes with $F^*_x$. This is true for the following reason: the geometric point $x \in X^F$ and $f_0$ give homomorphisms

$$\text{Gal}(F, F_q) \to \pi_1(X_0, x) \to \pi_1(G_0, x)$$

and $F_{x}^{*-1}$ coincides with the image of the Frobenius substitution $\varphi \in \text{Gal}(F, F_q)$. Commutation of $F^*_x$ with $f_0^*$ is clear and it remains to show that $\rho_\times$ of 1.2.2 is $\pi_1(X, x)$-equivariant. The formula (†) of the note to 1.2 shows this explicitly.

1.8. (ii) The inverse image by $f$ of the the $E_\lambda$-sheaf obtained from $\chi^{-1}(L_0(G_0))$ by extension of scalars from $F_q$ to $k$ is probably better written $f^* \mathcal{F}(\chi)_1$ than $\mathcal{F}(\chi f)$. 
1.10. The subtlety in this argument is building a bridge between $C$ and $F_q$. Of course, the isomorphisms on singular cohomology with $Q$ coefficients imply isomorphisms on singular cohomology with $Q_\ell$ coefficients for all $\ell$. The quadric hypersurface $X'_0$ and hyperplane $Y'_0$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2N}_0$ over $F_q$ are each defined by the vanishing of a homogeneous polynomial of degree two and one, respectively, in the ring $F_q[X_0, X_1, \ldots, X_{2N}]$; let $f_0$ denote the polynomial defining $X'_0$. As $X'_0$ is a nonsingular variety over a perfect field, it is smooth over $F_q$. Let $m(x)$ be the minimal polynomial for a primitive element of $F_q$ over $F_p$; lifting the coefficients of $m$ to $Z$, $m$ remains irreducible, and defines a finite extension of domains $Z \to Z[x]/(m(x)) =: A$ so that $A/(p) \simeq F_q$. The coefficients of $f_0$ now admit lifts to $A$ and define a projective quadric $X'_S$ in $\mathbb{P}^{2N}_S$ which is, in particular, flat over $S := \text{Spec} A$, and such that the fiber over $(p)$ is $X'_0$. Recalling EGA IV 12.2.4, the set of points $s \in S$ such that $(X'_S)_s$ is smooth over $k(s)$ is open. In particular, the fiber over the generic point $\xi \in S$ is smooth over $k(\xi)$, which is a finite extension of $Q$. The strict henselization $\tilde{A}$ of $A$ at $(p)$ is a regular local ring with spectrum $\tilde{S}$; $X'_S \to \tilde{S}$ is proper and smooth, and $k(\tilde{\xi})$ is an algebraic extension of $k(\xi)$. Let $\text{Spec} C = \tau \to \tilde{S}$ be a geometric point centered on $\tilde{\xi}$, and put $X := (X'_S)_\tau$. The specialization morphism

$$H^*(X', Q_\ell) \simto H^*(X, Q_\ell)$$

is an isomorphism (Arcata V 3.1). As $X$ is a projective nonsingular quadric in $\mathbb{P}^{2N}_C$, the comparison theorem between ordinary cohomology and étale cohomology (Arcata V 3.5.1) allow us to apply the transcendental argument to conclude.

1.13. To compute $R^i f_* Q_\ell$, we may assume $Y$ is the spectrum of a separably closed field and $X = \mathbb{A}^1$. By Poincaré duality and Artin’s theorem, $H^0_\ell(\mathbb{A}^1, Q_\ell) = 0$. As for $H^1_\ell$, the short exact sequence of sheaves on $\mathbb{P}^1$

$$0 \to (Q_\ell)_{\mathbb{P}^1} \to Q_\ell \to (Q_\ell)_\infty \to 0$$

gives rise to a long exact sequence of cohomology

$$0 \to Q_\ell \to Q_\ell \to H^1_\ell(\mathbb{A}^1, Q_\ell) \to H^1_\ell(\mathbb{P}^1, Q_\ell) = 0 \quad \text{as } \text{Pic}^0(\mathbb{P}^1) = 0,$$
verifying $H^1_c(A^1, Q_\ell) = 0$. Evidently $H^0_c(A^1, Q_\ell) = Q_\ell$; by Poincaré we conclude
\[
\begin{cases}
R^i f_! Q_\ell = 0 & i \neq 2 \\
R^2 f_! Q_\ell = Q_\ell(-1).
\end{cases}
\]

2.3*. Leray spectral sequence for cohomology with proper support is a particular case of spectral sequence of composed functors, but the proof that for all composition of morphisms $f = gh : X \to Y \to Z$ we have ‘well-behaved’ transitivity isomorphisms between $Rf_!$ and $Rg_!Rh_!$ is not straightforward; it is SGAA Exp. XVII 5.1.8, which also proves that the functors $Rf_!$ are ‘way out’ and triangulated. The proof of transitivity is formal, relying on §3 of the same exposé, which reduces the problem to the analogous ones for proper morphisms and open immersions, provided one ‘compatibility’ isomorphism, which is 5.1.6. With transitivity in hand, the spectral sequence
\[
E_2^{pq} = R^p g_! R^q h_!(K) \Rightarrow R^{p+q} f_!(K),
\]
valid for $K$ in $D(X, \mathcal{O}_X)$ ($\mathcal{O}$ a sheaf of rings), is a consequence of a general spectral sequence written down by Verdier: for all $L$ in $D(Y, \mathcal{O}_Y)$
\[
E_2^{pq} = R^p g_! (\mathcal{H}^q(L)) \Rightarrow R^{p+q} g_!(L);
\]
see Des catégories dérivées des catégories abéliennes 4.4.6.

2.4*. Künneth formula in cohomology with proper support is SGA 4 Exp. XVII 5.4.

2.5*. The spectral sequence (2.5.2)* is the spectral sequence associated to a filtration of chain complex. Namely, the complements of the closed subsets in the filtration on $X$ gives rise to a filtration on $X$ by open subsets $U_p \subset U_{p+1}$. To calculate cohomology with proper support, fix a compactification $j : X \hookrightarrow \overline{X}$. In what follows, we write $F$ for the sheaf and its various inverse images. Let $j_p : U_p \hookrightarrow \overline{X}$ and $i_{p+1} : U_{p+1} - U_p = X_p - X_{p+1} \hookrightarrow \overline{X}$ be the immersions. The filtration $j_{p!} F \subset j_{p+1!} F$ on $j_{1!} F$ has successive quotients isomorphic to $i_{p+1!} F$. In light of the spectral sequence (2.3.1)*, the spectral sequence associated to a filtered injective resolution of $j_1 F$ (Stacks 05TT)
gives rise (Stacks 015W) to the spectral sequence
\[ E_{1}^{p,q} = H^{p+q}(\bar{X}, i_{p+1}! F) = H_{c}^{p+q}(X - X_{p+1}, F) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(\bar{X}, j_{!} F) = H_{c}^{p+q}(X, F). \]

**Remark.** Let \( C \) be a curve of finite type over an algebraically closed field \( k \), \( P \) the set of rational points of the curve, \( F \) the constant sheaf with value \( A \) on \( C \), and \( x \in C(k) \). The fiber of \( P \) is not \( F_{x} \); rather, it can be identified with functions from \( P \) to \( A \) continuous for the discrete topology on \( P \), modulo the relation that \( f \sim g \) if \( f(x) = g(x) \) and \( f \) and \( g \) disagree on only finitely many points.

**2.6*.** SGAA Exp. V §3 introduces the Čech complex and the Cartan-Leray spectral sequence associated to a covering, which is simply the spectral sequence of the composition of functors, where the first is inclusion of sheaves into presheaves and the second is \( \check{H}^{0} \) (it is shown that the \( \check{H}^{i} \) associated to the Čech complex are indeed right derived functors of \( \check{H}^{0} \) on presheaves). The condition on the morphisms in the covering is simply that fibered products are representable, which is true in the category of schemes. However, this is not done for cohomology with support. In the introduction to SGAA Exp. Vbis, the Leray spectral sequence is discussed for an open covering and for a locally finite closed covering, and this guides SGAA Exp. XVII 6.2.8–6.2.10, which discusses in full detail the construction of the so-called ‘extraordinary’ spectral sequence (2.6.2)*. One can also obtain the more ‘ordinary’ spectral sequence of (2.6.1)* from the argument there by replacing the trace morphism \( u_{*}u^{*} \to \text{id} \) in the case of \( u : Y \to X \) separated, étale, surjective, and finite type with the unit of adjunction \( \text{id} \to u_{*}u^{*} \) when \( u \) arises from a finite covering by closed subschemes. Then instead of getting a left resolution of the sheaf, one gets a right resolution, as in the usual Čech resolution.

Given \((X_{i})_{i \in I}\) a finite covering by closed subschemes, let \( u : Y = \coprod_{i} X_{i} := Y \to X, \)
\[ Y_{n} = Y \times_{X} \cdots \times_{X} Y, \]
and \( u_{n} : Y_{n} \to X \). The sheaves \( \mathcal{F}_{n} = u_{n*}u_{n}^{*} \mathcal{F} \) form, via the units of adjunction \( \mathcal{F} \to u_{n*}u_{n}^{*} \mathcal{F} \), a simplicial sheaf coaugmented by \( \mathcal{F} \). As discussed in SGAA Exp. Vbis, if \( \mathcal{E}^{*}(\mathcal{F}) \) denotes an injective resolution of \( \mathcal{F} \), the double complex
\[ \mathcal{F} \to (u_{p*}\mathcal{E}^{q}(u_{*}(\mathcal{F})))_{p,q} \]
defines a resolution of $\mathcal{F}$ by injective sheaves.

If $f_n$ is the projection of $Y_n$ to $\text{Spec } k$, then $Rf_n! = Rg!u_n! = Rg!u_n^*$. Applying the functor $g_!$ to the double complex and filtering by semi-simplicial degree gives rise to the Čech spectral sequence

$$E_1^{p,q} = R^q f_p!(u_p^* \mathcal{F}) \Rightarrow R^{p+q} g_! \mathcal{F};$$

this is (2.6.1)* for cohomology with support.

The problem when taking the $X_i$ to be open is that $u_n^* \neq u_n!$ and there is no longer a coaugmentation map $\text{id} \rightarrow u_n!u_n^*$. The trace morphism, however, provides an augmentation map $u_n!u_n^* \rightarrow \text{id}$ and one proceeds by resolving to the left to produce the extraordinary Čech resolution and spectral sequence

$$E_1^{p,q} = R^q f_p!(u_p^* \mathcal{F}) \Rightarrow R^{p+q} g_! \mathcal{F};$$

this is (2.6.2)*. For more on the extraordinary Čech resolution, see SGAA Exp. XVII 6.2.8–6.2.10.
Bibliography

[Sommes trig.] Application de la formule des traces aux sommes trigonométriques dans SGA 4\(\frac{1}{2}\).
6. Transformation de Fourier

As a warm-up, let’s recall some Galois theory from SGA 1 in connection with the beginning of Sommes trig. All references in this paragraph are to SGA 1 Exposé V. The Lang isogeny for $G_a, F_q$ is written

$$0 \rightarrow F_q \rightarrow G_a \xrightarrow{x^q - x} G_a \rightarrow 0$$

and is a revêtement étale called the Artin-Schreier revêtement. The sheaf of sections defines an $F_q$-torsor. The Galois group of the Artin-Schreier revêtement is therefore $F_q$, as a connected torsor under a finite group $G$ has Galois (= automorphism) group $G$. Just as in the theory of fields, the choice of words ‘Galois group’ in place of ‘automorphism group’ is reserved for Galois objects in the Galois category. Remark 5.11 characterizes the Galois objects in a Galois category $C$ equipped with fiber functor $F$ as the connected torsors $X$ under a finite group $G$ (torsor = principal homogeneous space). The implications go as follows: an object $X$ is galoisian if it is connected, not isomorphic to $0_C$, the initial object of $C$ ($\Leftrightarrow F(X) \neq 0$), and $\text{Aut } X$ is transitive ($\Leftrightarrow$ simply transitive) (N° 4, f) & 5.4). $X$ is a torsor under the group opposite $\text{Aut } X$ iff $F(X)$ is a torsor under the group opposite $\text{Aut } X$; i.e. $\text{Aut } X$ acts simply transitively. Therefore $X$ is a connected torsor under the group opposite $\text{Aut } X$. On the other hand, suppose $X$ is a torsor under $G$, i.e. $G$ acts on $X$ on the right and on $F(X)$ simply transitively, yielding a natural injection from $G$ into the group opposite $\text{Aut } X$. As $G$ acts simply transitively, $\text{Aut } X$ acts transitively. If moreover $X$ is connected, then N° 4 f) gives that $\text{Aut } X$ acts transitively iff it acts simply transitively, showing that the injection above is actually an isomorphism between $G$ and the group opposite $\text{Aut } X$. This is justification for the fact ‘In a Galois category, a connected torsor under a finite group $G$ is a Galois object with Galois group $G$.’
1.1.1.5. En vue de l’additivité de $t$ (0.9), l’énoncé $t_{R(f, Q_{f,x}}(\infty) = 1 - q$ résulte de la pureté relative pour $A^1 \hookrightarrow \mathbf{P}^1 \leftrightarrow \infty$ (Arcata V 3.4) en ce que
\[
\begin{align*}
    j_*Q_\ell &= Q_\ell \\
    R^1j_*Q_\ell &= Q_\ell(-1)_{\infty} \\
    R^qj_*Q_\ell &= 0 \text{ pour } q \geq 2.
\end{align*}
\]

1.1.3. The action of Frobenius on the fiber is clearer in Sommes trig. 1.5, 1.6 since Deligne’s notation for Frobenius is clear and consistent.

The rigidification (1.1.3.1) is a consequence of the fact that there is a distinguished element of $L^{-1}(1)$, namely 1.

The trivialization (1.1.3.2) depends on the construction of $\mathcal{L}_\chi$ from a torsor defined by an extension. In the setting of Sommes trig. 1.3, the $A$-torsor $T$ is defined as the sheaf of local sections of an extension $\pi$. As $H$ represents $m^*T$ in the commutative diagram with exact rows ($\Rightarrow$ = cartesian and $m$ denotes the group law)

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \rightarrow & A \times A & \rightarrow & G \times G & \rightarrow & G \times G & \rightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow m & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
0 & \rightarrow & A & \rightarrow & H & \rightarrow & G \times G & \rightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & & & & \downarrow \rho & & \downarrow m & & \\
0 & \rightarrow & A & \rightarrow & G' & \rightarrow & G & \rightarrow & 0,
\end{array}
\]

in the language of torsors there is a canonical isomorphism

\[m(T \times T) = m^*T.\]

The structure of group on $G$ provides commutative diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
G & \xrightarrow{\quad pr_1 \quad} & G \\
\downarrow \sim & & \downarrow \sim \\
G \times \ast & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id} \times 1 \quad} & G \times \ast \\
\downarrow \sim & & \downarrow \sim \\
G & \xrightarrow{\quad m \quad} & G \\
\end{array}
\text{ and }
\begin{array}{ccc}
\pi_1(G, 1) & \xrightarrow{\quad pr_1 \quad} & \pi_1(G, 1) \\
\downarrow \sim & & \downarrow \sim \\
\pi_1(G, 1) & \xrightarrow{\quad \text{id} \times 1 \quad} & \pi_1(G \times G, (1,1)) \\
\downarrow \sim & & \downarrow \sim \\
\pi_1(G, 1) & \xrightarrow{\quad m \quad} & \pi_1(G, 1)
\end{array}
\]
The diagram
\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\pi_1(G \times G, (1, 1)) & \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_1 \times \text{pr}_2} & \pi_1(G, 1) \times \pi_1(G, 1) & \xrightarrow{m} & \pi_1(G, 1) \\
\cong & & A \times A & & A \\
\end{array}
\]
gives the action of \(\pi_1(G \times G, (1, 1))\) on the torsors \(T \times T\) and \(m(T \times T) = m^*T\). Pushing by \(\chi^{-1}\) gives a representation of \(\pi_1(G \times G, (1, 1))\) on \(\overline{Q}_\ell\) which is induced by

\[
(g_1, g_2) \mapsto \chi^{-1}(g_1) \otimes \chi^{-1}(g_2),
\]
demonstrating explicitly an isomorphism

\[m^*L_\chi \simeq \text{pr}_1^*L_\chi \otimes \text{pr}_2^*L\]

and hence a trivialization of \(D_2(L_\chi)\) compatible with the identification of the fibers of \(D_2(L_\chi)\) and \(\overline{Q}_\ell\) at \((1, 1)\).

(1.1.3.3) = Sommes trig. 1.7.7 (see note to Sommes trig. 1.6)

(1.1.3.4) = Sommes trig. 2.7*.

The remark (1.1.3.7) can be summed up by the morphism of torsors induced by the commutative diagram below, the projective limit of which defines \(\lim \leftarrow_{l(k)} \mu_N(k)\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \xrightarrow{\mu_{NM}(k)} & \mathbb{G}_{m,k} \\
\downarrow{[M]} & & \downarrow{[M]} \\
1 & \xrightarrow{\mu_N(k)} & \mathbb{G}_{m,k} \\
\end{array}
\]

As \(F_q^\times \simeq \mathbb{Z}/(q - 1)\), \(I(F_q) = \{n \in \mathbb{N}_{>0} : n|q - 1\}\).

1.2.1. The pairing \(\langle \ , \rangle : E \times S E' \to \mathbb{G}_{a,k}\) should rather land in \(\mathbb{G}_{a,S}\). See Sommes trig. 1.7 c) to make sense of what this does to \(L_\psi\).

To be maximally pedantic, if \(q = p^n\), with the notation of (1.1.3.3) we should write \(\psi_a\) where \(\psi_q\) appears in the definition of \(\hat{f}\).
1.2.2. Locally $S = \text{Spec } A$, $E = \text{Spec } A[t_1, \ldots, t_r]$, $E \times_S E = \text{Spec } A[t_1, \ldots, t_r, t'_1, \ldots, t'_r]$, and the addition $E \times_S E \to E$ is given by $t_i \mapsto t_i + t'_i$ while $[-1]$ is given by $t_i \mapsto -t_i$.

More to the point, writing $\mathcal{E} = \text{Spec } \text{Sym}(E)$ with $\text{Sym}(E)$ the symmetric algebra on a locally free sheaf $E$, then addition of sections gives addition on $E$, and vice versa, as the sheaf of local sections of $E$ coincides with $\mathcal{E}'$.

(1.2.2.1) Identifying $E$ with $E''$ via $e \mapsto \langle e, \rangle = -a(e)$, the diagram becomes the base change by $\pi' : E' \to S$ of addition on $E''$,

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E'' \times_S E'' & \xrightarrow{(e''_1, e''_2)\mapsto e''_1 + e''_2} & E'' \\
\downarrow \text{pr} & & \downarrow \text{pr} \\
E'' & \leftrightarrow & E'' \\
\downarrow \text{pr} & & \downarrow \text{pr} \\
S & \leftrightarrow & E'' \\
\end{array}
$$

and the isomorphism

$$
\text{pr}^*_{12} \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle) \otimes \text{pr}^*_{23} \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle) = \alpha^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle)
$$

becomes (1.1.3.2) on the nose.

$$
\mathcal{F}' \circ \mathcal{F}(K) = R \text{pr}'''(\text{pr}''^*(R \text{pr}'(\text{pr}^*(K) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))[2r]
\simeq R(\text{pr}'' \circ \text{pr}_{23})(\text{pr}^*(K) \otimes \text{pr}^*_{13} \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle)) \otimes \text{pr}^*_{23} \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))[2r]
\simeq R(\text{pr}'' \circ \text{pr}_{13})(\text{pr}^*(K) \otimes \alpha^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))[2r]
\simeq R \text{pr}''(\text{pr}^* K \otimes R \text{pr}_{13}! \alpha^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))[2r]
\simeq R \text{pr}''(\text{pr}^* K \otimes \beta^* R \text{pr}' \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle))[2r].
$$

In (1.2.2.2), the first equation of the proof is missing a $\pi''$; it should read

$$
\mathcal{F}(\pi^* L[r]) = \pi''^* L \otimes R \text{pr}' \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle)[2r].
$$
The rest of the proof of (1.2.2.2) is straightforward. It allows us to write
\[ F' \circ F(K) \simeq R \text{pr}'''(\text{pr}^* K \otimes \beta^* F'(Q_{\ell,E'}^r)) \]
\[ \simeq R \text{pr}'''(\text{pr}^* K \otimes \beta^* \sigma'' Q_{\ell,S}(-r)) \]
\[ \simeq a_* K(-r), \]
as \( \beta^* \sigma'' \) is supported precisely on the locus where \( e'' = a(e) \), and after base change along \( E \times_{a, \text{id}} E'' \rightarrow E \times S E'' \), which commutes with \( \text{pr}_1'' \), we find \( R \text{pr}_1'' \text{pr}^* K = a_* \).

**Remark.** Identifying \( E \simeq (E')^\vee \) in the canonical way, the involutivity can be written
\[ F' \circ F(K) \simeq [-1]_* K(-r), \]
and the inverse image under \([ -1 ] \) of this identity is \( F' \circ F(K) \simeq K(-r) \), since \( [-1]^* F' = F' \circ F \) in light of the fact that \([ -1 ]^* \psi((e'', e')) = \psi((-e, e')) = \psi^{-1}((e, e')). \)

(1.2.2.4) The adjunction upon which the equality rests is
\[ \langle f(s), \varphi \rangle_2 = \langle s, f^* \varphi := \varphi \circ f \rangle_1, \]
as pullback by \( f' \) on a section \( \varphi \) of \( E_2' \) gives, by definition, the element of \( E_1' \) which, to a section \( s \) of \( E_1 \), applies \( f \) then \( \varphi \). We then write

\[
\mathcal{F}_2(Rf_!K_1) = Rpr'_2(\{pr'_2(Rf_!K_1) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)\})[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong Rpr'_2(R(f \times 1)_!(pr^*_1 K_1) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)\otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong R(\text{pr}'_2 \circ (f \times 1))_!(pr^*_1 K_1 \otimes (f \times 1)^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong R(\text{pr}'_2 \circ (f \times 1))_!(pr^*_1 (1 \times f'\circ K_1) \otimes (1 \times f')^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)\otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong Rpr'_2(1 \times f'\circ R(f \times 1)_!(pr^*_1 K_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong f'^* \text{pr}'_1_!(pr^*_1 K_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))[r_2]
\]

\[
\cong f'^* \mathcal{F}_1(K_1)[r_2 - r_1].
\]

(1.2.2.5) If \( (\pi')' \) is the morphism of dual bundles \( S \to E'' \) induced by \( \pi' \), then \( (\pi')'^* a_\ast \cong \sigma^* \). To make sense of the morphism \( (\pi')' : S \to E'' \), you have to unpack what it means to consider \( S \) as a vector bundle of rank 0 over \( S \). The only section of \( S \) is the zero section, as at all points of \( S \), a rank 0 vector bundle returns the vector space \( \mathbb{F} \) at every point of \( S \). In other words, we dispose of a tautological isomorphism \( S \to S \times \mathbb{F} \ast = S \times \{0\} \). Thinking about \( \pi' : E' \to S \) as sending \( (s, e') \mapsto (s, 0) \), the map \( (\pi')' : S \to E'' \) turns the 0 section of \( S \) into a section of \( E'' \), i.e. the one which to a section \( s' \) of \( E' \) returns the 0 section of \( S \). Therefore \( (\pi')' \) is the embedding by zero section \( 0 : S \hookrightarrow E'' \); as \( -0 = 0 \), the zero section of \( E'' \) corresponds under the isomorphism \( a \) to the zero section of \( E \), which sees \( (\pi')'^* a_\ast \cong \sigma^* \).

(1.2.2.7) For the isomorphism

\[
\mathcal{F}(K_1 \boxtimes S K_2) \cong \mathcal{F}(K_1) \boxtimes S \mathcal{F}(K_2),
\]

perhaps it helps to write the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E & \overset{pr_1}{\leftarrow} & E \times_S E \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
E \times_S E' & \overset{pr_2}{\rightarrow} & E \times_S E \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
E' & \leftarrow & E' \times_S E' \\
\end{array}
\]
If one imagines this diagram drawn on the $xy$-plane in 3D with the center at $(0,0,0)$, places $S$ at $(0,0,1)$, and connects every node of this diagram to this $S$, every row and column of the $3 \times 3$ above will then form a cartesian square with this $S$. The equality of Fourier transform then follows from the Künneth formula in light of the isomorphism

$$\text{pr}_1^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle_{E_1}) \otimes \text{pr}_2^* \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle_{E_2}) \simeq \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \rangle_{E_1 \otimes E_2}),$$

which is an obvious consequence of the fact that given vector bundles $E_1, E_2$,

$$\langle \ , \rangle_{E_1 \otimes E_2} = \langle \ , \rangle_{E_1} + \langle \ , \rangle_{E_2}.$$

The character $\psi$ carries this additive identity to a multiplicative one, hence the $\otimes$.

To go from here to the stated isomorphism

$$\mathcal{F}(K_1 \ast K_2) \simeq \mathcal{F}(K_1) \otimes \mathcal{F}(K_2)[-r],$$

after applying (1.2.2.4) in the given way, one is faced with the problem of justifying

$$s''(\mathcal{F}(K_1) \boxtimes_S \mathcal{F}(K_2)) \simeq \mathcal{F}(K_1) \otimes \mathcal{F}(K_2).$$

It is useful to reason by adjunction, writing the following adjoint pair of diagrams.

The point is that given $e, e'$ sections of $E, E'$ respectively,

$$\langle e, (\text{pr}_i \circ s')(e') \rangle = \langle \sigma_i(e), s'(e') \rangle = \langle (s \circ \sigma_i)(e), e' \rangle = \langle e, e' \rangle.$$

Ergo,

$$s''(\mathcal{F}(K_1) \boxtimes_S \mathcal{F}(K_2)) \simeq (\text{pr}_1 \circ s')^* \mathcal{F}(K_1) \otimes (\text{pr}_2 \circ s')^* \mathcal{F}(K_2) \simeq \mathcal{F}(K_1) \otimes \mathcal{F}(K_2).$$

1.2.3. Quelques détails supplémentaires pour les exemples donnés suivent.
With \( \sigma_0 \): \( \mathcal{F} \colon S \to \mathcal{F}' \),

\[
\mathcal{F}(i_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S}[s]) \approx i'\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{Q}_{\ell,F}[s])[r - s] \approx i'' \sigma_{F*}(\mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S}(-s))[r - s];
\]

now use proper base change for the cartesian square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E' & \xleftarrow{\iota_1} & F' \\
\downarrow{\iota'} & \downarrow{\pi'} & \downarrow{\pi} \\
F' & \xleftarrow{\sigma_0} & S.
\end{array}
\]

(1.2.3.2) A few useless words: \( e_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S} \) is the sheaf on \( E \) that is supported precisely on the section \( e \) of \( E \). Restricted to the closed subscheme which is the image of \( e \), \( e_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S} \) is constant with value \( \mathcal{Q}_{\ell} \). Therefore \( (e_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S}) \boxtimes K \) has support contained in \( e \times_S E \), and restricted to this closed subscheme, \( s \) is an isomorphism with inverse \( E \xrightarrow{\sim} (-e) \times_S E \xrightarrow{s} E \xrightarrow{e} \times_S E \). En effet, \( \tau_e \) factors as \( E \xrightarrow{\sim} e \times_S E \xrightarrow{s} E \).

After applying (1.2.2.7), one uses (1.2.3.1) to compute

\[
\mathcal{F}(e_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,S}) \approx e_* \mathcal{Q}_{\ell,E}[r] \approx \mathcal{L}(\langle e \rangle)[r].
\]

(1.2.3.3) The isomorphism \( \alpha \) gives rise to a nondegenerate bilinear form \( B : E \times_S E \to \mathcal{G}_{\alpha,S} \) via \( B(e_1, e_2) = \langle e_1, \alpha(e_2) \rangle \), and \( \alpha \) is symmetric if \( B \) is; equivalently,

\[
\langle \alpha^{-1}(e'), \alpha(e) \rangle = \langle e, e' \rangle.
\]

This allows the easy verification of the identity

\[
q(e) + \langle e, 2e' \rangle = q(e + \alpha^{-1}(e')) = q'(e').
\]

The cartesian square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E \times E' & \xrightarrow{id \times [2]} & E \times E' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
E' & \xrightarrow{[2]} & E'
\end{array}
\]

and proper base change gives

\[
[2]^* \mathcal{F}(\mathcal{L}(q)) \approx \mathcal{R} \text{pr}_! (\text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(q) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle , 2 \rangle)),
\]
where here we write $\mathcal{L}(\langle, 2 \rangle)$ for $(\text{id} \times [2])^* \mathcal{L}(\langle, \rangle)$. Let $f$ denote the composition of maps in the diagram

$$E \times E' \xrightarrow{\text{id} \times \alpha^{-1}} E \times_S E \xrightarrow{s} E.$$  

We have the following correspondences between functions and sheaves on $E \times_S E'$.

$$q(e + \alpha^{-1}(e')) \longleftrightarrow f^* \mathcal{L}(q)$$

$$- q'(e') \longleftrightarrow \mathcal{L}(-q')$$

$$q(e) \longleftrightarrow \text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(q)$$

$$\langle e, 2e' \rangle \longleftrightarrow (\text{id} \times [2])^* \mathcal{L}(\langle, \rangle) =: \mathcal{L}(\langle, 2 \rangle).$$

Disposing of this dictionary, the identity (7) gives an isomorphism of sheaves on $E \times_S E'$

$$\text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(q) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle, 2 \rangle) = \text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(-q') \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}(q)).$$

Therefore the stated isomorphism rests on showing that

$$R \text{pr}^*_1 (\text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(-q) \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}(q)) \cong \mathcal{L}(-q') \otimes \pi'' \mathcal{R} \pi ! \mathcal{L}(q).$$

The following diagram is commutative with cartesian squares.

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
E \times_S E' & \xrightarrow{f} & E \\
\downarrow \text{pr}' & & \downarrow \pi \\
E' & \xrightarrow{\alpha^{-1}} & E \\
\downarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \pi' \\
S & & S
\end{array}$$

To see that the right square is cartesian, note that the isomorphism

$$\beta : E \times_S E \rightarrow E \times_S E$$

$$(e_1, e_2) \mapsto (e_1 - e_2, e_2)$$
induces an isomorphism of cartesian squares

$$
\begin{array}{c}
E \times_S E \xrightarrow{pr_1} E \\
\downarrow \beta \quad id \\
E \times_S E \xrightarrow{s} E \\
\downarrow \pi \pi \\
E \xrightarrow{pr_2} S.
\end{array}
$$

By the projection formula and proper base change, we conclude

$$
R \text{pr}_1^!(\text{pr}^* \mathcal{L}(-q) \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}(q)) \simeq \mathcal{L}(-q') \otimes R \text{pr}_1^! f^* \mathcal{L}(q) \simeq \mathcal{L}(-q') \pi'^* R \pi_! \mathcal{L}(q).
$$

(1.2.3.4) Let $p : G \to S$ denote the structure morphism and its various base extensions along $\pi, \pi'$. Let $f = (\text{pr}_G, m)^{-1}$, with transpose $f' = (\text{pr}_G, m')$. The diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
G \times_S E' \xrightarrow{f'} G \times_S E' \\
\downarrow m' \downarrow m
\end{array}
$$

commutes, so that

$$
m'' \mathcal{F}(K) = f'' p^* \mathcal{F}(K) \simeq f'^* \mathcal{F}(p^* K) \simeq \mathcal{F}(f; p^* K).
$$

where in the first isomorphism we have used (1.2.2.9) and in the second (1.2.2.4). The commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
G \times_S E \xrightarrow{f} G \times_S E \\
\downarrow id \downarrow m
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
G \times_S E \xrightarrow{\text{pr}_G, m} G \times_S E \\
\downarrow p \downarrow p
\end{array}
$$

together with the isomorphism $L \sim f_* f^* L = f; f^* L$ for all $L$ in $D_c^b(G \times_S E, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ and the hypothesis $m^* K \simeq M \boxtimes_S L$ let us write

$$
\mathcal{F}(f; p^* K) \simeq \mathcal{F}(m^* K) \simeq \mathcal{F}(M \boxtimes_S L).
$$
Letting \( \text{pr}, \text{pr}' \) denote \( E \xleftrightarrow{\text{pr}} E \times_S E' \xrightarrow{\text{pr}'} E' \) and their base extensions by \( p \), the commutative diagrams below have cartesian diamonds marked.

The projection formula and proper base change find

\[
\mathcal{F}(M \boxtimes L) \simeq R \text{pr}_!(\text{pr}^*(M \boxtimes L) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle))
\]
\[\simeq R \text{pr}_!(\text{pr}^* \pi^* M \otimes \text{pr}^* p^* L \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle))
\]
\[\simeq R \text{pr}_!(\text{pr}^* \pi^* M \otimes \text{pr}^* (\text{pr}^* L \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))
\]
\[\simeq \pi'' M \otimes R \text{pr}_!(p^*(\text{pr}^* L \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle \ , \ \rangle)))
\]
\[\simeq \pi'' M \otimes p^* \mathcal{F}(L) = M \boxtimes_S \mathcal{F}(L).
\]
1.2.3.5. As $E_1 \times_S E' \simeq E_1 \times_{S_1} E'_1 \simeq E \times_S E'_1$, the diagram below has cartesian diamonds.

[Diagram of cartesian diamonds]

In light of the fact that $\mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)$ on $E_1 \times_{S_1} E'_1$ coincides with the inverse image under $f$ of $\mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)$ on $E \times_S E'$, proper base change and the projection formula for $f$ give

$$\mathcal{F}(Rf_{E!}K_1) \simeq R\text{pr}_!(Rf_{E!}\text{pr}_1^*K_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)) \simeq R(\text{pr}' \circ f)_!(\text{pr}'_1 K_1 \otimes f^*\mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle))$$

$$\simeq R(f_{E'} \circ \text{pr}'_1)_!(\text{pr}'_1 K_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)) \simeq Rf_{E'}!\mathcal{F}_1(K_1).$$

1.3.1–1.3.2. I would like to advocate for something of a shortcut through these sections.

**t-exactness of $\mathcal{F}$**. Laumond deduces the t-exactness of $\mathcal{F}$ from the fact that the ‘forget supports’ map is an isomorphism. However, the following direct argument (lifted from the appendix to the reprinted Astérisque 100) is immediate. As in [the remark to the note to (1.2.2.1)](http://example.com/remark), $\mathcal{F}_{\psi^{-1}} \circ \mathcal{F}_\psi(K) = K(-r)$. As $\mathcal{F}_\psi$ is the composition of exact functors $\text{pr}_*^*[n]$, $\mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)$ and the left t-exact functor $\text{pr}_1$ (BBD 4.1.2), it is left t-exact. But it is also left adjoint to its inverse, and this inverse is also left t-exact since up to a Tate twist it coincides with $\mathcal{F}_{\psi^{-1}}$. Therefore $\mathcal{F}_\psi$ is also right t-exact (BBD 1.3.17 (iii)).

‘Forget supports’. The theorem (1.3.1.1) in Laumon’s paper states that for all $K$ in $D^b_c(E, \bar{Q}_\ell)$, the ‘forget supports’ map

$$R \text{pr}_1'(pr^* K \otimes \mathcal{L}(\langle , \rangle)) \to R \text{pr}_1'(pr^* K \otimes \mathcal{L}'(\langle , \rangle))$$
is an isomorphism. Laumon refers the reader to his paper with Katz, where they give an involved geometric proof that ends up yielding more. But Verdier gave the first proof of this isomorphism, and his proof is very short and completely formal. It can be found in Katz’s 1988 Séminaire Bourbaki talk ‘Travaux de Laumon.’

As for the proof of (1.3.2.1), surely the stated isomorphism should read

\[ R\mathcal{H}om(F, \pi'^1 L) \simeq R\text{pr}^\ast_r (R\mathcal{H}om(K, \pi^1 L) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{\psi^{-1}}(\langle , \rangle)). \]

1.4.1.

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
A \times A' & \xrightarrow{pr'} & A' \\
\downarrow \alpha \times \alpha' & & \downarrow \alpha' \\
D \times D' & \xrightarrow{pr'} & D'
\end{array} \]

\[ \alpha'_! \mathcal{F}(K) = R\text{pr}^\ast_r (\alpha \times \alpha')_! (\text{pr}^* K \otimes \mathcal{L}(xx'))[1] \]
\[ = R\text{pr}^\ast_r (\langle \alpha \times \alpha' \rangle; \text{pr}^* K \otimes \mathcal{L}(xx'))[1] \]
\[ = R\text{pr}^\ast_r (\text{pr}^* \alpha \otimes \mathcal{L}(xx'))[1]. \]

1.4.2. On a curve \( X \) with \( j : U \hookrightarrow X \) a dense smooth open with complement \( F \) and \( A \) a lisse sheaf on \( U \), \( A[1] \) is perverse on \( U \) and Verdier’s formula \([\text{BBD}] 2.2.4\) gives


The simple perverse sheaves on a curve come as (a) \( i_* \) of an irreducible \( \overline{Q}_\ell \)-sheaf on a closed point or (b) from \( j_! A[1] \) of an irreducible sheaf on a dense open. \((T_1)\) takes care of (a), but we must verify that a \( K \) of type (b) is either \((T_2)\) or \((T_3)\). Given a \( K \) of type \((T_2)\),

\[ K|\overline{A} = (\text{pr}_{\overline{A}})_* (\mathcal{L}(x, \vec{s}') \otimes \text{pr}_{\vec{s}'}^* F')[1] \]

where \( \vec{s}' \) denotes the geometric fiber of \( s' \), a discrete set on which \( F' \) is a constant sheaf, so that \( K|\overline{A}[-1] \) has all of its constituents (as a lisse sheaf \([\text{Weil II}] 1.1.6]\)) isomorphic to \( \mathcal{L}(x, a') \) for some \( a' \in \overline{k} \).

**Lemma.** — Suppose \( K = j_! F[1] = j_* F[1] \) for \( F \) irreducible lisse on dense \( U \subset A \), and \( K = \mathcal{F}'(K') \), where \( K' = j'_! F'[1], F' \) irreducible lisse on dense \( U' \subset A' \). Then \( K \) is \((T_3)\).
Proof. — Let \( \varepsilon \) denote \( \text{Spec} \overline{k} \to \text{Spec} k \) and its various extensions. The constituents of \( \varepsilon^*K' \) coincide with \( j'_+[1] \) of the constituents of the lisse sheaf \( \varepsilon^*F' \) (exact sequences of lisse sheaves give rise to distinguished triangles concentrated in degree 0, apply triangulated functor \( j'_+[1] \) followed by \( {}^pH^0 \)); in particular they are all of type (b). As \( \mathcal{F} \) induces an equivalence of perverse sheaves on \( A \) and \( A' \), \( \mathcal{F} \) is \textit{a fortiori} exact (likewise for \( \mathcal{F}' \)), so that the constituents of \( \varepsilon^*K' \) coincide with those of \( \mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{F}'(\varepsilon^*K') \); in particular, they are still of type (b), and this implies that none of the constituents of \( \mathcal{F}'(\varepsilon^*K') \) are of type (T). As the formation of Fourier transform commutes with any base change (1.2.2.9), this implies the same for the constituents of \( \varepsilon^*\mathcal{F}'(K') = \varepsilon^*K \); i.e. that none are isomorphic to \( L_{x}^\times \cdot a \cdot j_{U}^{-1} \cdot 1 \cdot \bar{k} \) for some \( a \in \bar{k} \). In light of \([\text{BBD}, 4.3.2]\) or the lemma in \( \text{the note to 4.3.2 below} \), which says that if \( F \) is a lisse sheaf on a normal connected curve, the unit of adjunction \( F \to j_*j^*F \) is an isomorphism, this implies that \( K \) is of type (T): if \( \varepsilon^*F \) had a constituent isomorphic to \( L_{x}^\times \cdot a \cdot j_{U}^{-1} \cdot 1 \cdot \bar{k} \), by the above \( \varepsilon^*K \) would have a constituent isomorphic to \( j_*(L(x.a')|\overline{U})[1] \approx L(x.a')[1] \), where \( j = \varepsilon^*j_* : \overline{U} \leftrightarrow \overline{A} \). \( \Box \)

Corollary. — \( \mathcal{F} \) exchanges \( (T_3) \) and \( (T'_3) \).

Proof. — Given a simple perverse sheaf \( K' \) of type \( (T'_3) \), \( \mathcal{F}'(K') \) is simple and is not \( (T_1) \) by (1.4.2.1 (i)), therefore must be of type (b); i.e. \( \mathcal{F}'(K) \) satisfies the hypotheses of the lemma, so is \( (T_3) \). \( \Box \)

Corollary (Dichotomy). — An irreducible lisse \( \overline{Q}_L \)-sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on a dense open \( U \leftrightarrow A \)

(\( \alpha \) has every constituent of \( \varepsilon^*\mathcal{F} \) isomorphic to \( L(x.a')|\overline{U} \) for various \( a' \in \bar{k} \), or
(\( \beta \) has no constituent of \( \varepsilon^*\mathcal{F} \) isomorphic to \( L(x.a')|\overline{U} \), for any \( a' \in \bar{k} \).

Remark. In analogy with the Fourier transform on function spaces on \( \mathbb{R} \),

\[ L^2(\mathbb{R}) \leftrightarrow (T_3) \]

point masses \( \leftrightarrow (T_1) \).

Remark. It is tempting to observe that if we were in the abelian category of constructible sheaves (perverse of perversity \( p = 0 \)) shifted by 1, of course \( j!A \leftrightarrow j_*A \),
although in the category of perverse sheaves for the middle perversity, \( j_*A[1] \) is simple. In this category,

\[
\ker(j_1A[1] \rightarrow j_*A[1]) = i_*H^0i^*Rj_*A = i_*R^1i^!j_*A
\]

placed in degree 0,

where \( i \) denotes the immersion of the complement [BBD 4.1.2]. The point is that although \( i^!j_*A = 0 \), \( R^1i^!j_*A \) vanishes iff \( j_*A \) extends to a lisse sheaf on \( X \). Assuming it doesn’t, \( j_*A[1] \) is not simple, as it admits a nontrivial subobject \( i_*p^!H^0Ri^!j_*A[1] =: i_*p^!j_*A[1] \); this is nothing other than \( i_*R^1i^!j_*A \) placed in degree 0, and coincides with the largest sub-object of \( j_*A[1] \) in the essential image (via \( p^!i_* \)) of the category of perverse sheaves on \( S \) (for the middle perversity – this is simply the category of constructible sheaves on the finite set \( S \)) [BBD 1.4.25].

2.1.1. A first curiosity: are the conventions (0.3) en rigeur? Evidently \( T \) isn’t essentially of finite type over \( k \), but perhaps it is implicit that it is the spectrum of a ring ind-étale over a \( k \)-algebra of finite type. Does the inclusion \( k\{\pi\} \subset R \subset k[[\pi]] \) require that \( k \subset R \) by assumption, or as in the complete case, does a coefficient field exist automatically for \( R \)? The answer is that we must assume that \( k \subset R \), as the following stupid example shows.

Let \( k_1 = F_q(t), A_1 := k_1[\pi](\pi) \), the local ring at 0 of \( \mathbb{A}^1_{k_1} \), and put

\[
A_n := A_1[\pi]/(\pi^n - (\pi + t))
\]

\[
A := \lim_{n \to \infty} A_n.
\]

For each \( n \), \( A_n \) is a d.v.r. with uniformizer \( \pi \). For \( m < n \) the map goes \( x_m \mapsto x_n^{p^{-m}} \). Let \( A^h \) denote the henselization of \( A \); both \( A \) and \( A^h \) have the perfect closure \( k_1^{p^{-\infty}} \) of \( k_1 \) as residue field, but neither contain \( k_1^{p^{-\infty}} \).

Remark. As a partial converse, if \( A \) is an excellent henselian d.v.r. with perfect residue field, then its completion \( \hat{A} \) contains a canonical coefficient field, and Artin’s approximation theorem gives that \( A \) contains a coefficient field.

As \( R \) is equicharacteristic, the inertia admits this simple description; c.f. [note to Weil II, 1.7.11]
One must always repair to *Corps Locaux* Ch. IV for the ultra-mystical ‘upper numbering’ filtration on $I$. In Proposition 3 of §1, it is claimed that $s(f) - f$ has all its coefficients divisible by $s(y) - y$. If we let $\mathfrak{p}_{K'}$ denote the maximal ideal of $A_{K'}$, the definition of $i_{G/H}$ means that $s(y) - y$ is of order $i_{G/H}(s)$ in $A_{K'}$; i.e. $(s(y) - y) = \mathfrak{p}_{K'}^{i_{G/H}(s)}$. Lemma 1 then shows that all the coefficients of $s(f) - f$ have order $\geq i_{G/H}(s)$, hence are divisible by $s(y) - y$.

In light of *Corps Locaux* IV §3 Prop. 14 & Rmk. 1, if $L/K$ is an infinite Galois extension with Galois group $G$, one defines $G^v := \lim_{\longleftarrow} G(L'/K)^v$ as $L'$ runs over the set of finite Galois sub-extensions of $L$. This description shows that $G^v$ is a compact subgroup of $G$, hence closed in $G$, hence also in the compact open subgroup $I = G_0 = G^0$, (provided of course $v \geq 0$). It also shows that $G^v$ is normal, as it is a projective limit of the normal groups $G(L'/K)^v$ (*Corps Locaux* IV Prop. 1). Left continuity

$$G^v = \bigcap_{w < v} G^w$$

amounts to the statement that if $s \in G$ is not in $G^v$, then $s \notin G^w$ for some $w < v$. An element $s \in G$ belongs to $G^v$ if for every finite Galois subextension $L \supset L' \supset K$ with $\text{Gal}(L'/K) = H$, $i_{G/H}(s) \geq \psi(v)$, so it will suffice to show that if there is some $L'$ as above with $i_{G/H}(s) < \psi(v)$, then there is some $w < v$ such that $i_{G/H}(s) < \psi(w)$. As $\psi$ is continuous and increasing, this is trivial.

Laumon considers the induced filtration on $I = G_0 = G^0$. The filtration is separated,

$$\bigcap_{\lambda \geq 0} I^{(\lambda)} = \{1\},$$

as the same is true for $G/H$ for every normal open subgroup $H$ of $G$ (*Corps Locaux* IV Prop. 1).

It’s clear that $I^{(\lambda +)} \subset I^{(\lambda)}$ as $I^{(\lambda)}$ is closed. But why $I^{(0 +)} = P$? On the level of a finite Galois extension $L'$ of $K$, *Corps Locaux* IV §2 explains that over a perfect field of characteristic $p$, $G_1$ is a $p$-group and the quotient $G_0/G_1$ is sent isomorphically by the inertia character to a subgroup of the group of roots of unity of the residue field of $\overline{L'}$; this is the tame inertia, and $G_1$ is the wild inertia. It is necessary to switch to the upper numbering filtration in order for the filtration to play well with quotients, and
as the index \((G_0 : G_1)\) increases (corresponding to more tame inertia in the extension \(L'\)), \(q(1)\) approaches 0 from the right. This means that (provided the maximal tamely ramified extension of \(K\) is not finite over \(K_r\), the maximal unramified extension of \(K\)) for every \(\varepsilon > 0\) and \(s \in I^{(0+\varepsilon)}\) there exists an extension \(L'\) of \(K\) with \(1/(G_0 : G_1) < \varepsilon\), so that \(s \notin G_1\), \(G := \text{Gal}(L'/K)\). So \(P\) coincides with the completion of \(\cup I^{(0+\varepsilon)}\), which coincides with the closure of \(\cup I^{(0+\varepsilon)}\) in \(I\).

2.1.2. (2.1.2.2) The kernel of the representation of \(P\) is closed and of finite index, hence open, hence by \textit{Corps Locaux} IV Prop 14. & Prop. 1, \(I^{(\lambda)}\) acts trivially for \(\lambda = 0\). The corollary (2.1.2.3) is Maschke’s theorem. In the definition of \textit{pente}, \(R_r := R_{\geq 0}\), and \(\lambda\) may equal 0; \(\lambda = 0\) iff \(W\) is trivial. If \(H\) denotes the kernel of the representation \(P \rightarrow \text{GL}(V)\), then \(P/H\) is a finite group and \((P/H)^\nu = P^\nu H/H\) (\textit{Corps Locaux} IV Prop. 14). The slope \(\lambda\) coincides with the largest real number \(\nu\) such that \((P/H)^\nu = \{1\}\); in the vocabulary of \textit{Corps Locaux} IV §3 Rmk. 1, this is the largest break in the filtration on \(P/H\). The canonical slope decomposition (2.1.2.4) of \(V\) is a decomposition as \(I\)- or \(G\)-module since if \(W\) is a simple \(P\)-submodule of \(V\) of slope \(\lambda\) and \(g \in G\), then \(gW\) is still simple as \(P\)-module and still of slope \(\lambda\), as the groups \(I^\nu\) are normal subgroups of \(G\), for all \(\nu \geq 0\). Therefore \(V_\lambda\) is preserved by \(G\).

(2.1.2.8) To see that \(L_\psi(1/\pi)\) has slope 1, it will suffice to show that if \(\Gamma := \text{Gal}(\eta'/\eta)\), then \(\Gamma = \Gamma_1\) and \(\Gamma_2 = \{1\}\). It would follow that \(\varphi(1) = 1\) for this extension so that \(\Gamma^1 = \Gamma_1 = \Gamma\) and \(\Gamma^{1+\varepsilon} = \{1\}\) for all \(\varepsilon > 0\). With the criterion of \textit{Corps Locaux} IV §2 Prop. 5, it would suffice to show that for all \(s \in \Gamma\),

\[
\frac{s(\pi')}{\pi'} \equiv 1 \mod (\pi') \quad s(\pi')/\pi' \neq 1 \mod (\pi')^2. 
\]

As \(s(\pi')/\pi' = 1/(1 + \alpha\pi')\) for \(\alpha \in F_p\),

\[
\frac{s(\pi')}{\pi'} \equiv 1 - \alpha\pi' \mod (\pi')^2. 
\]

2.1.4. Schur’s lemma gives that every simple tame \(I\)-module has rank 1. The action of \(\text{Gal}(\bar{k}/k)\) on \(\hat{Z}(1)(\bar{K})\) by inner automorphisms coincides with the action of Galois on roots of unity; c.f. \textit{Stacks tag 0BU5}.
2.1.5. The equivalence of the three conditions can be seen as follows: (i) trivially implies (ii) and (iii) as $V^I$ (resp. $V_I$) is the largest subobject (resp. quotient) on which $I$ acts trivially. The decomposition $V = \oplus V_\lambda$ permits us to assume $V = V_\lambda$. If $\lambda > 0$, then by definition $V^I_\lambda = 0$ and moreover $P$ acts nontrivially. Restricting the action of $P$ to a simple $P$-submodule $W$ of $V_\lambda$, one finds $W_P = 0$, hence $(V_\lambda)_P = 0$ and a fortiori $(V_\lambda)_I = 0$. Moreover, $V_\lambda$ has no nontrivial subquotient on which $I$ acts trivially, as such a subquotient would be a direct sum of simple $P$-modules of slope $\lambda$, so (i), (ii), and (iii) are automatically verified and we consider $V = V_0$, a tame $G$-module. The existence of a geometrically constant subquotient of $V$ as $G$-module implies the same as $I$-module, and therefore we need only show that (ii) $\iff$ (iii) and the combination implies that there exists no $I$-module subquotient of the tame $I$-module $V$. As $T := I/P \cong \hat{Z}(1)(\bar{k})$ is procyclic with topological generator, say, $t$, and the representation $V$ of $T$ is continuous,

$$0 \to V^T \to V \overset{t-1}{\to} V \to V_T \to 0$$

is exact, and shows that $V^T = 0 \iff V_T = 0$. Given $T$-submodules

$$V = V_0 \supset V_1 \supset V_2 \supset 0,$$

$V^T_1 = 0 \Rightarrow (V_1)_T = 0$ for each $i$, so if $V_1/V_2$ is $T$-invariant, the quotient $V_1 \to V_1/V_2$ factors through $(V_1)_T = 0$, and $V_1/V_2 = 0$. So, $V$ has no $T$-invariant subquotient.

Duality $V \mapsto V^\vee$ sends $\mathcal{F}(0,\infty]$ into itself as $(V^\vee)^I = (V_1)^\vee$.

2.2.1. Of course, the various functions are extended additively with sign, so that e.g. for a perverse sheaf $K$ on $X$, $s_x(K) \leq 0$ for $x \in |X|$.

(2.2.1.1) Let $x \overset{i}{\to} X \overset{j}{\longleftarrow} X - x$. There is a distinguished triangle ($i^! = Ri^!$ etc.)

$$i^!K \to i^*K \to i^*j_*j^*K \to$$

As $K$ is perverse, $\mathcal{H}^{-1}(i^!K) = 0$ and $\mathcal{H}^j(j^*K) = 0$ for $j \neq -1$. Representing $j^*K$ by a complex $I$ of injectives in degrees $\geq -1$

$$0 \to \cdots \to 0 \to L_{-1} \overset{d_{-1}}{\to} I_0 \to I_1 \to \cdots$$
we have \( \mathcal{H}^{-1}(j^*K) = \ker d^{-1} \). As \( j_* \) is left exact,
\[
\mathcal{H}^{-1}(j_* j^*K) = \mathcal{H}^{-1}(j_*I) = \ker j_*(d^{-1}) = j_*(\ker d^{-1}) = j_* \mathcal{H}^{-1}(j^*K) = j_* j^* \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K),
\]
so that
\[
0 \to i^* \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K) \to i^* j_*(j^* \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K))
\]
is exact, proving \( \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)_\pi \subset j_* (j^* \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K))_\pi \) and the inequality \( r(K) \leq r_\chi(K) \), as \( r(\mathcal{H}^0(K)) = 0 \), and showing that \( \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K) \) is lisse at \( x \) iff \( I_x \) acts trivially on \( \mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)_\pi \) iff \( r_\chi(\mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)) = r(\mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)) \); of course \( \mathcal{H}^0(K)_\pi = 0 \) iff \( r_\chi(\mathcal{H}^0(K)) = 0 \). As \( r_\chi(K) = r_\chi(\mathcal{H}^0(K)) - r_\chi(\mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)) \) and \( r(K) = -r(\mathcal{H}^{-1}(K)) \), \( r_\chi(K) \geq r(k) \) with equality iff (i) holds. Of course, \( s_\chi \) measures wild ramification and so (ii)\( \Leftrightarrow \)(iii) trivially. See Reprise.

2.2.2. The tame quotient \( \pi_1(\xi, \xi) \to \pi_1(\xi, \xi)_{\text{mod}} \) has not actually been defined; ‘tame quotient’ in (2.1.1) meant \( I \to I/P \). This tame quotient corresponds to \( G \to G/P \).

(2.2.2.1) It suffices to show \( i_* \to \text{mod} \) is an isomorphism in light of the short exact sequence of \( \pi_1 \) (SGA 1 6.11) which expresses the fundamental group as extension of \( \text{Gal}(k/k) \) by the geometric fundamental group.

(2.2.2.2) This mysterious theorem is found in Katz, Local-to-global extensions of representations of fundamental groups, where he also proves a cohomological formula for the \( \ell \)-adic Swan representation. In light of Reprise below, some cursory analysis of the meaning of this theorem can be made. The discussion doesn’t change if one replaces \( k \) by \( \overline{k} \). First of all, \( \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/k(u)) \) surjects onto \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \overline{\xi}) \), and we can describe the kernel in terms of the monodromy at all geometric closed points of \( G_{m,k} \).

\[
G := \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/k(u)) \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \overline{\xi}) \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \overline{\xi})_{\text{mod,co}} \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \overline{\xi})_{\text{mod}}
\]
With the notation (2.2.1), the kernel of the first map is topologically generated by \( \{I_x\}_{x \in G_{m,k}} \). The kernel of the second map is topologically generated by \( P_\infty \). The kernel of the third map is topologically generated by \( P_0 \). (Both \( P_\infty, P_0 \subset G \).) The injection \( \pi_1(\xi, \overline{\xi}) \hookrightarrow G \) corresponds to the Galois extension \( k(\xi)/k(u) \).
That \( \pi_1(\xi, \bar{\xi}) \) injects into \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.,}\infty} \) corresponds simply to the statement that membership in the latter group puts no condition on the monodromy at 0. An object in the latter Galois category corresponds to a finite cover of \( \mathbb{P}^1 - \{0\} \) which is étale away from \( \infty \) and tamely ramified at infinity. The injection \( \pi_1(\xi, \bar{\xi}) \hookrightarrow \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.,}\infty} \) corresponds to the statement that the constraints on monodromy at all closed points of \( \mathbb{P}^1 \) other than 0 imposed by membership in \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.,}\infty} \) put in effect ‘no constraints’ on the monodromy at 0.

The isomorphism \( \pi_1(\xi \otimes_k \overline{k}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.}} \cong \pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.}} \) is the statement that the Galois category of étale covers of the generic point of \( (A^1_k)_{(0)} \) tamely ramified at the closed point is equivalent to the category of étale covers of \( G_{m,\overline{k}} \) which are tamely ramified at 0 and \( \infty \). The proof given notes that both are isomorphic to \( \hat{\mathbb{Z}}(1)(\overline{k}) \), but this fact for \( G_{m,\overline{k}} \) is not proved in (1.1.3.7), which introduces the Kummer coverings of \( G_{m,\overline{k}} \). What’s needed is Grothendieck’s comparison theorem for curves (SGA 1 XIII 2.12), which immediately shows that the tame fundamental group of \( \mathbb{P}^1_k \) étale over \( A^1_k \) and tame at \( 0 \) and \( \infty \) is trivial (this is the automorphism group of a fiber functor on the Galois category consisting of finite covers of \( \mathbb{P}^1_k \) étale over \( A^1_k \) and tame at \( \infty \)) and that \( \pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, \bar{\xi})_{\text{mod.}} \) is freely generated by a generator of the tame inertia at 0, hence is indeed isomorphic to \( \hat{\mathbb{Z}}(1)(\overline{k}) \). In light of this, we know that the Kummer coverings of (1.1.3.7) do exhaust the set of finite maps to \( \mathbb{P}^1_k \) étale over \( G_{m,\overline{k}} \) and tamely ramified at 0 and \( \infty \).

**Intermezzo I: Katz-Gabber extensions.** The paper is by Katz, *Local-to-global extensions of representations of fundamental groups.*

(1.2.3) En effet, when you pull \( E \) back to \( X \otimes_k K^{\text{sep}} \), the only monodromy is geometric. The map \( \pi_1(X \times K^{\text{sep}}, \overline{x}) \to \text{Aut}(E(\overline{x})) \) is continuous with open kernel \( U \) corresponding to the Galois G-torsor \( Z \), where of course \( G = \pi_1(X \times K^{\text{sep}}, \overline{x})/U \). Pulling back to \( Z \) kills the monodromy on \( E \) (i.e. \( E \) ‘splits’). Now the point is that in the exact sequence \( (\overline{X} := X \times K^{\text{sep}}) \)

\[
e \to \pi_1(\overline{X}, \overline{x}) \to \pi_1(X, \overline{x}) \to \text{Gal}(K^{\text{sep}}/K) \to e,
\]

the surjection is a quotient map, *a fortiori* open. Let \( V \) be defined by the exact sequence

\[
e \to V \to \pi_1(X, \overline{x}) \to \text{Aut}(E(\overline{x})) \to e
\]
and let $V'$ be the image of $V$ in Gal($K^{sep}/K$); $V'$ is open and we let the finite Galois extension $K'$ correspond to any such containing $V'$ and over which $Z$ is defined.

(1.3) A unique $p$-Sylow is the same as a normal $p$-Sylow. A normal $p$-Sylow in a group $G$ is characteristic as it is the unique subgroup with its order (any $p$-subgroup of $G$ is contained in it).

(1.3.2) In proof of 1) $\Rightarrow$ 4), the statement that ‘the unique open normal subgroup of $\pi_1(G_{m,L,\overline{x}})$ of index $N \geq 1$ prime to $p$ is the one corresponding to the Nth power covering $[N]$ of $G_{m,L}$ by itself’ is easily seen: denoting such a subgroup by $U$, $U$ corresponds to a finite étale connected torsor $T$ with group $\pi_1(G_{m,L,\overline{x}})/U$, and the homomorphism from this group into the group opposite $\text{Aut } T = \text{Aut } T(\overline{x})$ is an isomorphism $[\text{SGA1}, 5.11]$. So $T$ is a cover of $G_{m,L}$ tamely ramified at 0 and $\infty$ since $p \nmid |\text{Aut } T(\overline{x})|$, and as in the note to (2.2.2) $\pi_1(G_{m,L,\overline{x}})^{mod} \cong \hat{Z}(1)(L)$, so the statement is obvious.

Given a special $E \to G_{m,K}$, the preimage of the unique $p$-Sylow of the geometric monodromy of $E$ in $\pi_1(G_{m,K^{sep},\overline{x}})$ is an open subgroup with index $N_1$ prime to $p$; by the above claim, $[N_1]^*E$ has geometric monodromy a $p$-group and is still at worst tamely ramified at 0 so that for some $N_2$, $[N_2]^*[N_1]^*E$ extends to an étale cover of $A^1_K$; now let $N = N_1N_2$.

The proof of 4) $\Rightarrow$ 7) is self-evident after you observe that

commutes, since the left composition corresponds to $T \mapsto aT \mapsto aT^N$ as $[N]$ is $K$-linear, while the right composition corresponds to $T \mapsto T^N \mapsto (bT)^N = aT^N$.

(1.4) When Katz writes ‘an action of $G$ on $E$ covering its action on $G_{m,K}$,’ for example, ‘covering’ means, in the language of $[\text{SGA7}, \text{XIII 1.1}]$, ‘compatible with.’ Moreover the action of $G$ on $E$ should be continuous.
In the proof of the main theorem, once reduced to \((N, K') = (1, K)\) over the field \(K'\), there is ‘nothing to prove’ when \(p = 1\) since in this case the words ‘monodromy group a \(p\)-group’ means ‘trivial monodromy group,’ and so putting

\[
\mathcal{A} := \text{category of finite étale coverings of } \mathbb{A}^1_{K'} \text{ with trivial monodromy}, \quad \text{and} \\
\mathcal{B} := \text{category of finite étale coverings of } \text{Spec } K'((T^{-1})) \text{ with trivial monodromy},
\]

both \(\mathcal{A}\) and \(\mathcal{B}\) are isomorphic to the category of finite étale coverings of \(\text{Spec } K'\); in the case of \(\mathcal{A}\), this follows from the exact sequence \((1)\) in light of the fact that \(\pi_1(\mathbb{P}^1_{K'\text{sep}}) = 1\); in the case of \(\mathcal{B}\), this follows from the same exact sequence and the observation that \(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1}))\) is the function field of the strict henselization \(\mathbb{P}^1_\infty\) of \(\mathbb{P}^1_{K'}\) at \(\infty\); in both cases, the condition ‘trivial monodromy’ means that the revêtement étale extends over \(\infty\) (resp. the closed point of the strict henselization), and \(\pi_1(\mathbb{P}^1_{K'\text{sep}}) = 1 = \pi_1(\mathbb{P}^1_\infty)\) as any connected revêtement étale of the spectrum of a strictly henselian ring is trivial.

(1.4.2) If \(R\) is a ring, the idempotents of \(R[[x]]\) are in bijection with those of \(R\), for, given an idempotent \(f \in R[[x]]\), write \(f(x) = r_0 + f_1(x)\) with \(f_1(x)\) a power series with constant term 0; \(r_0\) must be idempotent and if \(f_1(x) \neq 0\) it has a nonzero term of lowest degree, say \(r_n x^n\). Then

\[
r_0 + f_1(x) = f(x) = f(x)^2 = r + 2r_0f_1(x) + f_1(x)^2
\]

so that \(2r_0r_n = r_n\) and therefore also \(2r_0r_n = 2r_0^2r_n = r_0r_n\) so \(r_0r_n = 0\), contradicting \(r_n \neq 0\).

Using this fact, we find that the idempotents of \(R\) are in bijection with those of \(R[T]\); writing \(R((T^{-1})) = R[T][[T^{-1}]]\) finds that the idempotents of \(R((T^{-1}))\) are in bijection with those of \(R[T]\) and so also with those of \(R\).

(1.4.4) It’s helpful to recall Arcata II (2.1).

(1.4.5) To see \(\mathcal{P}\) is surjective on \(T^{-1}R[[T^{-1}]]\), pick a power series in \(T^{-1}\) with no constant term \(b = \sum_{i>0} b_i T^{-i}\). To hit \(b\) with an element \(c\) of \(T^{-1}R[[T^{-1}]]\), we proceed in the usual way: given \(b\) at step \(i > 0\) with \(b_j = 0\) for \(j < i\) and \(c_1, \ldots, c_j\) already fixed, put \(c_i := b_i\) and replace \(b\) by \(b - \mathcal{P}(c_i T^{-i})\). Then \(c := \sum_{i>0} c_i T^{-i}\) has \(\mathcal{P}(c) = b\).
(1.4.6) Recall Serre, *Cohomologie Galoisienne* 2.3 Prop. 8 for
\[ H^r(\lim_i G_i, \lim_i A_i) = \lim_i H^r(G_i, A_i). \]

(1.4.8) As tensor product commutes with colimits, the assertion about \( K^{\text{sep}} \otimes_K K((T^{-1})) \) is clear from the isomorphism \( K' \otimes_K K((T^{-1})) \to K'((T^{-1})) \) which in turn follows from the basic fact that a finitely generated module \( M \) over a noetherian local ring \( A \) with maximal ideal \( \mathfrak{m} \) has \( \hat{M} = M \otimes_A \hat{A} \) for the \( \mathfrak{m} \)-adic topology; in our case \( A = K[T^{-1}], M = K'[T^{-1}] \), and the isomorphism of fields above is the statement over the generic fiber; i.e.
\[
K' \otimes_K K[[T^{-1}]] = K'[T^{-1}] \otimes_{K[T^{-1}]} K[[T^{-1}]] \to K'[[T^{-1}]] \quad \text{and}
\]
\[
K' \otimes_K K((T^{-1})) = K'[T^{-1}] \otimes_{K[T^{-1}]} K((T^{-1})) \to K'((T^{-1})).
\]
We see that the field \( K'((T^{-1})) \) is the fraction field of the henselian d.v.r. \( K'[[T^{-1}]] \) and the colimit of henselian local rings along local ring homomorphisms is henselian local, it suffices to observe that the colimit is also along étale, *a fortiori* unramified ring maps that the colimit is a henselian a d.v.r.

That the fraction field of a henselian d.v.r. has the same Galois theory as that of its completion is a result of Berkovich—[c.f. proof of the lemma in note to (2.4.1)] This fact can also be obtained from the structure we have found for the Galois group: the unramified and tame parts are identical, and the free pro-p quotients can be shown to be mapped isomorphically: it amounts to showing that the map on étale \( H^1(-, \mathbb{Z}/p) \) from the (spectra of the) maximal pro-p Galois extension of \( K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})) \) to that of \( K^{\text{sep}} \otimes_K K((T^{-1})) \) is an isomorphism.

(1.4.10) The point is that the map of \( \pi_1 \)'s of (1.4.7) factors as
\[
\pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (tame \ at \ 0) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (special)
\]
by functoriality of the inverse image. This composite is an isomorphism and its inverse, preceded by the (tame-at-0)-to-(special) quotient, provides the retraction. Why is the retraction unique? Identifying \( \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)) \) with its image under the canonical injection, retractions are in bijection with complements to \( \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)): \)

\[
\pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (tame \ at \ 0) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (special)
\]
by functoriality of the inverse image. This composite is an isomorphism and its inverse, preceded by the (tame-at-0)-to-(special) quotient, provides the retraction. Why is the retraction unique? Identifying \( \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)) \) with its image under the canonical injection, retractions are in bijection with complements to \( \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)): \)

\[
\pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}((T^{-1})), \bar{x}_1)) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (tame \ at \ 0) \to \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{\text{sep}}, \bar{y}_1)) (special)
\]
closed normal subgroups \( N \) of \( \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0) \) such that

\[
N \cap \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{sep}((T^{-1})), \overline{x}_1)) = \{1\} \quad \text{and} \quad N \cdot \pi_1(\text{Spec}(K^{sep}((T^{-1})), \overline{x}_1)) = \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0).
\]

Recall that \( \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(special) \) is the maximal pro-\('\group\) with unique \( p \)-Sylow subgroup\' quotient of \( \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0) \). In the language of Profinite Groups by Ribes & Zalesskii, the class \( \mathcal{C} \) of finite groups with unique \( p \)-Sylow subgroup is a \textit{variety} of finite groups, hence \textit{a fortiori} a \textit{formation} of finite groups. Putting

\[
R_\mathcal{C} := \bigcap \{ N : N \text{ open normal subgroup of } \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0), \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0)/N \in \mathcal{C} \},
\]

(3.4) of \textit{op. cit.} says that \( R_\mathcal{C} \) is a characteristic subgroup, the sequence

\[
1 \to R_\mathcal{C} \to \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0) \to \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(special) \to 1
\]

is exact, and given any closed normal subgroup \( K \) of \( \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0) \) such that \( \pi_1(G_{m, K^{sep}}, \overline{y}_1)(tame \ at \ 0)/K \) is pro-\( \mathcal{C} \), then \( K \) is a subgroup of \( R_\mathcal{C} \). This last point implies that the only \( N \) as above is \( R_\mathcal{C} \), hence the retraction is unique.

Since specialness is geometric, the following diagram of profinite groups and continuous homomorphisms is commutative with exact rows and columns (compare 1.3.3).
In more words, clearly the kernel of the tame-to-special quotient for $K$ contains that for $K^{\text{sep}}$ (the functor of restriction to geometric monodromy corresponds to the functor ‘reciprocal image along $\text{Spec } K^{\text{sep}} \to \text{Spec } K$’); to see it is no larger, note that the special coverings of $G_{m,K_i}$ are special coverings of $G_{m,K}$ for all Galois extensions $K_i$ of $K$; therefore an element of the kernel must fix all the special coverings of $G_{m,K_i}$ for each $i$, and $K^{\text{sep}} = \bigcup_i K_i$.

This diagram implies the uniqueness of the retraction for $K$ restricting to the given one for $K^{\text{sep}}$. In more words, as before, retractions of

$$\pi_1(G_{m,K}, \bar{y}_1)(\text{tame at 0}) \to \pi_1(G_{m,K}, \bar{y}_1)(\text{special})$$

are in bijection with closed normal subgroups $N$ satisfying the same conditions as before with $K^{\text{sep}}$ replaced by $K$ and $\bar{x}_1$ replaced by $\bar{x}$. The condition that the retraction must restrict to the given one for $K^{\text{sep}}$ implies that $N$ must contain $R_{\bar{e}}$. But as seen in the diagram above, $N = R_{\bar{e}}$. Therefore, as before, there is only one possible choice for $N$.

(1.6.4) Finitely presented since constructible – Th. finitude.

(1.6.6) See Katz, *Gauss Sums, Kloosterman Sums, and Monodromy Groups* (2.1.1) & (2.3.3).

(1.6.8) There are 3 claims to verify: (1) that the isomorphism class of a projective $\mathbb{Z}_l[G]$-module can be deduced by character; (2) that $\chi(A_{K}^1, -) = \chi_c(A_{K}^1, -)$, and (3) that $\chi_c(G_{m,K}, \mathcal{F}_{\text{can}}) = - \text{swan}_\infty(\mathcal{F})$.


$$R_K(G) \times R_K(G) \to \mathbb{Z}.$$
and (14.6) shows that it is compatible with extension of field $K \subset K'$, which induces an injection $R_K(G) \rightarrow R_{K'}(G)$. Over a large enough field (e.g. the algebraic closure of $K$), the above bilinear form is nondegenerate and induces an isomorphism of $R_K(G)$ onto its dual. The identity

$$\text{Hom}_G(E, F) \cong \check{E} \otimes_G F$$

and the fact that the Swan representation is self-dual [SGA5, Exp. X (3.8) & (4.4)] show that indeed it suffices to show that

$$\dim_{\mathbb{Q}_l}(H^1(A^1_K, j^! \mathcal{F}^\text{can})) = \text{swan}_{\infty}(\mathcal{F}),$$

where the latter is the Swan conductor $b(M)$ of Serre (19.3), in light of the isomorphism

$$H^1(A^1_K, j^!((\text{Reg}_G Z^l)_{[G]}^\text{can})) \otimes_{Z^l[G]} M \cong H^1(A^1_K, j^! \mathcal{F}^\text{can}).$$

(2) The equality $\chi(X, \mathcal{F}) = \chi_c(X, \mathcal{F})$ for a proper smooth curve $X$ over an algebraically closed field $k$ was proven by Grothendieck [SGA5, Exp. X (7.12)], and later by Laumon for any $X$ separated and finite type over $k$ algebraically closed in his 1981 article *Comparaison de caractéristiques d’Euler-Poincaré en cohomologie $l$-adique*.

(3) The formula $\chi_c(G_{m, k}, \mathcal{F}^\text{can}) = - \text{swan}_{\infty}(\mathcal{F})$ can be deduced from the Grothendieck-Ogg-Šavarevič formula as appears in Laumon (2.2.1.2). Laumon’s Swan conductor coincides with Serre’s Swan conductor $b(M)$ after passing from upper to lower numbering

$$s(M) = \sum_{\lambda \in \Lambda(M)} \lambda \cdot r(V_\lambda) = \int_0^\infty \text{codim } M^G_{\lambda} d\lambda = \int_0^\infty \text{codim } M^G_{r} \frac{d r}{[G_0 : G_r]} = \sum_{i=1}^{\infty} \text{codim } M^G_{i} \frac{d r}{[G_0 : G_i]} = b(M).$$

Incidentally, if $a(M)$ denotes the Artin conductor, putting

$$t(M) := \int_{-1}^{0} \text{codim } M^G_{\lambda} d\lambda = \int_{-1}^{0} \text{codim } M^G_{r} \frac{d r}{[G_0 : G_r]} = \text{codim } M^G_{0} = \text{codim } M^{\infty}$$

allows us to write $a(M) = t(M) + s(M)$, expressing the Artin conductor as the sum of the tame conductor $t(M)$ and the Swan (or wild) conductor $s(M)$. 
2.3.1. (2.3.1.1) The negative sign before $\chi_e$ is due to the shift $[1]$ in the formula for Fourier transform. The contribution in the formula of Grothendieck-Ogg-Šafarevič from $a_\infty(K)$ is $r(K) - s(F_{\eta_\infty} \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.s')_{\eta_\infty})$ and of course $r_\infty(K') = 0$ as our $K$ on $\mathbf{P}^1$ is obtained as extension by zero of $K$ on $A$. The Swan conductor $s_\infty$ doesn’t care about the stalk of $K$ at $\infty$ but only about the restriction of $K$ to the generic point $\eta_\infty$ of the henselian trait $(\mathbf{P}^1_K)_{(\infty)}$. As $\mathcal{L}$ is locally constant on $A$, $a_s(K \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.s')) = a_s(K)$ for $s \in S$.

To understand $\mathcal{L}(x.a')_{\eta_\infty}$ when $a' \neq 0$, let’s again write the Artin-Schreier covering

$$0 \rightarrow F_p \rightarrow G_{a,k} \xrightarrow{t^p - t} G_{a,k} \rightarrow 0.$$ 

The induced map $k[t_1] \rightarrow k[t_2]$ on coordinate rings is $t_1 \mapsto t_2^p - t_2$, as can be readily seen by remembering what $F^*$ and $+ 0$ do on the coordinate ring of $G_{a,k}$. The Artin-Schreier sheaf $\mathcal{A}$ is the sheaf of local sections of this covering. It is an $F_p$-torsor on $G_{a,k} = \text{Spec } k[t_1]$. As the above map on coordinates makes $\mathcal{L}$ locally constant on $A$, it is conceptually easier to keep working with $\mathcal{A}$. The pullback of $\mathcal{A}$ to $A$ via $A \times A' \rightarrow A \times A' \rightarrow G_a$ corresponds to the revêtément étale of $A = \text{Spec } k[x]$ given by $\text{Spec } k[x,t]/(t^p - t - xa')$, this is the one-parameter family of Artin-Schreier coverings

$$t^p - t = xa', \quad a' \in \bar{k}.$$ 

Let $\mathbf{F} = \bar{F}_p$. Given $x \in A(\mathbf{F})$, $x' \in A'(\mathbf{F})$, we can consider $x, x'$ as elements of $F_q$, for some $q = p^n$, $\mathcal{L}(xx') = \psi^{-1}(N_{F_q/F_p}(xx'))$. When $k$ is merely a perfect field of characteristic $p$, $\mathcal{L}(x.a')$ corresponds to the push of the above $F_p$-torsor $\mathcal{A}$ by $\psi^{-1} : F_p \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}_p^\times$. The sheaf $\mathcal{A}$ corresponds to the representation of $\text{Gal}(\eta'/\eta)$ discussed in the note to (2.1.2.8); likewise $\mathcal{L}(x.a')_{\eta_\infty}$ corresponds to $L_{\eta}(1/xa')$; here $xa'$ corresponds to $\pi$ and indeed $1/xa'$ is a uniformizer for the strictly henselian trait $(\mathbf{P}^1_K)_{(\infty)}$. So $\mathcal{L}(x.a')_{\eta_\infty}$ has slope 1.

If there is an $a'_1 \in \bar{k}$ such that

$$((F_{\eta_\infty})_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.a'_{1})_{\eta_\infty})_{(1)} \neq 0,$$
then for all $a'_2 \neq a'_1 \in \overline{k}$,
\[
((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.a'_2)_{\overline{\eta}_0})^{(i)} = ((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.a'_1)_{\overline{\eta}_0} \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.(a'_2 - a'_1))_{\overline{\eta}_0})^{(i)} = 0,
\]
as $\mathcal{L}(x.(a'_2 - a'_1))_{\overline{\eta}_0}$ has slope 1.

Formula (i): in light of the above discussion, (2.1.2.7) gives that for almost all $a' \in \overline{k}$,
\[
s(F_{\overline{\eta}_0} \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.a')_{\overline{\eta}_0}) = r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[0,1]} + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1) + s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[1,\infty]}).
\]
By (2.2.1.1), $r(K') = r_{s'}(K')$ for all but the finitely many $s' \in S'$. Combining these two facts with the Grothendieck-Ogg-Šafarevič formula for $r_{s'}(K')$ gives
\[
r(K') = r(F_{\overline{\eta}_0}) + \sum_{s \in S} \deg(s).a_s(K) - (r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[0,1]} + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1) + s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[1,\infty]}))
\]
\[
= \sum_{s \in S} \deg(s).a_s(K) + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[1,\infty]}) - s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[1,\infty]}).
\]

The difference between formulæ (i) and (ii) is in $s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.s')_{\overline{\eta}_0})$; in the generic formula (i) we could discard the finitely many geometric points of $A'$ where this differs from $r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1)$. Therefore,
\[
r_{s'}(K') - r(K') = -s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1 \otimes \mathcal{L}(x.s')_{\overline{\eta}_0}) + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1).
\]
The difference between formulæ (i) and (iii) is that in (i) we applied (2.1.2.7) while in (iii) we cannot, so that
\[
r(K')_{0'} - r(K') = -s(F_{\overline{\eta}_0}) + (r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[0,1]} + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_1) + s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[1,\infty]}))
\]
\[
= -s((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[0,1]} + r((F_{\overline{\eta}_0})_{[0,1]}).
\]

**Intermezzo II: SGA 7 Exposé XIII.** §1 In the definition of a compatible action of $G$ on a sheaf of sets $\mathcal{F}$ on $\overline{Y}$, to an étale $a : U \to \overline{Y}$ and $g \in G$ we must associate an isomorphism
\[
\overline{Y} \times_{u(g),a} U \cong U \xrightarrow{u(g)} U \xrightarrow{a} \overline{Y} \xrightarrow{\sigma(g)(U)} \mathcal{F}(U \xrightarrow{U} U \xrightarrow{a} \overline{Y} \xrightarrow{\sigma(g)(U)} \mathcal{F}(U \xrightarrow{a} \overline{Y})
so as to induce morphisms of sheaves $\sigma(g) : u(g)^* \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{F}$ in a compatible way so that $\sigma(g h) = \sigma(g) \sigma(h)$. In effect, there is an obvious choice: $\mathcal{F}(u(g))$, and this choice explains why, given $\mathcal{G}$ on $Y$, the action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k)$ on $\mathcal{G}$ by transport of structure is compatible with the action of the same group on $\overline{Y}$ (action ‘by transport of structure’ means the above action). A priori the compatible action of $G$ on $\mathcal{F}$ need not even factor through $u$.

(1.2.7) Let $f : S' \to S$ be a surjective morphism of henselian traits. Then $\eta' \mapsto \eta, s' \mapsto s$, and we can choose $\overline{s'}, \overline{s}, \overline{\eta'}, \overline{\eta}$ so that $\overline{s'} \to s$ factors through $\overline{s}$ and likewise $\overline{\eta'} \to \overline{\eta} \to \eta$ so that the diagram below commutes.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
Y \times_s \overline{s'} & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \times_s \overline{s} \\
\downarrow \overline{s'} & & \downarrow \overline{s} \\
Y \times_s s' & \xrightarrow{f} & Y
\end{array}
$$

This implies that for $\mathcal{F}$ a sheaf on $Y$, $f^* \mathcal{F}_{\overline{s}} := f^* \overline{s'}^* \mathcal{F} = \overline{s'}^* f^* \mathcal{F}$, so that $\text{Gal}(\overline{s'}/s')$ acts on $f^* \mathcal{F}_{\overline{s}}$ via the homomorphism

$$
\text{Gal}(\overline{s'}/s') \to \text{Gal}(\overline{s}/s) \quad \text{induced by the restriction of } f \text{ to } s';
$$

likewise, $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta'}/\eta')$ acts on $f^* \mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}$ via the homomorphism

$$
\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta'}/\eta') \to \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta) \quad \text{induced by the restriction of } f \text{ to } \eta'.
$$

(1.3) Typo: $\overline{X} := X \times_S \overline{S}$. Recall that $\overline{S}$ is the normalization of $S$ in $\overline{\eta}$, which is the spectrum of a strictly henselian valuation ring with value group $\mathbb{Q}$ so that the stalk at the closed point of $\overline{S}$ coincides with global sections; its separably closed residue field may be an inseparable extension of $k(s)$, but we take $\overline{s}$ to denote the spectrum of this separably closed field, which can be considered as the closed point of $\overline{S}$ or, by light abuse of notation (0.2.4), as defining a geometric point of $S$.

It is perhaps worth comparing $i^* j_* j^* \overline{\eta}$ with $i' \overline{j}_* \overline{j}^* \overline{\eta}$ in the definition of $\Psi_{\eta}$, Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a sheaf on $Y \to S$; then $\mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}$ carries action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$. In effect, $i^* j_* j^* \mathcal{F}$ is $\mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}^1$, while $i' \overline{j}_* \overline{j}^* \mathcal{F} = \mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}$ endowed with continuous action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$ compatible with the action of the latter on $Y_{\overline{s}}$. In galoisian terms of (1.2.2), this is the observation that $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\overline{\eta}) = \{ e \}$. 

6. TRANSFORMATION DE FOURIER
In (1.3.6.2), the \( \psi \) is omitted on the left hand side because it induces an equivalence (see note to (2.1.8) below). The \( X_s \times_s \eta \)-component of both sides is readily computed from the definitions, keeping in mind that \( \psi \eta \) is a sheaf on \( X_\bar{s} \); namely,

\[
\Psi_\eta(f_*(\mathcal{F})) = i^*j_*(f_*(\mathcal{F})) = i^*j_*\Gamma(X_\bar{\eta}, \mathcal{F}),
\]

which, as \( \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta) \)-module, is simply \( \Gamma(X_\bar{\eta}, \mathcal{F}) \) (sitting on \( \bar{s} \)). With \( f : X_\bar{s} \to \bar{s} \),

\[
f_*\Psi_\eta(\mathcal{F}) = \Gamma(X_\bar{s}, \Psi_\eta(\mathcal{F})).
\]

(1.3.8) The commutativity of \( f \) with change of base does not require that \( f \) be quasi-finite, only separated and locally of finite type \([\text{SGAA}], \text{Exp. XVII 6.1.4}\). The morphism \( f : X_\bar{s} \to \bar{s} \) follows from the definition of \( f \) \([\text{SGAA}], \text{Exp. XVII 6.1.2}\) and the observation that the sections of \( j_*f_* \) over \( X' \) are the sections of \( j_*f_* \) over \( X_\bar{\eta} \) with support proper over \( X'_\bar{\eta} \) while the sections of \( f \bar{j}_* \) are the same, only they must now have support proper over the larger space \( \bar{X}' \). Therefore the map is induced simply by the inclusion \( \bar{\eta} \to \bar{S} \). When \( f \) is finite it is proper and all these maps are isomorphisms.

(1.3.9) Commute with direct image \( \rightsquigarrow \) \([\text{SGAA}], \text{Exp. XVIII 3.1.12.3}\].

\[
i^*f^! \to f^!i^* \rightsquigarrow \text{[SGAA], Exp. XVIII 3.1.14.2].}
\]

(1.3.10) The definition of this arrow is clarified with a diagram in \([\text{Th. finitude}], \text{Exp. XVIII 3.1.8}\].

(1.4) The business of securing the injectivity of \( \varphi \) is the usual trick (SGA V \text{ Exp. XV p.479}). Namely, the cone of \( \text{sp}^* K_s \) (where here \( \text{sp} = \text{sp} \circ j \) in the sense of (1.2.2)) is the cone of the identity map on this complex; i.e. the complex \( C(\text{sp}^* K_s)^i := (\text{sp}^* K_s)^i \oplus (\text{sp}^* K_s)^{i-1} \) with differential \( d^i(x, y) = (d^i x, x - d^{i-1} y) \). The identity map on this complex is homotopic to 0 via the homotopy \( h(x, y) = (y, 0) \), so it is acyclic and \( K'_{\bar{s}} = K_{\bar{s}} \oplus C(\text{sp}^* K_s) \) is homotopic to \( K_{\bar{s}} \). Replacing \( \varphi \) by \( \varphi := (\varphi, \text{id}, 0) \) (as \( \text{sp}^* K_s \) coincides with \( K_{\bar{s}} \) with action of \( \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta) \) factoring through \( \text{Gal}(\bar{s}/s) \) so that \( \varphi \) remains equivariant), \( \varphi \) is now a termwise split injection with termwise splitting given by projection to the second factor. In (1.4.2.2) \( \text{sp} \) again coincides with \( \text{sp} \circ j \) (1.2.2).
termes imagés, $\Phi(K)$ keeps track of the sections of $K_\eta$ which do not come from residual extension of sections of $K_s$; bref, the discrepancy between $K_\eta$ and $K_s$.

(2.1.2) ‘l'image réciproque $F_\eta$ est acyclique’ $\rightsquigarrow$ [SGAA, VII 5.7].

(2.1.3) $S_{nr}$ is a strictly henselian trait coinciding with the normalization of $S$ in $\eta_{nr}$. Claim: $X(1)_{x^0} = X(1)_{x^0} S_{nr}$.

As the closed fiber $\overline{X} \times_{S_{nr}} S'$ is finite over $X(1)$, it splits as a disjoint union of henselian local ring spectra indexed by the points in the closed fiber $\overline{X} \times_{S_{nr}} S'$. As the closed fiber of the map $S' \to S_{nr}$ is radicial, the map $\overline{X} \times_{S_{nr}} S'$ is injective and hence we see that $\overline{X} \times_{S_{nr}} S'$ is one point (Stacks tag 01SZ) so that $X(1) \times_{S_{nr}} S'$, and hence by passage to the limit $X(1) \times_{S_{nr}} \overline{S}$ too, are strictly henselian local (Stacks tag 04GI). It is now immediate that the generic fiber of the strict henselization of $\overline{X}$ at $\overline{x}$ coincides with

$$(X(1) \times_{S_{nr}} \overline{S})_{\eta_{nr}} = X(1) \times_{\eta_{nr}} \eta_{nr}.$$ 

(2.1.5) Considering $\mathcal{F}$ as concentrated in degree 0, then so too is $sp^* \iota^* \mathcal{F}$. We write the long exact sequence of cohomology associated to the stalk at $\overline{x}$ (technically the stalk at the point $(\overline{x}, \eta_{nr})$ of the topos $X_s \times_s \eta$) of the distinguished triangle (2.1.2.4)

$$0 \to \mathcal{F}_{\overline{x}} \to (j_{s,\overline{x}}^* \mathcal{F})_{\overline{x}} \to R^0 \Phi(\mathcal{F}) \to 0 \to R^1 \Psi(\mathcal{F}_{\eta_{nr}})_{(\overline{x}, \eta_{nr})} \to R^1 \Phi(\mathcal{F}) \to \cdots$$

with the second arrow an isomorphism as $\mathcal{F}$ is lisse (c.f. Reprise). (2.1.3) gives that

$$R^1 \Psi(\mathcal{F}_{\eta_{nr}})_{(\overline{x}, \eta_{nr})} \simeq H^1(X(1) \times_{\eta_{nr}} \eta_{nr}, \mathcal{F})$$

and the note to (2.1.3) above shows that $X(1) \times_{\eta_{nr}} \eta_{nr}$ is a variety of vanishing cycles of $f$ at the point $\overline{x}$ in the sense of Arcata V 1.3 (more properly it should be called a variety of nearby cycles); as $f$ is smooth hence (universally) locally acyclic (Arcata V 2.1) and the restriction of $\mathcal{F}$ to $X(1)$ is constant, this same definition 1.3 gives that $R^0 \Psi(\mathcal{F})_{(\overline{x}, \eta_{nr})}$ is connective (i.e. acyclic in degrees $> 0$) so that $R^1 \Phi(\mathcal{F})_{(\overline{x}, \eta_{nr})} = 0$. 

6. TRANSFORMATION DE FOURIER
In the case of a complex $K$ in $D^+(X, \Lambda)$ with $f$ smooth and the $\mathcal{H}^{\eta}(K)$ lisse, we can reduce to the previous paragraph with the help of the spectral sequence

$$E^{p,q}_1 = R^p\Psi_\eta(\mathcal{H}^q(K_s)) \Rightarrow \mathcal{H}^{p+q}_\eta(K_s)$$

which finds that the map $\text{sp}^* f^*K \to R\Psi_\eta(K_s)$ is a quasi-isomorphism.

See also [Th. finitude, 2.12].

(2.1.6) $Rf_*$ is described as a functor $D^+(Y \times_s S, \Lambda) \to D^+(Y' \times_s S, \Lambda)$.

c) $f$ quasi-fini $\Rightarrow f_!$ exact $\Leftrightarrow$ [SGAA, XVII 6.1.4].

d) $f$ quasi-fini $\Rightarrow Rf^!$ is the right derived functor of $f^!$ $\Leftrightarrow$ [SGAA, XVIII 3.1.8 (i)].

(2.1.7) Climbing to the highest heights of pedantry, to derive (1.3.6.1), start by representing our $K$ in $D^+(X, \Lambda)$ by a complex of injectives $I_1$; as $f_*$ preserves injectives, $R\Psi Rf_*K = \Psi f_*I_1$. By (1.3.6.1) we find a morphism of complexes $\Psi f_*I_1 \to f_* \Psi I_1$. Taking a quasi-isomorphism $\Psi I_1 \to I_2$ into a complex of injectives $I_2$ composes to give

$$R\Psi Rf_*K = \Psi f_*I_1 \to f_* \Psi I_1 \to f_*I_2 = Rf_* R\Psi K.$$  

The same method gives (2.1.7.2) and the first arrow in the below for (2.1.7.3).

$$Rf! R\Psi = R\tilde{f}_! j_! R\Psi \to R\tilde{f}_* R\Psi j_! \to R\Psi R\tilde{f}_* j_! = R\Psi Rf_!.$$  

For $f$ quasi-finite, $f_!$ is right adjoint to the exact functor $f_!$ and so preserves injectives.

Deligne shows [Th. finitude, 3.7] that the formation of nearby cycles $R\Psi$ commutes with change of trait; i.e. the base-change morphism (2.1.7.5) is an isomorphism (for sheaves of torsion prime to the residual characteristic of $S$). (Confusingly, he calls $R^i\Psi_\eta$ vanishing cycles. This is surely because, according to Illusie, Grothendieck and vanishing cycles, when Grothendieck introduced the functors $R\Psi, R\Phi$, he called both these ‘functors of vanishing cycles.’)

(2.1.8) Typo: $K$ belongs in $D^+(X, \Lambda)$. When $X' = S$, $\Psi$ induces an equivalence of sheaves on $S$ with sheaves on the topos $s \times_s S$ (1.2.2 b)) and is therefore omitted. The $X_s \times_s \eta$-component of the left-hand side of (2.1.8.1) is

$$R\Psi_\eta Rf_*K = \overset{\sim}{i} j_! j^* Rf_*K = \overset{\sim}{i} j_! (Rf_*K)_\eta = \overset{\sim}{i} j_! \Gamma(X_\eta, K).$$
As in the note to (1.3) above, as $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$-module, $\widetilde{\iota^* f_* R\Gamma}(X_{\overline{\eta}}, K) = R\Gamma(X_{\overline{\eta}}, K)$, but the left-hand side can be considered as sitting on $\overline{s}$ while the right-hand side sits on $\overline{\eta}$. This is pedantry. In any event, the $X_s \times_s \eta$-component of the right-hand side of (2.1.8.1) coincides with the right-hand side of (2.1.8.3) in light of (2.1.6.2), which in itself is pedantic and simply recognizes that the object $R\Psi_{\overline{\eta}}(K)$ sits on $X_{\overline{\eta}}$, and we take the stalk at the point $(\overline{x}, \overline{\eta})$ of $X_s \times_s \eta$ as in (2.1.3). In other words, with $f : X_{\overline{\eta}} \to \overline{s}$,

$$Rf_* R\Psi_{\eta}(K) = Rf_* \widetilde{\iota^* f_* (K_{\overline{\eta}})} = R\Gamma(X_{\overline{\eta}}, \widetilde{\iota^* f_* (K_{\overline{\eta}})}) = R\Gamma(X_{\overline{\eta}}, R\Psi_{\overline{\eta}}(K)).$$

The long exact sequence (2.1.8.9) exists when $f$ is proper because in that case (2.1.8.3) is an isomorphism.

2.3.2. The translation of the note to (2.2.1.1) into $G_{s'}$-modules is that

$$H^{1-1}(K_s', \mathcal{F}^I_{\overline{\eta}'}) \subset \mathcal{H}^{1-1}_{\overline{\eta}'},$$

confirming the exactness on the left of the exact sequence of $G_{s'}$-modules.

(2.3.2.1) (i) The point is that the Artin-Schreier $F_p$-torsor $\mathcal{A}$ (c.f. note to 2.3.1) is trivialized by the base change $G_{a,k} \xrightarrow{\pi^{1-1}} G_{a,k}$ by the Lang isogeny for $G_{a,k}$, which is a revêtement étale. Pulling back to $A \times_k A' \to G_{a,k}$ trivializes $\mathcal{L}(x,x')$ over this revêtement étale and reduces to the stated theorem (see also note to (2.1.5) in Intermezzo II).

(In galoisian terms, if $\overline{x}$ is a geometric point of $G_{a,k}$, $\mathcal{L}_\psi$ is defined by

$$\pi_1(G_{a,k}, \overline{x}) \to \mathcal{F}_p \xrightarrow{\psi^{-1}} \mathcal{Q}_\ell.$$)

The Artin-Schreier covering $G_{a,k} \xrightarrow{\pi^{1-1}} G_{a,k}$ corresponds to the open subgroup of $\pi_1(G_{a,k}, \overline{x})$ which coincides with the kernel of this representation.)

(ii) Use (1.4.1.1) and [SGA 7, Exp. XIII 2.1.7.1] for $R\Psi$; proper base change for $sp^* i^*$ and (TR3) gives the desired isomorphism

$$sp^* i^* R\overline{pr}_* \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Psi_{\eta'} R\overline{pr}_* \xrightarrow{\sim} R\Phi R\overline{pr}_* \xrightarrow{\sim}$$

$$R\overline{pr}_* sp^* i^* \xrightarrow{\sim} R\overline{pr}_* R\Psi_{\eta'} \xrightarrow{\sim} R\overline{pr}_* R\Phi \xrightarrow{\sim}$$
Let \( M := \overline{pr}'(\alpha; K) \otimes \overline{\mathcal{L}}(x,x') [1] \). As \( R\overline{pr}'_* \) sp* = sp* R\overline{pr}'_*, this diagram computes to

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sp}^* K'_S & \longrightarrow R\Psi_{\eta, r}(K') \longrightarrow R\Phi(K') \longrightarrow \\
\text{sp}^* R\Gamma(D_{x'}, i'^* (M)) & \longrightarrow R\Gamma(D_{x'}, R\Psi_{\eta, r}(M)) \longrightarrow R\Phi(M)(\overline{\omega}, \overline{\gamma}) \longrightarrow \\
\end{align*}
\]

where here \( R\Gamma(D_{x'}, i'^* (M)) = R\overline{pr}'_*(i'^* M)_{x'} \) for \( i' : D \times_k \kappa' \to \kappa' \). En effet, (i) gives that \( R\Phi(M) \) is supported on \( \infty \times_k \eta_{\omega'} \) (the topos; literally as a sheaf it sits on \( \infty \times_k \overline{\omega} \to D_{x'} \)); if \( k \) denotes the inclusion of this point into \( D \times_k \eta_{\omega'} \), \( R\Phi(M) = k_* L_\omega \) so that \( R\overline{pr}'_* R\Phi(M) = R\Gamma(D_{x'}, k_* L_\omega) = L_\omega \). Compare with [SGA 7], Exp. XIII 2.1.8] and note to (2.1.8) in [Intermezzo II]

(2.3.2.3) = (2.3.2.1) (iii) + the exact sequence at the top of the page + (2.3.1.1).

(2.3.3.1) Typos: in the first displayed equation of (ii) the stalk is at \((\overline{\omega}, \overline{\gamma})\) not \((\overline{\omega}, \overline{\gamma})\).

In the first displayed equation of the proof obviously it is \( D \times_k \overline{\omega} \) not \( D \otimes_k \overline{\omega} \).

In the proof of (iii), the point is that as the support of \( R\Psi_{\eta, r} = R\Phi_{\eta, r} \) is contained in \((S \cup \infty) \times_k \eta_{\omega'} \). Let \( M_s \) denote the restriction of \( R\Psi_{\eta, r}(\overline{pr}'(\alpha; K) \otimes \overline{\mathcal{L}}(x,x') [1]) \) to \( s \times_k \omega' \) (it is the fiber at \( \eta_{\omega'} \) of a sheaf on the topos \( S \times_k \omega' \) hence literally a sheaf on \( S \times_k \omega' \) and put \( s : s \times_k D_{\omega'} \longrightarrow D \times_k D_{\omega'} \mathcal{L}_{\omega'} \to D_{\omega'} (s \in S \cup \infty) \). Then

\[
R^{-1}\Gamma(D \times_k \omega', R\Psi_{\eta, r}(\overline{pr}'(\alpha; K) \otimes \overline{\mathcal{L}}(x,x') [1])) = \bigoplus_{s \in S \cup \infty} s_{\omega'}(M_s)
\]

with the notation of [SGA 7] 2.1.6]. Fix some \( s \in S \cup \infty \). \( s_{\omega'} : s \times_k \omega' \to \omega' \) is a revêtement étale that realizes \( G_{s \times_k \omega'} \to G_{\omega'} \) as an open subgroup, and \( s \times_k \omega' \) is topologically a disjoint union of copies of \( \omega' \) indexed by the (algebraic) geometric points centered on \( s \) (there are \( \deg(s) \) many). As \( G_{\omega'} \)-module,

\[
s_{\omega'}(M_s) = G_{\omega'} \otimes_{G_{s \times_k \omega'}} M_s =: \text{Ind}_{G_{s \times_k \omega'}}(M_s).
\]

The proof of (i) is given by (1.3.1.2), the proof of which is relegated to the paper of Katz-Laumon *Transformation de Fourier et Majoration de Sommes Exponentiels* and is discussed next.
Intermezzo III: Katz-Laumon (2.4). All notation and references in this section are to *Transformation de Fourier et Majoration de Sommes Exponentielles* unless otherwise noted. Let us first discuss how their proof of (2.4.1) gives the theorem (2.4.4) about universal strong local acyclicity. With the notation of the proof of (2.4.1), and letting \( M \) throughout denote constant sheaf with value the \( A \)-module \( M \), the translation trick allows us to replace \( \mathbb{P}^1 \times A^1 \) by \( \mathbb{P}^1 \times G_m \). The claim is trivial away from \( \infty \times G_m \). It suffices to show that \( \tilde{p}_1 \) is universally locally acyclic rel. \( M \otimes^L j_* \mu^\times \mathcal{L}_q \). By (2.4.2), this will be true iff the same is true rel. \( M \otimes^L \tilde{f}_* A_{\tilde{X}} \). By the projection formula for \( \tilde{f} \) & Leray, this is the same as \( \tilde{p}_1 \circ \tilde{f} \) being universally locally acyclic rel. \( M \). As proven, there is a neighborhood of \( \infty \times G_m \) over which \( \tilde{p}_1 \circ \tilde{f} \) factors as a surjective radicial morphism followed by a smooth morphism; hence by universal local acyclicity of a smooth morphism, \( \tilde{p}_1 \circ \tilde{f} \) is universally locally acyclic rel. any locally constant sheaf, in particular rel. \( M \).

In the proof itself, the formula for \([a]^\ast \mu^\times \mathcal{L}_q\) depends on [Sommes trig., 1.7.1]. The extension of the Artin-Schreier covering \( \tilde{X} \) is defined as the finite covering of \( \mathbb{P}^1 \times G_m \) defined by \( X_0 T_1^q - X_0 T_1 T_0^{q-1} = X_1 T_0^q y \). It suffices to verify the various properties of \( \tilde{X} \) when \( S = F_q \). Note that \( \tilde{X} \) is integral as \( t^q - t - xy \) doesn’t have a root over \( k(x, y) \), and \( F_q \) acts transitively on the roots by \( t \mapsto t + \gamma, \gamma \in F_q \). Pick any point \( \text{Spec} F_q(y) \) of \( G_m \), corresponding to a choice of \( y \in \overline{F_q^X} \) or \( y \) as a transcendental generator of \( F_q(y)/F_q \). On one hand, the point \( \infty \in \mathbb{P}^1_{F_q(y)} \) has one point of \( \tilde{X} \times G_m \) \( \text{Spec} F_q(y) \) lying over it, since when \( X_0 = 0, T_0 \) is nilpotent. On the other, \( T_0 = 0 \) implies \( X_0 = 0 \) as then \( T_1 \) is a unit. Therefore \( T_0 \) generates the maximal ideal of the local ring of the point of \( \tilde{X} \times G_m \) \( \text{Spec} F_q(y) \) lying over \( \infty \times F_q F_q(y) \), which shows that every point of \( \tilde{f}^{-1}(\infty \times F_q F_q(y)) \) is totally ramified over \( \infty \times F_q F_q(y) \), and also shows that regardless of whether or not we extend scalars to \( F := \overline{F_q} \), the following is true: The points of \( \tilde{f}^{-1}(\infty \times G_m) \) are in bijection with the points of \( \infty \times G_m \), hence also with the points of \( G_m \); given a point \( a \in G_m \), the maximal ideal \( m \) of the corresponding point of \( \tilde{X} \) is generated by \( 1 + \text{codim} a \) elements: if \( a \) is closed, \( m \) is generated by \( T_0 \) and the minimal polynomial of \( y \), and if \( a \) is the generic point, \( m \) is generated by \( T_0 \) only. This implies that \( \tilde{f}^{-1}(\infty \times F_q G_m F_q) \) is geometrically regular over \( F_q \), hence, in light of the lemma in the note to [BBD, 2.2.1.0], smooth over \( F_q \).
Checking that $\tilde{X}$ is étale over $A^1 \times G_m$ amounts to showing that for any choice of $x \in F, y \in F^x$, the closed subscheme $Q \hookrightarrow \mathbf{P}_F^1(x, y)$ cut out by $T_1^q - T_1 T_0^{q-1} = T_0^q x y$ is étale over $F_q(x, y)$. The subscheme $Q$ has empty intersection with $T_0 = 0$, and away from $T_0 = 0$, $Q$ is defined by the separable polynomial $t^q - t = x y$, and as above, $F_q$ acts transitively on the roots, so that $Q$ either is the disjoint union of $q$ copies of Spec $k(x, y)$ or is the spectrum of a separable field extension of $k(x, y)$. In any event: étale, and $\tilde{f}^{-1}(A^1 \times G_m)$ is smooth over $F_q$.

The proof of (2.4.2) hits a snag when it is only assumed, as stated, that there exists a nontrivial additive character $\psi : F_q \to A^\times$. The representation $f_* A_X$ coincides with the regular $A[F_q]$-module $A[F_q]$. If we write multiplicatively, this is the ring $A[x]/(x^q - 1)$ acting on itself as a free module of rank 1. The point is that of course the separable polynomial $x^q - 1$ need not split into linear factors over $A$ if it has one root distinct from 1 in $A$. What is needed is a primitive root of this polynomial; i.e. a root which is not a root of any polynomial $x^m - 1, m < n$ (suppose $q = p^n$). (Actually, $x^q - 1$ splits as a product of $n$ polynomials each of degree $p$, as $(x^{p^m} - 1) (x^{p^m} - 1)$.) The existence of such a root in $A^\times$ implies that $A[F_q]$ decomposes completely into $q$ $A$-modules of rank 1 indexed by the $q$ distinct characters $F_q \to A^\times$; conversely, if such a root fails to exist, there will be irreducible factors of $x^q - 1$ of degree $d > 1$ corresponding to irreducible factors of $A[F_q]$ free of rank $d$ as $A$-module.

With this proviso, the decomposition of $f_* A_X$ is achieved, and all that is left to note for the decomposition of $\tilde{f}_* A_\tilde{X}$ is that the stalk over a point of the base of the latter are free $A$-modules of rank which coincides with the number of points in the geometric fiber $[SGAA]$ VIII 5.5], and we have shown that every geometric point of $\infty \times G_m$ has precisely one point of $\tilde{X}$ lying over it, so that the stalk of $\tilde{f}_* A_\tilde{X}$ is free of rank 1 at every geometric point of $\infty \times G_m$. As the direct image of a constant sheaf on the generic point of a normal integral scheme is constant (c.f. remark at the end of [Reprise]),

$$\tilde{f}_* A_\tilde{X} = \tilde{f}_* j'_* A_X = j_* f_* A_X = A_{\mathbf{P}_1 \times G_m} \oplus \bigoplus_{\psi \neq 1} j_* \mu^* \mathcal{L}_\psi,$$

and by rank considerations we must have $j_\psi \mu^* \mathcal{L}_\psi = j_\psi \mu^* \mathcal{L}_\psi'$ for all nontrivial $\psi$. 
6. TRANSFORMATION DE FOURIER

To see this last fact directly, observe that given a geometric point \( \bar{x} \) centered on a point \( x \in \tilde{X} \) with image \( y \in \infty \times \mathbb{G}_m \), and letting \( \tilde{y} \) denote the image of \( \bar{x} \), let \( \tilde{X}(\tilde{y}) \), resp. \( Y(\tilde{y}) \) denote the strict henselizations of \( \tilde{X} \), resp. \( Y = \mathbb{P}^1 \times \mathbb{G}_m \) at \( \bar{x} \) and \( \tilde{y} \), respectively. They are regular local rings. The map on generic points \( \eta_x \rightarrow \eta_y \) is still given by \( t^q - t = xy \), as this still gives a finite extension of degree \( q \) of \( Y(\tilde{y}) \) so that if \( \xi \) denotes the generic point of \( \mathbb{G}_m \), the uniformizer of \( \tilde{Y}(\tilde{y}) \) at \( \tilde{x} \) and \( \tilde{y} \), respectively. They are regular local rings. The map on generic points \( \eta_x \rightarrow \eta_y \) is still given by \( t^q - t = xy \), as this still gives a finite extension of degree \( q \) of \( \tilde{X}(\tilde{y}) \times_{\mathbb{G}_m} \xi \) is the \( q \)th power of that of \( \tilde{X}(\tilde{y}) \times \mathbb{G}_m \). It follows that provided \( \psi \neq 1 \), \( \text{Gal}(\tilde{y}/\eta_{\tilde{y}}) \) acts nontrivially on the reciprocal image of \( L \psi \) to \( \tilde{Y}(\tilde{y}) \), as \( \text{Gal}(\eta_{\tilde{y}}/\eta_{\tilde{y}}) \) does. As the stalk of \( j_* \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{Y}'} \) at \( \tilde{y} \) coincides with the invariants of the \( \text{Gal}(\tilde{y}/\eta_{\tilde{y}}) \)-module \( A \), \( j_*(\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{Y}'})_\tilde{y} = 0 \).

In the last paragraph of the proof, we can do all this assuming \( S = \mathbb{F}_q \). Fix coordinates \( (\tau, y) \) on \( \tilde{f}^{-1}(U) \) via

\[
\mathbb{F}_q[\tau, y, y^{-1}] \rightarrow \mathbb{F}_q[\tau, \xi, y, y^{-1}]/(\xi(1 - \tau^{q-1}) - \tau^q y).
\]

The fiber of this map over the closed subscheme of \( \mathbb{A}^1 \times \mathbb{G}_m \) defined by \( \tau^{q-1} \) is empty. Therefore \( (\tau, y) \) factors through the complement \( U' \times \mathbb{G}_m \) of this closed subscheme, which corresponds to inverting \( 1 - \tau^{q-1} \), after which the above map on functions becomes an isomorphism. As \( \xi = \tau^q y/(1 - \tau^{q-1}) \) in \( (\tau, y) \) coordinates, \( \tilde{pr}_1 \circ \tilde{f} \) takes the stated form. The following diagram commutes.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{A}^1 & \xrightarrow{\nu} & U' \times \mathbb{G}_m \\
\tilde{pr}_1 \circ \tilde{f} & \downarrow & \downarrow j \\
\tilde{f}^{-1}(U) & \leftarrow U' \times \mathbb{G}_m
\end{array}
\]

\[
\mathbb{F}_q[\xi] \xrightarrow{\xi \mapsto \tau^q y'} \mathbb{F}_q[\tau', y', y'^{-1}, (1 - \tau^{q-1})^{-1}] \xrightarrow{(\tau', y') \mapsto (\tau^q, y/(1 - \tau^{q-1}))} \mathbb{F}_q[\tau, y, y^{-1}, (1 - \tau^{q-1})^{-1}]
\]

The map \( \nu : U' \times \mathbb{G}_m \rightarrow \mathbb{A}^1 \) is smooth since the coordinate ring of the former can be written as \( S := \mathbb{F}_q[\xi, y', a, b]/(ay' - 1, b(1 - \xi a) - 1) \), and

\[
\det \begin{pmatrix} y' & -b\xi \\ 0 & 1 - \xi a \end{pmatrix} = y'(1 - \xi a)
\]

is invertible in \( S \) with inverse \( ab \), so that \( \mathbb{F}_q[\xi] \rightarrow S \) is standard smooth and hence smooth (Stacks tags \texttt{0016} & \texttt{0017}).
To verify that $\kappa$ is radial and surjective, it suffices to show $\kappa$ is bijective and induces purely inseparable residual extensions. This can be done by verifying that for each $x \in U' \times G_m$, the scheme-theoretic fiber $\kappa^{-1}(x)$ is isomorphic to the spectrum of an artinian local ring with purely inseparable residual extension.

Picking a point $x$ amounts to choosing a field $F_q(\alpha, \beta)$ such that $\alpha^{q-1} \neq 1$; as this is trivially satisfied when $\alpha$ is transcendental and Frobenius is an isomorphism $F_q(\alpha)$ when $\alpha$ is algebraic, $\alpha^{q-1} \neq 1$ is equivalent to the condition that $\alpha \notin F_q$. The fiber $\kappa^{-1}(x)$ in this case is isomorphic to the spectrum of the finite $F_q(\alpha, \beta)$-algebra

$$A := F_q(\alpha, \beta)[\tau, y, y^{-1}, (1 - \tau^{q-1})^{-1}]/(\tau - \alpha, y - \beta(1 - \tau^{q-1}))$$

is a field which is purely inseparable over $F_q(\alpha, \beta)$. If $\alpha$ is algebraic then Frobenius induces an isomorphism of $F_q(\alpha)$ and there exists a $\sqrt[1]{\alpha} \in F_q(\alpha)$ so that $\tau^q - \alpha = (\tau - \sqrt[1]{\alpha})^q$; $A$ is therefore isomorphic to a localization of a local Artinian ring with trivial residual extension, and we need check only that $\kappa^{-1}(x)$ is nonempty; i.e. that $A \neq 0$. This is true iff $1 - \tau^{q-1}$ is not nilpotent, in which case it’s already a unit in $A$. As $\alpha \notin F_q$ by assumption and $\alpha \neq \sqrt[1]{\alpha}$ so that $(\sqrt[1]{\alpha})^{q-1} \neq 1$ and $1 - \tau^{q-1}$ indeed doesn’t go to zero under $\tau \mapsto \sqrt[1]{\alpha}$.

2.4.1. Back to Laumon. The point is that $\pi/\pi'$, $\pi'/\pi$, and $1/\pi\pi'$ determine three distinct rational maps $T \times_k T' \to G_{a,k}$ (regular over $T \times \eta$, $\eta \times T'$, $\eta \times \eta'$, respectively), and $L_\psi(\pi/\pi')$, $L_\psi(\pi'/\pi)$, and $L_\psi(1/\pi\pi')$ are the reciprocal images of $L_\psi$ defined over these open loci of $T \times T$ via these various maps.

By way of preface, it would seem from the discussion below that $T$ implicitly is assumed to coincide with Spec $k\{x\}$. Certainly it would seem that Néron desingularization should not be necessary for the result (2.4.2.1) cited as ‘immediate,’ or a somewhat esoteric result about the Galois group of generic points of henselian d.v.r.s to
connect (2.4.2.2) to the discussion in (2.2.2). Perhaps there is an implicit assumption I’ve missed, or far simple ways to obtain these results with no assumption on T other than \( k\{\pi\} \subset R \subset k[[x]] \). As remarked in the note to (2.1.1) one must assume \( k \subset R \); in contrast with an equicharacteristic complete d.v.r., an equicharacteristic henselian d.v.r. need not contain a coefficient field.

\((2.4.2.1)\) As (i), (ii), and (iii) are interchangeable, we dissect (i) as an example. The map \( \pi' : \eta' \rightarrow \eta_{\infty'} \) is specified by \( \pi' \mapsto 1/x' \). As \( 1/x' \) is a uniformizer for the local ring of \( D' \) at \( \infty' \) (and also its henselization \( D'_{(\infty')} \)), from the data of \( \pi' \mapsto 1/x' \) we get a morphism \( T' \rightarrow \text{Spec } \mathcal{O}_{D', \infty'} \) and by the universal property of henselization (Raynaud, Anneaux Locaux Henséliens, VIII Déf. 1) a unique factorization of this morphism to a commutative triangle

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Spec } \mathcal{O}_{D', \infty'} & \xleftarrow{} & D'_{(\infty')} \\
\downarrow{\pi'} & & \uparrow{} \\
T' & \xrightarrow{} & D_{(\infty')} \\
\end{array}
\]

which recovers \( \pi' \) on the generic fiber. Note that \( R\Psi'_{\eta_{\infty'}} = R\Phi_{\eta_{\infty'}} \), as in (2.3.3.1). It is asserted that the base-change morphism

\[
(\pi \times \pi')^* R\Psi'_{\eta_{\infty'}} \rightarrow R\Psi_{\eta'} (\pi \times \pi')^*
\]

is an isomorphism. As \( \pi \times \pi' = (1 \times \pi') \circ (\pi \times 1) \), we first deal with \( (1 \times \pi')^* \), which is the morphism induced by change of trait \( \pi' : T' \rightarrow D'_{(\infty')} \) and is an isomorphism by [Th. finitude, 3.7]. On the other hand, letting \( V_0 := k[\pi]_{(\pi)} \) and \( T_0 := \text{Spec } V_0 \), the morphism \( \pi : T \rightarrow \text{A} \) factors as \( T \xrightarrow{\pi_1} T_0 \rightarrow \text{A} \) where the second morphism is ind-étale and therefore commutes with base change by passage to the limit. It doesn’t seem ‘immediate’ to me that

\[
(\pi_1 \times 1)^* R\Psi'_{\eta_{\eta_0'}} \rightarrow R\Psi_{\eta_0'} (\pi_1 \times 1)^*
\]

is an isomorphism. The cleanest way I know to show this is to invoke Néron desingularisation in the form [SGA 7 I 0.5.1]. In the paragraphs following the statement of this lemma (0.5.1), it’s explained how the conditions of the lemma are satisfied in the case of \( \pi_1 : T \rightarrow T_0 \). The residual extension is trivial in our case; to see that the extension \( \eta_0 \)
is separable, it suffices to show that \( k(\eta)/k(\pi) \) is separable. For this one need only show
\[
k(\pi^{1/p}) \otimes_{k(\pi)} k(\eta) \cong k(\eta)[t]/(t^p - \pi)
\]
is separable. Assuming \( p > 1 \), this is true iff \( \pi \) does not have a \( p \)th root in \( k(\eta) \), which is true as \( \pi \) is a uniformizer. Néron says that \( \pi_1 \) is a limit of smooth morphisms and therefore commutes with \( R\Psi \).

On a related note, I know of a funny way to show the more general

**Lemma.** — Let \( f : T \to T_0 \) be a surjective morphism of henselian traits and suppose

1. \( \eta \) the special fiber \( T \times_{T_0} s_0 \) is reduced,
2. \( k(s_0) \subset k(s) \) is purely inseparable, and
3. the maximal purely inseparable extension of the completion \( \overline{k(\eta_0)} \) is dense in \( \overline{k(\eta)} \).

Then for every scheme \( X_0 \to T_0 \), \( f \) induces an equivalence of topoi \( \tilde{X}_{\text{ét}} \to (X_0)_{\text{ét}} \), where \( X := X_0 \times_{T_0} T \).

This applies in the situation where \( T_0 = \text{Spec } R_0 \) is equicharacteristic and \( R_0 \) contains a coefficient field mapping isomorphically onto its residue field, which is assumed perfect, as assumed in (2.4.1), because of the inclusion \( k \{ \pi \} \subset R_0 \subset k[[\pi]] \).

**Proof.** — By (2.4.1–2.4.3) in Berkovich, *Étale cohomology for non-Archimedean analytic spaces*, Publ. Math. IHES 78, reciprocal image \( L \mapsto L \otimes_{k(\eta_0)} k(\eta) \) induces an equivalence of categories of finite separable extensions of \( k(\eta_0) \) and \( k(\eta) \), and hence induces an isomorphism \( \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta) \cong \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_0) \). The same is true for the closed fiber (replacing \( \eta \) by \( s \)) if we restrict to finite Galois extensions by e.g. [Stacks tag 030M](https://stacks.math.columbia.edu/tag/030M). Recall [SGA4, IV 9.5.4], which says in our case that the category of sheaves on \( X \to T \) is equivalent to the category of triples

\[
(\mathcal{F}_s, \mathcal{F}_\eta, \varphi : \mathcal{F}_s \to i^* j_* \mathcal{F}_\eta) \quad \text{where } \eta \xleftarrow{i} T \xrightarrow{j} s,
\]

(\( \mathcal{F}_s \) a sheaf on \( X \times_{T} s \), \( \mathcal{F}_\eta \) a sheaf on \( X \times_{T} \eta \) via the functor \( \mathcal{F} \mapsto (\mathcal{F}_s, \mathcal{F}_\eta, \varphi) \)) where

\[
\varphi : \mathcal{F}_s = i^* \mathcal{F} \to i^* j_* j^* \mathcal{F} = \text{sp}_s \mathcal{F}_\eta,
\]
with quasi-inverse the functor which associates to \((\mathcal{F}_s, \mathcal{F}_\eta, \varphi)\) the object \(W\) defined by the cartesian square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
W & \xrightarrow{\eta} & j_\ast \mathcal{F}_\eta \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
i_\ast \mathcal{F}_s & \xrightarrow{i_\ast \varphi} & i_\ast i^\ast j_\ast \mathcal{F}_\eta.
\end{array}
\]

Decorating everything with a subscript 0, the same is true for \(X_0 \to T_0\). Last, recall [SGA 7, XIII 1.3.3 (ii)], which says that \(Y \to \text{Spec } k\) with separable closure \(\overline{k}\) and a sheaf \(\mathcal{F}\) on \(Y\), the functor \(\mathcal{F} \mapsto \overline{\mathcal{F}}\) induces an equivalence between the category of sheaves of sets on \(Y\) with that of sheaves of sets on \(\overline{Y}\) equipped with a continuous action of \(\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)\) compatible with the action of \(\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)\) on \(\overline{Y}\). \(\square\)

(2.4.2.2) By the Berkovich result in the proof of the previous lemma, we may assume \(T = \text{Spec } k\{x\}\); now invoke not (2.2.2.1) but rather the discussion following (2.2.2.2). A choice of retraction for \(i_*\) (in the notation of (2.2.2)) corresponds to an extension of \(V\) to a lisse \(\overline{\mathbb{Q}_p}\)-sheaf \(\mathcal{F}\) on \(G_{m,k}\). Let \(j : G_{m,k} \hookrightarrow A\); for (i) put \(K := j_! \mathcal{F}\) and for (ii) and (iii) put \(\alpha_j \cdot \mathcal{F}[1]\). In all three cases, \(K\) is a perverse sheaf [BBD, 4.1.3] and \(\pi_! K = V_! [1]\).

2.5. In order to complete the proof (4.4) of Deligne’s main theorem in Weil II, it is only necessary to have (2.5.3.1) (i) (Kummer does not make an appearance). The proof of (2.5.3.1) (i) is an elegant synthesis of (2.3.2)–(2.4.2), and the only necessary auxiliary computation is that of \(\mathcal{F}(\overline{Q}_{\ell,A-\{0\}})|_{\eta_{\infty'}}\). There is an exact sequence of perverse sheaves on \(A\) [BBD, 4.1.10]

\[
0 \to \overline{Q}_{\ell,\{0\}} \to \overline{Q}_{\ell,A-\{0\}}[1] \to \overline{Q}_{\ell,A}[1] \to 0.
\]

Applying \(\mathcal{F}\) gives the exact sequence of perverse sheaves on \(A'\)

\[
0 \to \overline{Q}_{\ell,A'}[1] \to \mathcal{F}(\overline{Q}_{\ell,A-\{0\}})[1] \to \overline{Q}_{\ell,(0')}(\mathbb{Z})(-1) \to 0
\]

which finds \(\mathcal{F}(\overline{Q}_{\ell,A-\{0\}})|_{\eta_{\infty'}} = \overline{Q}_{\ell,\eta_{\infty'}}\) and completes the proof of (i).

4.2.2. (4.2.2.2) Write \(\mathcal{F} := F\) to harmonize with Deligne’s notation. The condition that ‘the action of \(I_s\) be unipotent of echelon 2.’ corresponds, in the vocabulary of [Weil II, 1.7.2], to the property that the filtration of local monodromy on \(\mathcal{P}_\pi\) has at most
3 nonzero graded pieces; i.e. if $I$ does not act trivially on $\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta}$, then the nilpotent operator $N$ arising from the logarithm of the unipotent part of the local monodromy has $N \neq 0$ but $N^2 = 0$. In this case, as described in [Weil II, 1.6.1], the filtration has $M_1 = \mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta}$, $M_0 = F^1_\eta$, and $M_{-1} = \text{im} N$, and $\text{Gr}^M_1 = F_\eta/F^1_\eta$, which [Weil II, 1.8.4] says is $t$-pure of weight $w + 1$.

(4.2.2.3) Recall the decomposition (1.6.14.3) of Weil II and the fact that there is a typo in it (c.f. note to 1.6.14). Recall that, as in the proof of [Weil II, 1.8.4], if $s \in S$, the fiber $(j_*(\mathcal{F})_\bar{\eta})$ coincides with $\ker N = F^1_\eta$, where $N$ is the logarithm of the local monodromy (we can assume that all of $I$ acts unipotently). Recall that $N$ is compatible with the filtration of local monodromy, that $\text{Gr}^M_{-1}(\ker N) \to P_i$ [Weil II, 1.6.6], and that $P_i = 0$ for $i > 0$ [Weil II, 1.6.4]. The eigenvalues of $F_s$ on $(j_*(\mathcal{F})_\bar{\eta})$ are in bijection with the eigenvalues of $F$ on the $P_i(\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta})$, where $F$ is the conjugation class of liftings of Frobenius in the Weil group (or one such [Weil II, 1.7.4]). Now Laumon’s proof goes through after you correct all the typos: $P_{-1}(\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta})$ is $t$-pure of weight $w + 1$ [Weil II, 1.8.4],

$$P_{-1}(\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta}) \simeq P_{-i}(\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta})^\vee(i),$$

and $\alpha$ is an eigenvalue of Frobenius on some $P_{-i}(\mathcal{F}_\bar{\eta})$ (for this you need to know that the filtration of local monodromy is stable under the action of $W(\bar{\eta}, \eta)$, which is true by [Weil II, 1.7.5, 1.8.5]).

4.3.1. (4.3.1.1) It is implicitly claimed that $H^0(U, \mathcal{F}) = 0$, which is a consequence of the fact that $\mathcal{F}$ is assumed irreducible and not geometrically constant. If $\bar{u}$ is a geometric point of $\bar{U} = U \times_{F_q} F$, there is an exact sequence

$$e \to \pi_1(\bar{U}, \bar{u}) \to \pi_1(U, \bar{u}) \to \text{Gal}(F/F_q) \to e$$

(SGA 1 6.1), and $\mathcal{F}$ is not geometrically constant if $\pi_1(\bar{U}, \bar{u})$ does not act trivially on $\mathcal{F}_u$; i.e. the reciprocal image of $\mathcal{F}$ on $\bar{U}$ is not constant. As $\mathcal{F}_{\pi_1(\bar{U}, \bar{u})}$ is stable under $\pi_1(U, \bar{u})$, it must be 0, as $\mathcal{F}$ is assumed irreducible, so $\Gamma(U, \mathcal{F}) = 0$.

4.3.2. Following Deligne, we decorate with a subscript 0 those objects over $F_q$ and remove this subscript to indicate the extension of scalars to $F$. 

(4.3.2.1) Reduction to $X_0 = D_0$. We notate $j_0 : U_0 \hookrightarrow X_0$ and $\mathcal{F}_0$ lisse on $U_0$. The choice of a nonconstant meromorphic function on $X_0$ gives rise to a finite morphism $f_0 : X_0 \rightarrow D_0$. The only condition on the function is that it induce a morphism with nonempty étale locus. As $X_0$ is smooth, this is easy: just pick a point $x \in X_0$ and a generator of the local ring $\mathcal{O}_{X,x}$ (SGA 1 I 9.11). Leray gives

$$R\Gamma(D, f_0_* \mathcal{F}_0) \simeq R\Gamma(X, j_* \mathcal{F}_0).$$

It suffices to find some open $j'_0 : U'_0 \hookrightarrow D_0$ a lisse $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$-sheaf $\mathcal{F}'_0$ on $U'_0$, t-pure of weight $w$, and an identification $f_0_* j_0^* \mathcal{F}_0 \simeq j'_0^* \mathcal{F}'_0$ on $D_0$.

**Lemma.** — Let $\mathcal{F}$ be a lisse sheaf on a normal connected curve $S$ and $j : U \hookrightarrow S$ an open immersion. The unit of adjunction $\mathcal{F} \rightarrow j_* j^* \mathcal{F}$ is an isomorphism.

Admitting the lemma, pick some nonempty $U'_0$ such that $X_0 \times_{D_0} U'_0 \rightarrow U'_0$ is étale, and let $u_0 : V_0 := U_0 \cap (X_0 \times_{D_0} U'_0) \hookrightarrow U_0$. As the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
V_0 & \xrightarrow{u_0} & U_0 \\
\downarrow f_0|V_0 & & \downarrow f_0 \\
U'_0 & \xrightarrow{j'_0} & D_0
\end{array}
$$

commutes,

$$j'_0^* (f_0|V_0)_* (u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0) = f_0_* j_0^* u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0 \simeq f_0_* j_0^* \mathcal{F}_0,$$

and the sheaf $(f_0|V_0)_* (u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0)$ is lisse. More precisely, if $\bar{\eta}$ denotes a geometric generic point of $V_0$ (and its image in $U'_0$), and $u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0$ is defined by the monodromy representation $\pi_1(V_0, \bar{\eta}) \rightarrow \text{Aut} \mathcal{F}_0$, the étale $f_0|V_0$ induces a morphism

$$\pi_1(V_0, \bar{\eta}) \rightarrow \pi_1(U'_0, \bar{\eta})$$

which is an injection of the former group onto the open subgroup of the latter corresponding to the revêtement étale $f_0|V_0$. The sheaf $(f_0|V_0)_* (u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0)$ is defined by the induced representation

$$\mathcal{F}_0 \otimes_{\pi_1(V_0, \bar{\eta})} \pi_1(U'_0, \bar{\eta}).$$

Therefore we take $\mathcal{F}'_0 := (f_0|V_0)_* (u_0^* \mathcal{F}_0)$. 
Proof of lemma. — The lemma can be recovered as a corollary of the reprise below, and, perhaps more cheekily, from [BBD 4.3.2] in light of the note to 1.4.2 above. A simple direct proof goes as follows. Checking the statement fiberwise at a geometric point \(s\) centered on a point \(s'\) reduces us to the setting of a henselian trait \((S, \eta, s, \eta, \bar{s})\) [Weil II 0.6] and \(\mathcal{F}\) a lisse sheaf on \(S\). We have the usual exact sequence

\[ e \rightarrow I \rightarrow \text{Gal}(\eta/\eta) \rightarrow \text{Gal}(\bar{s}/s) \rightarrow e. \]

where by SGA 1 V 8.2 & Arcata IV 2.2 the map \(\text{Gal}(\eta/\eta) \rightarrow \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s)\) factors as

\[ \text{Gal}(\eta/\eta) \rightarrow \pi_1(S, \eta) \sim \pi_1(S, \bar{s}) \sim \pi_1(s, \bar{s}) \simeq \text{Gal}(\bar{s}, s). \]

The stalk \((\eta, \eta^* \mathcal{F})_{\bar{s}}\) can be identified with \(\mathcal{F}_{\eta}^1\), where here \(\mathcal{F}_{\eta}^1\) is the Gal\((\eta, \eta)\)-representation defined by \(\text{Gal}(\eta/\eta) \rightarrow \pi_1(S, \eta)\). The factorization above shows that \(I\) dies in this quotient and therefore acts trivially.

Returning to the proof of (4.3.2.1), Poincaré duality on \(D\) as stated rests on

\[ \text{Theorem (Deligne, SGA 4 1/2 Dualité 1.3).} \quad \text{Let } j : U \hookrightarrow S \text{ be a dense open of a regular scheme } S \text{ purely of dimension } 1 \text{ and } \mathcal{F} \text{ a locally constant constructible sheaf of } \mathbb{Z}/n\text{-modules on } U. \text{ One has } D j_\ast \mathcal{F} = j_\ast D \mathcal{F}, \text{ i.e. } \text{Hom}(j_\ast \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{Z}/n) = j_\ast \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathbb{Z}/n_U) \text{ and } \text{Ext}^i(j_\ast \mathcal{F}, \mathbb{Z}/n) = 0 \text{ for } i > 0. \]

Let \(\bar{A} := A \otimes_{\mathbb{F}_q} \bar{k}\) and \(\bar{D}\) likewise. To calculate \(H^i_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F})\), the perfect pairing

\[ H^i_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \otimes H^{2-i}(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \bar{Q}_\ell(-1) \]

and Artin’s theorem give \(H^0_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) = 0\) and \(H^2_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \simeq \mathbb{M}(-1)\), as \(H^0(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) = \bar{M}\). The exact sequence

\[ 0 = H^i_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow H^0(\bar{D}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \mathcal{F} \rightarrow \bar{H}^i_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow H^1(\bar{D}, j_\ast \mathcal{F}) \rightarrow 0 \]

reduces the calculation of \(H^i_c(\bar{A}, j_\ast \mathcal{F})\) to that of \(H^1(\bar{D}, j_\ast \mathcal{F})\), as \(\delta = 0\). Relative purity (Arcata V 3.4) gives that \(j_\ast \mathcal{F}\) is constant on \(\bar{A}\), and the standard computation \(H^1(\bar{X}, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n(1)) \simeq \text{Pic}(\bar{X}/\bar{k})_{\ell^n}\) for a smooth connected curve \(\bar{X}\) over \(\bar{k}\) shows that \(H^1(\bar{D}, \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n) = 0\) and hence the same is true for \(H^1(\bar{D}, j_\ast \mathcal{F})\) (Arcata III 3.1, IV 6.2).
**Proof.** — connected curve in terms of the Galois group of the function field. More precisely, given so normalization of denote the Galois closure of over the henselization of over henselian traits. Let be a geometric point centered on a closed point of , and henselian, with the same residue field as , hence is also normal. is étale at iff is étale (Stacks tag 09EH). Fixing some and letting , we reduce to studying the normalization of the henselian trait in a finite separable extension of its function field. Let be a geometric point centered on the generic point of . The local inertia at is defined by the exact sequence

\[ e \to I_s \to \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta_s) \to \text{Gal}(\bar{s}/s) \to e. \]

Compare the following lemma to [SGA1, Exp. V §2].

**Lemma.** — \( S_{(s')} \to S_{(s)} \) is étale iff \( I_s \) acts trivially on \( S_{(s')} \).

**Proof.** — Arcata IV 2.2. \( \Rightarrow \) : \( k(\xi) \) is a finite separable extension of \( k(\eta_s) \); let \( K \) denote the Galois closure of \( k(\xi) \) in \( k(\bar{\eta}) \), \( S_{(s)} := \text{Spec } A, S_{(s')} =: \text{Spec } A' \), and \( B \) the normalization of \( A \) in \( K \). \( A \subset (A')^I = A' \subset B^I \) and \( A \subset B^I \) is étale (Stacks tag 09EH), so \( S_{(s')} \to S_{(s)} \) is étale.

A question that should be easy is: describe the category of lisse sheaves on a normal connected curve in terms of the Galois group of the function field. More precisely, given
6. TRANSFORMATION DE FOURIER

a lisse sheaf on an open subscheme $S$ of a smooth complete curve $\overline{S}$, describe the locus of $\overline{S}$ over which the sheaf can be extended to a lisse sheaf. In the case of finite coefficients, the answer goes like this. Let $\eta$ be a geometric point centered on the generic point $\eta$ of the curve $S$. A l.c.c. sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ on $S$ is the same as a revêtement étale $X \to S$; i.e. an open subgroup of $\pi_1(S, \overline{\eta})$. $S$ in turns corresponds to a closed subgroup $Q$ of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}, \eta)$ via the exact sequence

$$e \to Q \to \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}, \eta) \to \pi_1(S, \overline{\eta}) \to e.$$ 

To each point $s \in S$ we attach an inertia subgroup $I_s$ which is a subgroup of $\text{Gal}(\eta_s, \eta)$, where $\eta_s$ is the generic point of $S_s$. As $S_s$ is a projective limit of revêtements étales of $S$, $I_s$ embeds into $\text{Gal}(\eta_s, \eta)$ via

$$I_s \subset \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_s) \subset \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta).$$

We must have that each $I_s$ be contained in $Q$, since as we saw above, the map $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_s) \to \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/s)$ factors through the projection $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_s) \to \pi_1(S, \overline{\eta})$. On the other hand, there may be other points in $\overline{S} - S$ with nontrivial monodromy; i.e. the corresponding inertia acts nontrivially. This means that the direct image along $S \to \overline{S}$ of the sheaf on $S$ represented by $X$ is not locally constant on a neighborhood of such a point. Geometrically, we can take the normalization $X'$ of $\overline{S}$ in the function field of $X$; $X' \times_{\overline{S}} S \simeq X$ (SGA 1 I 10.2). $X'$ is étale at a point if it is net there (SGA 1 I 9.11), so $\mathcal{F}$ extends to a lisse sheaf over $U \to \overline{S}$ iff $X' \times_{\overline{S}} U \to U$ is net. By the lemma above, this is true iff the inertia at each point $u \in U$ acts trivially on the $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_u)$-representation corresponding to the sheaf on $\overline{S}_u$ represented by $X' \times_{\overline{S}} \overline{S}_u$. Properly said, $I_u$ acts on the fiber of this sheaf at $\eta_u$. If $I_u$ acts trivially, then $X'$ is net in the fiber over $u$ and $X$ extends (via $X'$) to a revêtement étale of $S \cup \{u\}$. (By the above lemma, is isomorphic to the direct image of $\mathcal{F}$ under $S \to \overline{S} \cup \{u\}$.) Thinking about $I_u$ as a subgroup of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}, \eta)$, the condition that $I_u$ act trivially on $X' \times_{\overline{S}} \overline{S}_u$ is equivalent to that $I_u$ act trivially on the $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta)$-representation $\mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}$. Therefore, the locus of $\overline{S}$ over which $\mathcal{F}$ can be extended to a lisse sheaf coincides with the union of the $s \in \overline{S}$ such that $I_s$ acts trivially on $\mathcal{F}_{\overline{\eta}}$. This justifies the

**Proposition.** — Let $S$ be a normal connected curve with generic point $\eta$ and $\mathcal{C}$ the category with objects pairs $(\mathcal{F}, U)$ with $U$ a nonempty open of $S$ and $\mathcal{F}$ a l.c.c. sheaf
on \( U \), modulo the equivalence relation \((\mathcal{F}, U) \sim (\mathcal{G}, V)\) if \( \mathcal{F}|U \cap V \cong \mathcal{G}|U \cap V \), and morphisms

\[
\text{Hom}_{\mathcal{C}}((\mathcal{F}, U) \to (\mathcal{G}, V)) = \lim_{W \subset U \cap V} \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}|W, \mathcal{G}|W),
\]

limit taken over nonempty opens \( W \) contained in \( U \cap V \). \( \mathcal{C} \) is equivalent to the category of finite separable extensions of the function field \( k(\eta) \) of \( S \) and \( k(\eta) \)-algebra morphisms. By Grothendieck’s Galois theory, this category is in turn equivalent to the category of finite sets with continuous \( \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta) \) action. Given such an extension \( L \) of \( k(\eta) \), the normalization \( X \) of \( S \) in \( L \) is étale over a nonempty open \( U \subset S \) and represents a l.c.c. sheaf on \( U \). The maximal \( U \subset S \) such that \( X \times_S U \to U \) is étale coincides with the open subscheme of \( S \) with closed points

\[
|U| = \{ s \in S : I_s \text{ acts trivially on } L \}
\]

where here \( I_s \) acts via \( I_s \subset \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta_s) \subset \text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta) \), \( \eta_s \) the generic point of \( S(s) \). If \( \mathcal{F} \) is the sheaf of local sections for \( X \) over this \( U \), the pair \((\mathcal{F}, U)\) is distinguished in its class by the property that \( U \) is maximal for the filtered partial order given by inclusion. Given \( j : V \hookrightarrow U \) and \((\mathcal{G}, V) \sim (\mathcal{F}, U), \mathcal{F} \sim j_* \mathcal{G} \).

**Corollary.** — Given a lisse \((\mathbb{Z}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{R}, E_\lambda, \mathbb{Q}_\ell)\)-sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) on a nonempty open subscheme \( U \) of a normal connected curve \( S \) with geometric generic point \( \eta \), the maximal locus \( U' \subset S \) over which \( \mathcal{F} \) extends to a lisse sheaf \( \mathcal{F}' \) is defined by its set of closed points

\[
|U'| = \{ s \in S : I_s \text{ acts trivially on } \mathcal{F}' \eta \}
\]

If \( j : U \hookrightarrow U' \) denotes the open immersion, \( \mathcal{F}' \sim j_* \mathcal{F} \).

**Proof.** — Disregarding the module structure, the sheaf \( \mathcal{F} \) is represented by a projective system of revêtements étals, to each of which the proposition compatibly applies. \( \square \)

**Corollary.** — Let \( \mathcal{F} \) be a lisse sheaf on a normal connected curve \( S \) and \( j : U \hookrightarrow S \) an open immersion. The unit of adjunction \( \mathcal{F} \to j_* j^* \mathcal{F} \) is an isomorphism.

**Corollary.** — Let \( A \in \{ \mathbb{Z}_\ell, \mathbb{Q}_\ell, \mathbb{R}, E_\lambda, \mathbb{Q}_\ell \} \). The category \( \mathcal{C} \) as above with l.c.c. sheaves replaced by lisse \( A \)-sheaves on a normal connected curve \( S \) is equivalent to
the full subcategory of $A$-modules of finite type with continuous action of $\text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta)$ generated by those $A$-modules $V$ with the property that $I_s$ acts trivially on $V$ for all but finitely many $s \in |S|$.

**Proof.** — By SGA 5 Exp. VI (c.f. note to Sommes trig. 1.2), such a sheaf is equivalent the data of its monodromy representation, which is equivalent to a projective system of representations. Each representation in the projective system corresponds to a revêtement étale of some nonempty open $U \subset S$ together with the appropriate module structure on its fiber. By the proposition, each revêtement étale is unramified over an open set which can be calculated from the action of the local inertia. In order that there exist a nonempty open $U \subset S$ over which all the revêtements étalés in the projective system are unramified (so that the corresponding projective system defines a lisse sheaf on $U$) it is necessary and sufficient that the local inertia at all but finitely many points act trivially on all the revêtements étalés in the projective system. This is true for some $I_s$ iff $I_s$ acts trivially on the fiber of the lisse sheaf considered as $A$-module. $\square$

**Corollary.** — The kernel of the map

$$\text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta) \to \pi_1(U, \bar{\eta})$$

is topologically generated by the subgroups $\{I_s : s \in |U|\}$.

**Proof.** — On one hand, the category of l.c.c. sheaves on $U$ is a Galois category with group $\pi_1(U, \bar{\eta})$. On the other, it is equivalent to the category of finite $\text{Gal}(\bar{\eta}/\eta)$-sets on which $I_s$ acts trivially for all $s \in U$. $\square$

**Remark.** The same argument can be used to extend a lisse sheaf on a normal scheme over the generic point of a divisor. If the scheme is moreover smooth, the sheaf can be extended over the points of codimension $> 1$ by the purity theorem of Zariski-Nagata (SGAA XVI 3.3).

**Remark.** It is a simple exercise to see that if $g : \eta \to X$ is the inclusion of the generic point to a normal integral scheme $X$, and $M_\eta$ is a constant sheaf on $\eta$ with constant value $M$, then $g_*M$ is likewise constant. Let $M_X$ denote the constant sheaf on $X$ with constant
value $M$. We need to show
\[ M_X \rightarrow g^*g^*M_X = g^*M_\eta. \]
(\dagger) is an isomorphism. Fix a geometric point $x$ of $X$ and let $X_{(x)}$ denote the (spectrum of the) strict henselization of $X$ at $x$; $X_{(x)}$ is a normal domain as $X$ is normal. The map on stalks is
\[ M \rightarrow \Gamma(\eta \times_X X_{(x)}, M_\eta). \]
$\eta_x := \eta \times_X X_{(x)}$ is the spectrum of the field of fractions of the strict henselization of $X$ at $x$, which is separable algebraic over $k(\eta)$. Letting $I_x := \text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_x),$
\[ \Gamma(\eta \times_X X_{(x)}, M_\eta) = M^{I_x}, \]
where here we have identified $M$ with the stalk of $M_\eta$ at a geometric point centered on $\eta$. So the condition that the map (\dagger) be an isomorphism at the geometric point $x$ is the same as $I_x$ acting trivially on $M$, considered as $\text{Gal}(\overline{\eta}/\eta_x)$-module. In particular, this condition is satisfied by the constant sheaf, which corresponds to $M$ with trivial action of Galois.

(We implicitly use here the description of étale morphism with normal integral target in EGA IV 4.18.10.7.)

**4.4.** The short exact sequence in the second paragraph is the exact sequence of the first paragraph of (2.3.2) in light of the fact that $j'_*F' = j'_*F'$ is concentrated in degree $-1$. The computation
\[ \mathcal{H}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(j_*F[1])_{0'}) = H^1_c(A \otimes_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*F) \]
follows from proper base change along the closed immersion $\{0'\} \hookrightarrow A'$ applied to either (1.4.1.1), yielding
\[ \mathcal{H}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(j_*F[1])_{0'}) = H^1_c(A \otimes_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*F) = H^1_c(A \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*F) \]
or simply from (1.3.1.1) directly, yielding
\[ \mathcal{H}^{-1}(\mathcal{F}(j_*F[1])_{0'}) = \mathcal{H}^{-1}(R \text{pr}'(\text{pr}' j_*F[1] \otimes \mathcal{L}(x,0))_{0'}[1]) \]
\[ = H^1_c(A \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*F \otimes \mathcal{L}(x,0)) = H^1_c(A \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*F). \]
In any event, this \( G_{0'} \)-module coincides with the stalk of \( j'_*\mathcal{F}' \) at \( \overline{0}' \), which is what is expressed by the equation

\[
(F'_{\overline{0}'})_{0'} = H^1_c(A \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*\mathcal{F}).
\]

For the rightmost term of the short exact sequence, \( I_{0'} \) acts trivially on \( \mathcal{F}_1 \) as \( \mathcal{F} \) is by assumption unramified at infinity. Let \( \pi : \text{Spec } k \{ \pi \} \rightarrow D \) and \( \pi' : \text{Spec } k \{ \pi' \} \rightarrow T' \rightarrow A_{(0')} \) be defined by \( \pi \mapsto 1/x \) and \( \pi' \mapsto x' \). We have

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{R}^{-1} \Phi_{\overline{0}'} (j'_*\mathcal{F}'') &= \text{R}^{-1} \Phi_{\overline{0}'} (\overline{\mathcal{P}}^\alpha (\alpha, j_*\mathcal{F}) \otimes \overline{\mathcal{L}}(x.x')[1])_{(\overline{0}', \overline{0}')} \\
&= (\pi \times \pi')^* \text{R}^{-1} \Phi_{\overline{0}'} (\overline{\mathcal{P}}^\alpha (\alpha, j_*\mathcal{F}) \otimes \overline{\mathcal{L}}(x.x')[1]) \\
&= \text{R}^1 \Phi_{\overline{0}'} (\overline{\mathcal{P}}^\alpha (\mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}}) \otimes \mathcal{L}(\pi'/\pi))_{(\overline{0}, \overline{0})'} \\
&= \mathcal{F}^{(\overline{0}', 0')} (\mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}}) \\
&= \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} \otimes \mathcal{F}^{(\overline{0}', 0')} (\overline{Q}_\ell) = \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} (-1).
\end{align*}
\]

The second-to-last equality is true because \( \mathcal{F} \) is assumed unramified at infinity, so that the action of \( G_{\infty} := \text{Gal}(\overline{\mathcal{F}}_{\infty} / \mathcal{F}_{\infty}) \) on \( \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} \) factors through \( G_{\infty} \rightarrow G_{\infty} / \mathcal{I}_{\infty} = \text{Gal}(\mathcal{F}/\mathcal{F}_q) \), which is procyclic generated by Frobenius, and by Schur’s lemma \( \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} \) splits as a direct sum of \( 1 \)-dimensional torsion sheaves (in the sense of [Weil II §1.2.7]) so that we may assume \( \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} \cong \overline{Q}_\ell^{(b)} \) for \( b \in \overline{Q}_\ell^\times \) an \( \ell \)-adic unit, which is the reciprocal image of a sheaf on \( \text{Spec } F_p \). As twisting by such a sheaf induces an exact autoequivalence of the category (or derived category) of \( \overline{Q}_\ell \)-sheaves, we find that \( \overline{Q}_\ell^{(b)} \otimes \mathcal{F}^{(\overline{0}', 0')} (V) = \mathcal{F}^{(\overline{0}', 0')} (\overline{Q}_\ell^{(b)} \otimes V) \) for any \( G_{\infty} \)-module \( V \).

A few words on the application of the Deligne lemmata: it is used here that \( \mathcal{F} \) is not ramified at infinity, so that if \( \alpha \) denotes simultaneously \( A \hookrightarrow D \) and \( U \hookrightarrow U \cup \{ \infty \} \) (depending on the context), \( \alpha_*\mathcal{F} \) is a lisse sheaf on \( U \cup \{ \infty \} \). This is not necessary to conclude by (4.2.2.1) that for each eigenvalue of Frobenius \( \beta \) on \( \mathcal{F}_{\overline{0}} \),

\[
w_q(\beta) \leq w,
\]

but it is necessary to connect the corresponding statement for \( \mathcal{F}'^\vee \) to that for \( \mathcal{F} \) in the following way. Namely, we find that for each eigenvalue of Frobenius \( \gamma \) on \( (\mathcal{F}'^\vee)_{\overline{0}} \),

\[
w_q(\gamma) \leq -w,
\]
and as $\alpha_* F$ and $\alpha_* F^\vee$ are both lisse, $(\alpha_* F, F^\vee) = (\alpha_* F^\vee, F)$ and

$$(F^\vee)^\vee := (\alpha_* F^\vee)^\vee = (\alpha_* \mathcal{H}om(F, \mathcal{Q}_\ell))^\vee = \mathcal{H}om(\alpha_* F, \mathcal{Q}_\ell)^\vee = \mathcal{H}om(F^\vee, \mathcal{Q}_\ell) = (F^\vee)^\vee,$$

which allows us to conclude from $w_{N(\infty)}(\gamma) \leq -w$ that

$$w_q(\beta) \geq w.$$

This shows in our application that $F'$ is $1$-pure of $1$-weight $w$ and (4.2.2.1) gives that for each eigenvalue $\nu$ of $F_{\ell}'$ on $(j'_* F')^\vee = H^1(\mathbb{A} \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_!F)$,

$$w_q(\nu) \leq w + 1.$$

In the effort to show that $F'$ is $1$-pure, since $F$ is unramified at infinity, the $P_\infty$-module $(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w))_{\overline{\eta}_\infty}$ is trivial; i.e. purely of slope $0$, so that $\mathcal{F}_{\psi}(j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w))[1])$ is of the form $j'_! G'_1[1]$ and $\mathcal{F}_{\psi}^{-1}(j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w))[1])$ is of the form $j'_! G'_2[1]$ and their direct sum is of the form $j'_! G'[1]$ for the lisse $\mathcal{Q}_\ell$-sheaf $G' := G'_1 \oplus G'_2$ on $A' - \{0\}$.

For the coup de grâce, it would be better to refer to (1.1.1), especially (1.1.1.3), and (1.2.1.2) than to (3.1). The point is that we can follow Rapport sur la formule des traces (1.6) and (3.1) (with $t^f$ replaced by $t$ so that degree is measured over $F_q$, not $F_p$, and shifting by $[-1]$ to cancel the shift of $[1]$ on $G$ and in the definition of $\mathcal{F}$) to find that

$$\det(1 - t F'_{\chi'}, G')$$

$$= \det(1 - t F'_{\chi'}, H^0_c(\mathbb{A} \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w)) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{\psi}(x, x') [1]))$$

$$\times \det(1 - t F'_{\chi'}, H^0_c(\mathbb{A} \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w)) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{\psi}^{-1}(x, x')[1]))$$

Now the point is that as $G'$ is concentrated in degree zero, letting $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_{\psi}$ or $\mathcal{L}_{\psi}^{-1}$,

$$(\mathcal{R}(\mathbb{A} \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w)) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{\psi}(x, x')) = H^1_c(\mathbb{A} \times_{F_q} \overline{k}, j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w)) \otimes \mathcal{L}(x, x')) [1].$$

Grothendieck’s trace formula gives therefore that $1 \det(1 - t F'_{\chi'}, G')$ can be computed as stated in terms of the polynomials $Q_{x, x'}$ in light of [Sommes trig. 1.7.6 & 1.7.7] (compare (1.1.1.2) and (1.1.3.3)), which allow us to write for each $x \in |A \times_k x'|$

$$F'_{x'}|(j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w)) \otimes \mathcal{L}_{\psi}(x, x'))_{\overline{x}} = \psi(\mathop{Tr}_k(x)/F_p (x, x')) F'_{x'}|(j_*(F \otimes \hat{F}(-w))_{\overline{x}}).$$

If $P(t) \in \mathbb{R}[t]$ and $\alpha = e^{i\theta}$, then $P(\alpha t)P(\alpha^{-1} t) \in \mathbb{R}[t]$ as well, since $P(\alpha t)P(\alpha t)$ is fixed by complex conjugation.

Q.E.D.
Bibliography

[Weil II] Deligne, Weil II.


[SGA 1] SGA 1.


[Sommes trig.] *Application de la formule des traces aux sommes trigonométriques* dans SGA 4\(\frac{1}{2}\).

[Th. finitude] *Théorèmes de finitude en cohomologie ℓ-adique* dans SGA 4\(\frac{1}{2}\).
1.3. Let’s see why, under the hypotheses of 1.1, $Rf_*$ is of finite cohomological dimension. Localizing, we are in the situation of $f : X \to Y$ a morphism of schemes of finite type over $S$ the spectrum of a field or a dvr. Let $y \to Y$ be a geometric point (which we may assume maps to the closed point of $S$) we wish to show that $R\Gamma(X \times_Y Y_{(y)}, -)$ is of finite $\ell$-cohomological dimension, where $Y_{(y)}$ denotes the strict localization of $Y$ at $y$. We use the criterion of [SGAA, X 4.2] (as $X \times_Y Y_{(y)} \to Y_{(y)}$ is of finite type, the former is noetherian). To show that $\text{cd}_\ell$ of the residue fields of the points of $X \times_Y Y_{(y)}$ is bounded, it suffices by [SGAA, X 2.1] to show the same for the residue fields of points of $Y_{(y)}$. Let $a \in Y$, with image $b \in Y$, and let $Z$ denote the closure of the image of $b$ in $Y$; $y$ is a geometric point of $Z$ and $Y_{(y)} \times_Y Z$ is the strict localization of $Z$ at $y$ ([05WR & 04GH]). As $Y_{(y)} \times_Y b$ is the spectrum of the ring of rational functions $R$ on $Y_{(y)} \times_Y Z$, which is the product of the residue fields of the generic points of the finitely many irreducible components of $Y_{(y)} \times_Y Z$ ([07QQ]), $\text{cd}_\ell(R) = \dim Y_{(y)} \times_Y Z \leq \dim Y$ [SGAA, X 3.2] ([06LK]). In particular, $a$ is the generic point of an irreducible component of $Y_{(y)} \times_Y Z$, so $\text{cd}_\ell(k(a)) \leq \dim Y$.

To establish (ii) of the criterion, we need that for every ring $A$ which is the strict localization of an irreducible closed subscheme $W$ of $X \times_Y Y_{(y)}$ at a geometric point $w \to W$, $\text{cd}_\ell(R(A)) \leq \dim A$. Let $\eta$ denote the generic point of $W$ and replace $X$ and $Y$ with the respective closures of the images of $\eta$. As the strict localization of $W$ at a geometric point $w \to W$ can be obtained as a localization of $W \times_Y Y_{(w)}$, we may assume $w$ maps via $W \to Y$ to $y$. The strict localization of $X \times_Y Y_{(y)}$ at $w$ therefore coincides with $X_{(w)}$. Applying [0AH1] to $X_{(w)} \to X \times_Y Y_{(y)}$ and $X \times_Y Y_{(y)} \to X$, as both are cofiltered limits of étale maps, we find that both maps have discrete, reduced fibers, and $\eta$ is therefore isolated in the generic fiber of the latter map. It follows that if $X_{(w)}$ is equidimensional, $\dim X_{(w)} = \dim W_{(w)}$, as $W_{(w)}$ is obtained from $X_{(w)}$ by throwing away some irreducible components. By the same logic, if $X_{(w)} = \text{Spec}(C)$, $\text{cd}_\ell(R(A)) \leq \text{cd}_\ell R(C)$, and one concludes as $\text{cd}_\ell R(C) = \dim X_{(w)}$ by [SGAA, X 3.2].

It remains to show that $X_{(w)}$ is equidimensional. Let $(B, m)$ denote the Zariski local ring of $X$ at the point on which $w$ is centered. Then $B \to C$ is faithfully flat ([07QQ]), so
satisfies going down. Therefore all the irreducible components of $X_{(w)}$ dominate $X$, and it will suffice to show that given one of them, $X' = \text{Spec } C'$, $\dim X' = \dim B$. If $p \subset C$ is the minimal prime so that $C' = C/p$, $p$ is finitely generated as $C$ is noetherian, so that there is an étale local map $(B, m) \to (B', m')$ so that the generators of $p$ belong to $B'$. Let $p'$ be the restriction of $p$ via $B' \to C$; then by construction $p'C = p$ and $C/p = C'$ is the strict henselization of $B'/p'$ (05WS), so $\dim C' = \dim B'/p'$ (06LK). As $p$ restricts to $(0) \subset B$, so does $p'$. As $X$ is of finite type over $S$, which is the spectrum of a field or of a dvr, $X$ is universally catenary; as any localization of a universally catenary ring is universally catenary, $B$ is universally catenary, so we have the formula (021J)

$$\dim B'/p' = \dim B + \text{trdeg}_B(B'/p') - \text{trdeg}_{k(m)} k(m').$$

(Recall that an étale local map of noetherian local rings is by definition essentially of finite type (0258)). As $B \to B'$ is étale, both residual extensions are finite, and we have shown $\dim C' = \dim B'/p' = \dim B$, as promised.

1.6. Given a morphism of schemes $f : X \to Y$ and sheaves $\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}$ on $Y$, there is always a morphism

$$f^* \mathcal{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \to \mathcal{Hom}(f^*\mathcal{F}, f^*\mathcal{G}).$$

When $\mathcal{F}$ is locally constant constructible, this map is a bijection.

If $\mathcal{I}$ is an injective abelian sheaf on $X$ and $j : U \to X$ belongs to the topology on $X$, then $\mathcal{I}(U)$ is an injective object, since if $A$ is the constant sheaf on $U$ with value $A$,

$$\text{Hom}(A, \mathcal{I}(U)) = \text{Hom}(j_!A, \mathcal{I}),$$

and $j_!$ is exact. The restriction $\mathcal{I}|_U$ is also an injective sheaf, since for $\mathcal{F}$ on $U$

$$\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{I}|_U) = \text{Hom}(j_!\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{I}).$$

Likewise, for any (geometric) point $x \in X$, $\mathcal{I}_x$ is an injective object, from the general fact that a inductive limit of injective modules over a noetherian ring is injective: this follows from Baer’s criterion in an obvious way and holds not only for injective abelian sheaves but also for injective sheaves of $\Lambda$-modules for $\Lambda$ a noetherian ring.
All this to say that $R\text{Hom}(F, G)|_U = R\text{Hom}(F|_U, G|_U)$, and when $F$ is l.c.c., $R\text{Hom}(F, G)|_x = R\text{Hom}(F|_x, G|_x)$, and $R\text{Hom}(F, G)$ is constructible (resp. l.c.c.) when $G$ is. This also shows that for $F$ constant, one can compute $R\text{Hom}$ by a projective resolution of the constant value of $F$.

1.11. $R\text{pr}_2\ast \text{pr}_1\ast K = b\ast R\Gamma(X, K)$ is base change for $Ra_\ast$ along $b$. In the string of equalities, the first one is just Leray, and the second and last are again base change morphisms, discussed at length in SGAA XVII §4. Given

$$
\begin{array}{c}
X' \xrightarrow{g'} X \\
\downarrow f' \downarrow f \\
S' \xrightarrow{g} S,
\end{array}
$$

at the level of complexes, the map $L \otimes g^\ast f_\ast K \to f'_\ast(f''L \otimes g''K)$ factors as

$$
L \otimes g^\ast f_\ast K \to L \otimes f'_\ast g''K \to f'_\ast f''L \otimes f'_\ast g''K \to f'_\ast(f''L \otimes g''K),
$$

where the last arrow comes from the fact that $F(U) \otimes G(U)$ are among the sections of $F \otimes G$ over $U$.

2.1. It is claimed that $R\text{Hom}(F, \mathbb{Z}/m) \leftarrow \text{Hom}(F, \mathbb{Z}/m)$ when $F$ is a l.c.c. sheaf (c.f. SGAA XVIII 3.2.6). There is evidently an arrow, and by the note to 1.6 (and since $\mathbb{Z}/m$ is an injective $\mathbb{Z}/m$-module), it is an isomorphism. It holds more generally with $\mathbb{Z}/m$ replaced by any l.c.c. sheaf locally isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}/m$, such as one obtained by twisting.
Bibliography

[Th. finitude] *Théorèmes de finitude en cohomologie ℓ-adique* par Deligne, dans SGA $4\frac{1}{2}$. 
8. La classe de cohomologie associée à un cycle

1.1.1. The reference is Giraud, Cohomologie non abélienne III §3, in particular §3.5 for the abelian case.

1.1.4. ‘$H^1_D(X, F)$ classifies the $F$-torsors on $X$, trivialized on $U$’ & ‘Pour toute section $f \in H^0(U, F)$, $\partial f \in H^1_D(X, F)$ est la classe du torseur trivial $F$, trivialisé sur $U$ par la section $f’$ implicitement, deux trivializations over $U$ of a torsor on $X$ are considered the same if their difference extends to a trivialization of the torsor on all of $X$.

In concrete terms, therefore, two sections $f, g \in H^0_D(X, H)$ give the same class in $H^1_D(X, F)$ if their difference $f - g \in H^0_D(X, H)$ has the property that the trivialization of the associated torsor $\beta^{-1}(f - g)$ provided by the zero section (which $f - g$ restricts to over $U$) extends to a global trivialization of $\beta^{-1}(f - g)$; this is true iff $f - g$ is in the image of some section of $H^0_D(X, G)$.

In the second construction, the trivial torsor $F$ with a trivialization $f$ over $U$ represents the class $0 \in H^1_D(X, F)$ iff $f$ extends to a global section in $H^0(X, F)$.

1.1.5. Let $\alpha, \beta$ denote the nonzero arrows of the exact sequence and $f \in H^0(U, F)$. The long exact sequence in $R\Gamma$ shows that the image of $\partial \beta(f)$ by the map $H^1_D(X, F) \to H^1(X, F)$ is zero, so $\partial \beta(f)$ indeed represents the trivial torsor $0 \in H^1(X, F)$. The map $\partial \beta : H^0(U, F) \to H^1_D(X, F)$ has kernel $H^0(X, F)$ since $H^1_D(X, j_*j^*F) = 0$. The class of $\partial \beta(f) \in H^1_D(X, F)$ is represented by $\beta^{-1}(\beta(f)) \subset j_*j^*F$ with the trivialization over $U$ given by the zero section. Transform this torsor by $\beta^{-1}(\beta(f)) \mapsto \beta^{-1}(\beta(f)) - f$. The result is again a trivial torsor, this time with trivialization given by $-f$.

The distinction is that the torsor $\beta^{-1}(\beta(f))$ is trivialized over all of $X$ by the global section $f \in H^0(X, \beta^{-1}(\beta(f))) \subset H^0(X, j_*j^*F)$ but we pick the trivialization given by the zero section over $U$, while the torsor $\beta^{-1}(\beta(f)) - f$ is trivialized over all of $X$ by the zero section, but we pick the trivialization given by $-f$ over $U$. They represent the same class in $H^1_D(X, F)$ and show that the map $\partial \beta$ of (1.1.5) is indeed the opposite of the map given in the second paragraph of (1.1.4).
1.2.2. (1.2.2.1) induces (1.2.2.2) in the way discussed in the section on cup-products in the notes to Astérisque 100. In short: \( O68G \).

Suppose we stay in \( D^- \). To obtain (1.2.2.3), take truncated flasque resolutions with flat stalks \( A \) and \( B \) of \( K \) and \( L \) as discussed in the note to 1.2.3 below. Then \( A \otimes B \) computes \( K \otimes^L L \), \( i^*L \) is still adapted to tensor product, and we get a map
\[
Ri^!K \otimes^L i^*L = i^!A \otimes i^*B \to i^!(A \otimes B).
\]
Take a \( K \)-injective or truncated flasque resolution \( A \otimes B \to I \) to get a map
\[
i^!(A \otimes B) \to i^!(I) = Ri^!(A \otimes B) = Ri^!(K \otimes L),
\]
and hence (1.2.2.3). Now to deduce (1.2.2.1) from (1.2.2.3) by applying \( R\Gamma(Y, -) \), follow the recipe of the note to 1.2.4. It starts by replacing \( Ri^!K \) and \( i^*L \) by complexes \( C \) and \( D \) simultaneously adapted to tensor product and global sections, and writing the map \( \Gamma(Y, C) \otimes \Gamma(Y, D) \to \Gamma(Y, C \otimes D) \) coming from the map (1.2.2.3), since \( \Gamma(Y, C) \) and \( \Gamma(Y, D) \) compute \( R\Gamma(Y, Ri^!K) \) and \( R\Gamma(Y, i^*L) \), respectively, and \( C \otimes D = Ri^!K \otimes^L i^*L \). Now take an injective resolution \( C \otimes D \to I \), flat resolutions \( P_1 \to \Gamma(Y, C) \) and \( P_2 \to \Gamma(Y, D) \), and write
\[
R\Gamma(Y, Ri^!K) \otimes^L R\Gamma(Y, i^*L) = P_1 \otimes P_2 \to \Gamma(Y, C) \otimes \Gamma(Y, D)
\]
\[
= \Gamma(Y, C \otimes D) \to \Gamma(Y, I) = R\Gamma(Y, Ri^!K \otimes^L i^*L).
\]

1.2.3. Indeed, if the right derived functors are of finite cohomological dimension so that one can stay within \( D^- \), [SGAA, XVII 4.2.10] shows that there are enough complexes which are adapted to both tensor product and direct image.

It is worth mentioning the work of Spaltenstein and Serpé which extend \( \otimes^L \) to \( D \times D \) via \( K \)-flat resolutions (\( O6Y7 \)) and extend any right derived functor with no hypothesis of cohomological finiteness to all of the unbounded derived category using \( K \)-injective resolutions (\( O79I, O70G \)). However, this still doesn’t get around the issue of producing complexes simultaneously adapted for both tensor product and a left-exact functor addressed above.
1.2.4. Let’s assume we stay within $D^-$. The isomorphism $j_* F \otimes j! G \leftarrow j_!(F \otimes G)$ derives into an isomorphism $Rj_* F \otimes^L j! G \leftarrow j_!(F \otimes^L G)$, e.g. by taking a flat resolution of $G$ and K-injective or truncated flasque resolution of $F$ (or injective resolution if $F$ is also in $D^+$). Once this isomorphism is achieved, one can apply $R\Gamma(X, -)$ to get $R\Gamma(X, Rj_* F \otimes^L j! G) \rightarrow R\Gamma(X, j_! M)$. Let $A$ and $B$ be complexes simultaneously adapted for tensor product and global sections representing $Rj_* F$ and $j_! G$, respectively. Then $Rj_* F \otimes^L j! G = A \otimes B$, $\Gamma(X, A) = R\Gamma(X, Rj_* F)$, $\Gamma(X, B) = R\Gamma(X, j_! G)$, and we have an evident map $\Gamma(X, A) \otimes \Gamma(X, B) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, A \otimes B)$. Take any K-injective or truncated flasque resolution $A \otimes B \rightarrow I$ (or injective if $A \otimes B$ is in $D^+$) and we have a map

$$\Gamma(X, A \otimes B) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, I) = R\Gamma(X, Rj_* F \otimes^L j! G) \rightarrow R\Gamma(X, j_! M).$$

Take flat resolutions of $P_1 \rightarrow \Gamma(X, A)$ and $P_2 \rightarrow \Gamma(X, B)$ to get a map

$$R\Gamma(X, Rj_* F) \otimes^L R\Gamma(X, j_! G) = \Gamma(X, A) \otimes^L \Gamma(X, B) = P_1 \otimes P_2 \rightarrow \Gamma(X, A) \otimes \Gamma(X, B).$$

Putting these maps together, we find the promised map

$$R\Gamma(X, Rj_* F) \otimes^L R\Gamma(X, j_! G) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, A) \otimes \Gamma(X, B) \rightarrow \Gamma(X, A \otimes B) \rightarrow R\Gamma(X, j_! M).$$

1.2.5. The local product on $Y$ referred to at the end is of course

$$Ri^! K \otimes^L i^* L \rightarrow R\check{i}^!(K \otimes^L L) \rightarrow R\check{i}^! M.$$  

1.3.6. A morphism $f$ is homogeneous of degree $d$ if $f$ sends the homogeneous piece of degree $n$ to the homogeneous piece of degree $n + d$. Suppose $f$ and $g$ homogeneous of degrees $d$ and $e$ respectively, so that we can represent $fg$ as a linear combination of elements of the form $w_f \otimes v_f^\vee \otimes v_g \otimes w_g^\vee$ where the degrees of $w_f, v_f, w_g, v_g$ are $n + d, n, m + e, m$ (so that $v_f^\vee$ and $w_g^\vee$ have degree $-n$ and $-m - e$, respectively, but the grading is $\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ so it doesn’t matter). To move the above element into the form $V^\vee \otimes V \otimes W^\vee \otimes W$, the corresponding $N = (n + d)n + (n + d)(m + e) + (n + d)m \mod 2$.

Now $gf$ can be represented as a linear combination of elements of the form $v_g \otimes w_g^\vee \otimes w_f \otimes v_f^\vee$ with the same degrees as above. To move into the form $V^\vee \otimes V \otimes W^\vee \otimes W$ the corresponding $N = (n + d)n + n(m + e) + nm \mod 2$. The sum of these two $N$ is $de = \deg f \deg g \mod 2$. 

2.1.3. The anticommutativity is a consequence of [BBD, 1.1.11] in light of the commutativity of the diagram below where each row and column is distinguished.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\Gamma(X - D, \mu_n) & \rightarrow & \Gamma(X - D, G_m) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\Gamma(X, \mu_n) & \rightarrow & \Gamma(X, G_m) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\Gamma_D(X, \mu_n) & \rightarrow & \Gamma_D(X, G_m)
\end{array}
\]

2.1.4. By (2.1.3) it suffices to see that the \(\mu_n\)-torsor of \(n\)th roots of unity generates \(H^1(X - D, \mu_n)\). The argument is contained in [SGAA, XVI 3.6]. The fact that \(t\) is a regular parameter and \(D\) is regular implies that the Kummer covering \(U' := \text{Spec} \, o_{X - D}[t^{1/n}] \rightarrow X - D\) is a principal Galois covering of group \(\mu_n\). As \(X\) is strictly local, \(X' := \text{Spec} \, o_X[t^{1/n}]\) is too (it is regular by [SGAI, XIII 5.1]), so any étale covering of \(U'\) that extends to an étale covering of \(X'\) is trivial. Abhyankar’s lemma [SGAI, XIII 5.2] implies that every principal Galois covering of \(U := X - D\) with group \(\mu_n\) has the property that its reciprocal image on \(U'\) extends to an étale covering of \(X'\), hence is trivial. We know that \(H^1(U, \mu_n)\) classifies \(\mu_n\)-torsors on \(U\), i.e. principal Galois covers of \(U\) of group \(\mu_n\), and that these are classified by \(\text{Hom}(\pi_1(U, u), \mu_n)\) for a geometric point \(u\) of \(U\). As Abhyankar tells us any such homomorphism must factor through the quotient \(\pi_1(U, u) \rightarrow \mu_n\), the class of the \(\mu_n\)-torsor \(U'\) generates \(H^1(U, \mu_n) = \text{Hom}(\mu_n, \mu_n) = \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z}\), as \(U'\) corresponds to \(\text{id} : \mu_n \rightarrow \mu_n\).

2.1.5. Recall that the trace map for a curve over an algebraically closed field of characteristic exponent \(p\) not dividing \(n\) and with projective completion \(\overline{X}\) is defined [SGAA, XVIII 1.1.3] via the isomorphism

\[
H^2_c(X, \mu_n) \sim H^2(\overline{X}, \mu_n) = \text{Pic}(\overline{X})/n = (\mathbb{Z}/n)^c
\]

where \(c\) is the number of connected components of \(\overline{X}\). The trace map (when \(X\) is reduced) is the composition of these isomorphisms with the sum map \((\mathbb{Z}/n)^c \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}/n\).
As the image of \( c\ell(P) \) in \( H^2(\overline{X}, \mu_n) \) is the same as that of the line bundle \( \mathcal{O}(P) \), as element of \( \text{Pic}(\overline{X}) \), and this line bundle has degree 1, one concludes.

(The morphism \( R\Gamma_P \rightarrow R\Gamma_{\overline{Y}} \): if \( j : X \hookrightarrow \overline{X} \) and \( i : P \hookrightarrow X \) or \( \overline{X} \), and \( \mathcal{F} \) is a sheaf on \( X \), then \( i^!\mathcal{F} = i^!j^!\mathcal{F} \), so

\[
\Gamma_p(X, \mu_n) := \Gamma(P, i^!\mathcal{F}) = \Gamma(P, i^!j^!\mathcal{F}) =: \Gamma_{p}(\overline{X}, j^!\mathcal{F}) \rightarrow \Gamma(\overline{X}, j^!\mathcal{F}) =: \Gamma(X, \mathcal{F}).
\]

2.2.1. Recall that the Koszul complex of a regular sequence of length \( c \) generating the ideal \( \mathfrak{a} \) provides a projective resolution of length \( c \) of \( \mathcal{A}/\mathfrak{a} \). It should read \( i > c \).

\[
\dim(\mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{a}) = c \rightarrow \text{by Nakayama's lemma, this amounts to showing that the } c \text{ equations generating } \mathfrak{a} \text{ constitute a minimal generating set. As these } c \text{ equations } x_1, \ldots, x_c \text{ form a regular sequence, and any regular sequence in } \mathcal{A} \text{ can be extended to a sequence of parameters for } \mathcal{A} \text{ [S] IV-16 Prop. 7], so for } 1 \leq k \leq c, \dim \mathcal{A}/(x_1, \ldots, x_k) = \dim \mathcal{A} - k \text{ [S] III-11 Prop. 6], } x_1, \ldots, x_c \text{ form a minimal generating set for } \mathfrak{a}.
\]

The last statement is that any sequence of elements \( y_1, \ldots, y_c \) of \( \mathfrak{a} \) whose image in \( \mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{a} \) is a basis, is a regular sequence generating \( \mathfrak{a} \). The ‘generating’ part is Nakayama’s lemma, which also tells us that \( y_1, \ldots, y_c \) is a minimal generating set for \( \mathfrak{a} \). That \( y_1, \ldots, y_c \) is a regular sequence in \( \mathcal{A} \) follows, e.g. from Kaplansky, Commutative Rings Theorem 129, taking \( I = \mathfrak{a} = (y_1, \ldots, y_c) \), \( R = \mathcal{A} \), and \( \mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A} \) there. (In his notation, \( G(I, \mathcal{A}) = c \), the common length of all maximal \( \mathcal{A} \)-regular sequences contained in the ideal \( I = \mathfrak{a} \).) In light of the above, Kaplansky’s theorem implies the easier-to-remember

*Proposition.* — *An ideal in a Noetherian local ring is generated by a regular sequence if and only if any minimal set of generators is a regular sequence.*

For, as we have seen, any minimal set of generators for the ideal \( \mathfrak{a} \) has cardinality equal to the dimension of \( \mathfrak{a}/\mathfrak{m}\mathfrak{a} \) as an \( \mathcal{A}/\mathfrak{m} \)-vector space.

2.2.2. c) Digression on restricting cohomology classes and \( c\ell \) in particular, let

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D_1 \cap D_2 & \hookrightarrow & D_2 \\
\int & j_2 & \int \\
D_1 & \hookrightarrow & X \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
u^{-1}D & \hookrightarrow & X' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
D & \hookrightarrow & X
\end{array}
\]
set notation. There is a morphism of restriction \( \Gamma_{D_1}(X, F) \to \Gamma_{D_1 \cap D_2}(D_2, F) \) obtained as

\[
\Gamma_{D_1}(X, F) = \Gamma(X, i_1^* i_1^* F) \to \Gamma(X, i_1* i_1^* i_2^* i_2^* F) = \Gamma(X, i_2* i_1^* i_1^* i_2^* F) = \Gamma_{D_1 \cap D_2}(D_2, F).
\]

As for \( c_\ell \), well given \( u : X' \to X \) as in (2.1.1), we can pull back the torsor and choice of trivialization, which corresponds to the following on \( H_1^1 \):

\[
\Gamma_D(X, G_m) \to \Gamma_D(X, u_* u^* G_m) \to \Gamma_D(X, u_* G_m) = \Gamma(D, i^*_u G_m)
\]

\[
= \Gamma(D, u_* i^*_u G_m) = \Gamma(u^{-1}D, i^*_u G_m) = \Gamma_{u^{-1}D}(X', G_m).
\]

Of course we can do the same for \( G_m \) replaced by \( \mu_n \) and the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
H^i_D(X, G_m) & \to & H^{i+1}_D(X, \mu_n) \\
\downarrow u^* & & \downarrow u^* \\
H^{i-1}_{u^{-1}D}(X', G_m) & \to & H^{i+1}_{u^{-1}D}(X', \mu_n)
\end{array}
\]

commutes, showing that provided \( u^*D \) is again a Cartier divisor, \( c_\ell_n(u^*D) = u^* c_\ell_n(D) \).

One would like to define a product of the type

\[
H^*_D(X) \otimes H^*_{D_1 \cap D_2}(D_1) \otimes \ldots \otimes H^*_Y(D_1 \cap \ldots \cap D_{c-1}) \to H^*_Y(X).
\]

naïvely following the prescription of (1.2.1), and everything starts out all right: it is easy to define a map

\[
\Gamma_{D_1}(X, F) \otimes \Gamma_{D_2}(D_1, G) \to \Gamma_{D_2}(X, F \otimes G)
\]

as in (1.2.1), but I have no idea how to derive this map in general.
Bibliography

[BBD] Faisceaux Pervers, Astérisque 100.
[Cycle] La classe de cohomologie associée à un cycle par Grothendieck, dans SGA 4\(\frac{1}{2}\).
[S] Serre, Algèbre Locale, Multiplicités.
[SGA1] SGA 1.
[SGA4\(\frac{1}{2}\)] SGA 4\(\frac{1}{2}\).
9. The derived category of perverse sheaves

1.1. The condition that $k$ be algebraically closed when $D(X) = D^b_c(X, \overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell)$ is at first to secure \cite[2.2.14]{BBD}, and later to secure the existence of good neighborhoods.

2.1. The category $D(\eta)$ coincides with the Verdier quotient of $D(X)$ by the thick subcategory generated by the complexes acyclic at $\eta$.

2.1.1. In $\dim X = 0$, the statement is clear as the abelian category of $\overline{\mathbb{Q}}_\ell$-sheaves on such an $X$ is semisimple.

To find the neighborhood $U$, we proceed as follows: first shrink $U$ so that $M_U, N_U$ are lisse, and $U$ is integral and contained in the smooth locus ($X$ is reduced by assumption). By Artin's good neighborhood theorem ($k$ is algebraically closed), we find a $Z$ smooth over $k$ and a $k$-morphism $f : U \to Z$ with geometrically irreducible fibers of dimension 1 ($f$ is smooth of relative dimension 1 in the sense of Hartshorne, recalling EGA IV$_4$ 17.8.2 or SGA 1 II 2.1). In particular, $Z$ is regular and, as $f(U) = Z$, irreducible hence integral. Replace $Z$ by an affine open $\text{Spec } A$ contained in it and $U$ by an affine open $\text{Spec } B$ contained in the preimage; the only thing that changes is that some fibers of $f$ may now be empty; if a fiber is nonempty, it is still geometrically irreducible of dimension 1. As $f$ is still smooth, hence in particular open, there is some $a \in A$ with the property that $D(a) \subset f(U) \subset Z$ and that the restriction of $R^q f_* \mathcal{H}om(M_a, N_U)$ to $D(a)$ is lisse for all $q$. As $f$ is dominant, the induced ring homomorphism $A \to B$ is injective, the map of spectra $\| : \text{Spec } B_a \to \text{Spec } A_a$ is surjective, and the $R^q \|_* \mathcal{H}om(M_a, N_U)$ are lisse. Set $U = \text{Spec } B_a, Z = \text{Spec } A_a; \| : U \to Z$ now has all the desired properties; it is smooth, affine, with 1-dimensional fibers (which are moreover geometrically irreducible), $Z$ is smooth over $k$ hence regular, and the $L^q$ are lisse sheaves on $Z$.

Now to see that $L^q = 0$ unless $q = 0$ or 1. The argument below works for finite coefficients; we let $R$ be the ring of integers of a finite extension $E_\ell$ of $\mathbb{Q}_\ell$ with maximal ideal $m$ and note that $R/m^n$ is injective as a module over itself by Baer’s criterion. Let $\Lambda := R/m^n$ and we consider constructible sheaves of $\Lambda$-modules. Let $f$ be any l.c.c.
sheaf of $\Lambda$-modules on $U$; we wish to show that $R^q\mathcal{F} = 0$ unless $q = 0, 1$. En effet,

$$R^q\mathcal{F}[2] \cong R^qR\mathcal{H}om(\mathcal{F}^\vee(1), \Lambda(1)[2]) \rightarrow R\mathcal{H}om(R^q\mathcal{F}^\vee(1), \Lambda)$$

$$\cong \mathcal{H}om(R^q\mathcal{F}^\vee(1), \Lambda)$$

and it reduces to showing that $R^q(\mathcal{F}^\vee(1))$ is concentrated in degrees 1 and 2, which will follow from proper base change from the corresponding fiberwise statement. In other words, we must show that given a l.c.c. sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ on a smooth affine curve $Y$ over an algebraically closed field $k$, $H^i(Y, \mathcal{F})$ unless $i = 1, 2$. This follows immediately from Poincaré duality on $Y$

$$H^{2-i}(Y, \mathcal{F}^\vee(1)) \rightarrow H^i(Y, \mathcal{F})^\vee$$

and Artin’s theorem.

The abutment of the Leray spectral sequence

$$H^p(Z, L^g) \Rightarrow H^{p+q}(U, \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)) \cong H^{p+q}R\mathcal{H}om(\overline{Q}_\ell, \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U))$$

is naturally isomorphic to

$$\text{Ext}^{p+q}_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) \cong H^{p+q}R\mathcal{H}om(\overline{Q}_\ell, R\mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U))$$

because as $M_U$ is a lisse $\overline{Q}_\ell$-sheaf, $\mathcal{H}om(M_U, -)$ is an exact functor. To see that $\text{Ext}^i(M_U, N_U) = 0$ for $i > 0$, note that since $M_U$ is lisse, for any geometric point $x$ of $U$, $\mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)_x = \mathcal{H}om((M_U)_x, (N_U)_x)$ and likewise for $R\mathcal{H}om$ (c.f. note to Th. fin. 1.6), so that $R\mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)$ is connective iff $\mathcal{H}om((M_U)_x, (N_U)_x)$ is, and we can compute the latter via a projective resolution of $(M_U)_x$. But $M_U$ is a lisse $\overline{Q}_\ell$-sheaf, so that we can represent it on the level of a finite coefficient ring $\Lambda$ by a torsion-free sheaf, in which case $(M_U)_x$ is a projective $\Lambda$-module.

### 2.1.2. On the definition of the arrows

$$H^p(Z, R^q\mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)) \rightarrow H^p(Y', R^q\mathcal{H}om(M_{U'}, Q_{U'})) :$$
let \( j : Y' \hookrightarrow Z \) denote the immersion and its base extensions; then

\[
\text{R} \Gamma(Z, R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{R} \Gamma(Z, j^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)) \\
\xrightarrow{\sim} \text{R} \Gamma(Z, j^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y})) \\
\rightarrow \text{R} \Gamma(Z, j^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y})) \\
\rightarrow \text{R} \Gamma(Z, Rj^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, Q_{U_Y})) \\
= \text{R} \Gamma(Y', R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, Q_{U_Y})),
\]

where the first arrow is (inconsequentially) an isomorphism since \( L^0 \) is lisse. (Of course \( j^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L = H^0 j^*R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \xrightarrow{\sim} H^0\mathcal{Y}_L j^* = R^0\mathcal{Y}_L j^* \).)

**Proof of (2.1.2) \( \Rightarrow \) (2.1.1).** In the proof, (2.1.2 b) is invoked with \( Z \) and replaced by \( Y \) and sheaves \( M_{U_Y} \) and \( P_{U_Y} \), where \( P_{U_Y} \) is lisse on \( U_Y \) but the condition that the \( R^q\mathcal{Y}_L(M_{U_Y} \otimes P_{U_Y}) \) be lisse on \( Y \) is not secured by (2.1.2 a). The condition that the \( L^q \) be lisse is used in the proof of (2.1.2 b). Therefore (2.1.2 a) should say

(2.1.2 a) There exists an open \( Y \subset Z \), a lisse \( P_{U_Y} \) in \( M(U_Y) \) and an injection \( N_{U_Y} \hookrightarrow P_{U_Y} \) such that the sheaves \( R^q\mathcal{Y}_L(M_{U_Y} \otimes P_{U_Y}) \) are lisse and the corresponding arrow \( R^1\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \rightarrow R^1\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}) \) is null.

Of course, the original (2.1.2 a) implies this statement.

As for the proof of (2.1.2) \( \Rightarrow \) (2.1.1), one must observe that restriction from \( U \) to \( U_Y \) and the arrow \( N_{U_Y} \hookrightarrow P_{U_Y} \) together induce a morphism of spectral sequences which is the zero map on \( H^{i-1}(Z, R^1\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U)) \rightarrow H^{i-1}(Y, R^1\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y})) \) (this arrow is defined as the one in (2.1.2 b)), implying the first statement as the image of the \( E_2 \) page has

\[
\text{im}(H^i(U, R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_U, N_U))) \rightarrow H^i(Y, R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}))
\]
as the only nonzero term of the \( i \)th diagonal, so that its image in the abutment, which coincides with its image on the \( E_3 \) page, which coincides with its image in \( H^i(Y, R^0\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}))/d_2(H^{i-2}(Y, R^1\mathcal{Y}_L \mathcal{H}om(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}))) \), coincides with the image of \( \text{Ext}^i_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) \) in \( \text{Ext}^i_{D(U_Y)}(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}) \). This is in turn killed by (2.1.2 b) for \( i > 0 \).
Proof of 2.1.2 a.

\[ L^1 \otimes L^1 = \mathcal{H}om(L^1, L^1) = \mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, N)) \]

\[ \simeq H^1\mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, N)) \simeq R^1\mathcal{H}om(\mathbb{P}^1L^1, \mathcal{H}om(M, N)) \]

\[ \simeq R^1\mathcal{H}om(\mathbb{P}^1L^1 \otimes M, N) \]

where the first isomorphism on the second line holds because \( L^1 \) is a lisse \( \overline{Q}_\ell \)-sheaf so that \( \mathcal{H}om(L^1, -) \) is an exact functor, as discussed above.

The injection \( N \hookrightarrow P_UY \) induces the following map on \( L^1 \otimes L^1 \):

\[ L^1 \otimes L^1 \xrightarrow{\sim} R^1\mathcal{H}om(\mathbb{P}^1L^1 \otimes M, N) \rightarrow R^1\mathcal{H}om(\mathbb{P}^1L^1 \otimes M, P_UY); \quad \text{i.e.} \]

\[ \mathcal{H}om(L^1, L^1) = \mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, N)) \rightarrow \mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, P_UY)). \]

If \( \alpha \) is the image of the global extension \( \tilde{\alpha} \), then the injection \( N \hookrightarrow P_UY \) defined by the extension of class \( \alpha \) will annihilate \( \tilde{\alpha} \) (c.f. note to BBD 3.1.17). As \( \alpha \) is the image of \( \tilde{\alpha} \) under a natural map (i.e. \( N \hookrightarrow P_UY \) induces a morphism of Leray spectral sequences), this injection likewise kills \( \alpha \). But \( L^1 \otimes L^1 = \mathcal{H}om(L^1, L^1) \), and under this isomorphism \( \alpha \mapsto \text{id} \), so that the global section \( \alpha \in H^0(Z, L^1 \otimes L^1) \) goes to zero precisely when the section \( \text{id} \in \mathcal{H}om(L^1, L^1) \) does; i.e. precisely when \( L^1 \) is annihilated.

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
\quad \mathcal{H}om(L^1, L^1) & \ni \text{id} & \longrightarrow 0 \\
L^1 = \mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, N)) & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{H}om(L^1, R^1\mathcal{H}om(M, P_UY))
\end{array} \]

The induction step is used to kill the obstruction in the following way: \( \dim Z = -1 + \dim X \) so the induction hypothesis gives \( Y \subset Z \) and \( \varphi : L^1 Y \hookrightarrow K_Y \) inducing zero on \( \text{Ext}^2_D(Z)(L^0\varphi, L^1\varphi) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^2_D(Y)(L^0\varphi, L^1\varphi) \). But

\[ \text{Ext}^2_D(Z)(L^0\varphi, L^1\varphi) = H^2R\mathcal{H}om(L^0\varphi, L^1\varphi) = H^2R\mathcal{H}om(\overline{Q}_\ell, R\mathcal{H}om(L^0\varphi, L^1\varphi)) \]

\[ = H^2\mathcal{H}om(\overline{Q}_\ell, \mathcal{H}om(L^0, L^1)) = H^2(Z, L^0 \otimes L^1), \]

and likewise on \( Y \).
Typos: it is clear from the above that
\[ K_Y \otimes L_Y^1 \cong R^1 \mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (\mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \otimes M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \quad \text{and} \]
\[ \overline{\varphi (\alpha)} \in \text{Ext}^1 (\mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \otimes M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \]
with \( \mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \) instead of \( \mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \) and \( M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y} \) in lieu of \( M_U, N_U \). Finally, \( P_{U_Y} \) is defined by an extension of \( \mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \), not \( \mathbb{Y}^* K_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \), by \( N_{U_Y} \).

The point is that, localizing about any point of the base \( Y \), the sheaves \( L_Y^1 \) and \( K_Y \) become constant so that along any fiber, \( L_Y^1 \rightarrow K_Y \) admits a complement splitting \( K_Y \). Therefore the monomorphism \( N_{U_Y} \rightarrow P_{U_Y} \) killing \( \varphi (\alpha) \) also kills \( \alpha \) since it does so along every fiber, and it does so along every fiber because along any fiber there is a retraction to \( \alpha \mapsto \varphi (\alpha) \).

Explanation of proof: our objective is to find an injection \( N_{U_Y} \rightarrow P_{U_Y} \) such that the corresponding arrow \( R^1 \mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \rightarrow R^1 \mathbb{Y}_* (M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}) \) is null. The first part of the proof is enough to construct such a \( P_{U_Y} \) if we look over the strict henselization of \( Y \) at a closed point \( y \in Y \), because of course any lisse sheaf on \( Y_y \) is constant so that if we set \( Z = Y_y \), \( \text{Ext}^1 (\mathbb{Y}^* L_Y^1 \otimes M, N) = H^0 (Y_y, L_Y^1 \otimes L^1) \) since \( R\Gamma (Y_y, -) = H^0 (Y_y, -) \) is an exact functor so that
\[
\text{Ext}^1 (\mathbb{Y}^* L_Y^1 \otimes M, N) = H^1 R\Gamma R\mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (\mathbb{Y}^* L_Y^1 \otimes M, N) \\
= R\Gamma H^1 R\mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (\mathbb{Y}^* L_Y^1 \otimes M, N) = H^0 (Y_y, R^1 \mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (\mathbb{Y}^* L_Y^1 \otimes M, N)) \\
= H^0 (Y_y, L_Y^1 \otimes L^1).
\]
Now the point is that even though it is simple to find a \( P_{U_Y} \) looking over each closed fiber, the existence of a global \( P_{U_Y} \) is obstructed by the possibly nonzero class \( \partial (\alpha) \). Therefore the trick is to take an injection \( \varphi : L_Y^1 \rightarrow K_Y \) into a lisse \( K_Y \) on \( Y \subset Z \) which kills \( \partial (\alpha) \). Now, \( \varphi (\alpha) \in H^0 (Y, K_Y \otimes L_Y^1) \) is annihilated by \( L_Y^1 \rightarrow R^1 \mathbb{Y}_* \mathcal{H}om (M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}) \) for the same reasons as before, but now the existence of \( P_{U_Y} \) is guaranteed by design. The
injection $\varphi$ induces an injection of global sections $H^0(Y, L^1_Y \otimes L^1_Y) \hookrightarrow H^0(Y, K_Y \otimes L^1_Y)$.

$$H^0(Y, L^1_Y \otimes L^1_Y) \xleftarrow{\varphi \otimes \text{id}} H^0(Y, K_Y \otimes L^1_Y)$$

As the rightmost vertical arrow kills $\varphi(\alpha)$, the leftmost vertical arrow must kill $\alpha$. As $\alpha$ corresponds to $\text{id}_{L^1_Y} \in \text{Hom}(L^1_Y, L^1_Y)$, the fact that $\alpha$ goes to zero under

$$\text{Hom}(L^1_Y, L^1_Y) \to \text{Hom}(L^1_Y, R^1\mathbb{P} \text{Hom}(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y}))$$

implies that the map $L^1_Y \to R^1\mathbb{P} \text{Hom}(M_{U_Y}, P_{U_Y})$ is null.

**Proof of 2.1.2. b.** The $Q_{U_Y}$ of the statement of (2.1.2 b) is denoted $O_{U_Y}$ in the proof. About the cocartesian square: indeed pushouts exist in any topos, and if you like fancy words, any topos is an adhesive category, meaning that it has pullbacks and pushouts of monomorphisms, and pushout squares of monomorphisms are also pullback squares and are stable under pullback. In particular, $O_{U_Y}$ defined by a pushout, has $N_{U_Y} \hookrightarrow O_{U_Y}$, injective since $\mathbb{P} Y^0, L^0_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{P} Y^0, Q_Y \otimes M_{U_Y}$ is. The reason any Grothendieck topos is adhesive is as simple as you think it is, namely that the category of sets is adhesive and adhesivity is a condition on colimits and finite limits, hence preserved by functor categories and left-exact localizations (c.f. [nLab]).

The canonical arrow is given by composition

$$\mathbb{P} Y^0, L^0_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \to \mathbb{P} Y^0, M_{U_Y} \otimes N_{U_Y} \to (M_{U_Y} \otimes N_{U_Y}) \otimes M_{U_Y} \to N_{U_Y}.$$

The pushout

$$\mathbb{P} Y^0, L^0_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \xleftarrow{} \mathbb{P} Y^0, Q^0_Y \otimes M_{U_Y} \xrightarrow{} O_{U_Y}$$
defines by adjunction the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{L}_Y \mathcal{L}_Y & \rightarrow & \mathbb{Q}_Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) & \rightarrow & \mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, O_{U_Y})
\end{array}
\]

and again by adjunction the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{L}_Y & \rightarrow & \mathbb{Q}_Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) & \rightarrow & \mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, O_{U_Y})
\end{array}
\]

Now to check that the leftmost vertical arrow in the diagram above is the identity it suffices to show that the identity is taken by adjunction (from the bottom diagram to the top) to the given arrow in the pushout diagram that defines \( O_{U_Y} \). The image of \( \text{id} : \mathbb{L}_Y \rightarrow \mathbb{Q}_Y \) under adjunction is given by the counit of the adjunction at the object \( \mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \)

\[ \varepsilon(\mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y})) : \mathbb{L}_Y \mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y}). \]

Now in general a morphism \( f : A \rightarrow \text{Hom}(B, C) \) is taken under tensor-hom adjunction to the morphism \( A \otimes B \rightarrow C \) which is the composition of \( f \otimes \text{id} \) followed by evaluation. This is exactly the definition of the canonical arrow above: \( \varepsilon(\mathbb{H}om(M_{U_Y}, N_{U_Y})) \otimes \text{id} \) followed by evaluation. For each \( i > 0 \), applying the functor \( \mathbb{H}^i(\text{Y'}, -) \) to the last commutative diagram and precomposing with the arrow \( \mathbb{H}^i(Z, \mathbb{L}_Y) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}^i(\text{Y'}, \mathbb{L}_Y) \) coming from the unit \( \eta(L^0) : L^0 \rightarrow \mathbb{L}_Y \mathbb{L}_Y^0 = \mathbb{L}_Y \mathbb{L}_Y^0 \), effaces \( \mathbb{H}^i(Z, \mathbb{L}_Y) \).

Perversity. All of the arguments above hold for any perversity.

2.2. By general considerations [BBD 1.2], the morphism \( N \rightarrow N' \) is a monomorphism if it completes to an exact triangle \( (N, N', C) \) with \( C \in \text{M}(X) \), or equivalently to an exact triangle \( (K, N, N') \) with \( K[1] \) in \( \text{M}(X) \), so it suffices to show that \( \mathbb{p}\mathbb{H}^0K = 0 \). As \( j_i^* \) is t-exact, it suffices to show that \( \mathbb{p}\mathbb{H}^0 j_i^*K = 0 \) for all \( i \). By hypothesis \( N_{U_i} \hookrightarrow N'_{U_i} \) so that \( (N_{U_i}, j_i^*N', j_i^*K[1]) \) has \( j_i^*K[1] \) in \( \text{M}(U_i) \).
To see that the injection $N \hookrightarrow N'$ kills all Ext$^j_{D(X)}(M, N)$, $j > 0$, write
\[
\text{Ext}^j_{D(X)}(M, N) = \oplus_i \text{Ext}^j_{D(U)}(M, j_i^*N'_{U_i}) = \oplus_i \text{Ext}^j_{D(U)}(j_i^*M, N'_{U_i});
\]
this map sends $\varphi \in \text{Ext}^j_{D(X)}(M, N)$ to $\oplus_i \varphi_i$, where $\varphi_i \in \text{Ext}^j_{D(U)}(j_i^*M, N'_{U_i})$ is given by
\[
\varphi_i : M_{U_i}[-j] \longrightarrow N_{U_i} \rightarrow N'_{U_i}.
\]
This composition is zero by assumption.

**Perversity.** $j_{i*}$ no longer t-exact and the same argument doesn’t work if you replace $j_{i*}$ with $p j_{i*}$; $j^*$ is still t-exact so that $j_j^*p j_{i*} = j_j^*p H^0 j_{i*} = p H^0 j_j^* j_{i*} = p H^0 = \text{id}$ on $M(U_i)$ and $(j_j^*, p j_{i*})$ form an adjoint pair $M(U_i) \xhookrightarrow{} M(X)$ but not $D(U_i) \xhookrightarrow{} D(X)$.

2.2.1. We have
\[
\text{Ext}^j_{D(X)}(M, N) := \text{Hom}_{D(X)}(M, N[i]) = \text{Hom}_{D(X)}(M, i_*i^* N[i]) = \text{Hom}_{D(Y)}(i^*M, i^* N[i]).
\]
Note that, although the embedding $M(Y) \hookrightarrow M(X)$ is via the t-exact functor $i_*$, in order to show $I$ is an isomorphism we cannot naively make use of an adjunction between $i^*$ and $i_*$ as $i^*$ is no longer t-exact. (It is true however that $(p i^*, p i_* = i_*)$ form an adjoint pair \([BBD] \, 1.4.16\).)

The part about \text{Ext}^j_{M(X)}(M, N) coinciding with the set of connected components of $E^n_{M(X)}(M, N)$ is (3.2.2) in Verdier, *Des catégories dérivées des catégories abéliennes*, Astérisque 239. The sequence of morphisms in $E^n_{M(X)}(M, N)$ connecting $C^*$ with $\Phi_f(C^*)$ is as written
\[
C^* \rightarrow C^* \oplus \Xi_f(C_U') \rightarrow (C^* \oplus \Xi_f(C_U'))/j_!(C_U') \leftarrow \Phi_f(C^*).
\]
Recall that the unipotent vanishing cycles functor $\Phi_f : M(X) \rightarrow M(Y)$ is defined as the $H^0$ of the complex of objects in $M(X)$
\[
j_i j^* K \rightarrow \Xi_f j^* K \oplus K \rightarrow j_*, j^* K
\]
where $K$ is a perverse sheaf on $X$ (see §6 of Morel’s notes and the accompanying note). The point is that the ends of $C^*$ are supported on $Y$, and for a perverse sheaf $K$ in $M(X)$
supported on \( Y \), the maps in (\( \square \)) degenerate to
\[
K \to K \oplus 0 \to K \oplus 0 \leftarrow K = \Phi_f(K)
\]
with every map the identity.

\textbf{2.2.2.} Let’s show that given an adjunction of exact functors \( F \dashv G \) between abelian categories \( \mathcal{A} \xrightarrow{G} \mathcal{B} \), we have
\[
\text{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(FB, A) = \text{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{B})}(B, GA).
\]
The extension of the adjunction \( F \dashv G \) to complexes of objects of \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \) is simple, and it is easy to verify that the adjunction sends homotopic morphisms to homotopic morphisms, hence descends to an adjunction \( K(\mathcal{A}) \cong K(\mathcal{B}) \). As the functors are both exact, they preserve quasi-isomorphisms, so to conclude on derived categories we write

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} \\
FB & \xrightarrow{FC} & FGA \\
\xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} \\
GFB & \xrightarrow{GF} & GA
\end{array}
\]

(The dashed arrow coincides with \( f \) since it coincides with applying the adjunction isomorphism backwards and forwards to \( f \)), and

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
FB & \xrightarrow{D} & FA \\
\xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} \\
GFB & \xrightarrow{GD} & GA \\
\xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} & \xrightarrow{\sim} \\
FGFB & \xrightarrow{FG} & FA
\end{array}
\]

Together these diagrams show that the maps on \( \text{Hom} \) induced by the first \( \sim \) of each row are mutually inverse and induce the isomorphism \( \text{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{A})}(FB, A) = \text{Hom}_{D(\mathcal{B})}(B, GA) \).

\textbf{2.2.3.} Of course \( j_!j^* M \to M \) has nonzero image since this arrow restricts to the identity over \( U \) and \( j^* \) is exact functor so that \( j^* \) of the image is \( M \). As \( M \) is irreducible, \( j_!j^* M \to M \) is therefore an epimorphism. Then \( (K, j_!j^* M, M) \) is a distinguished triangle of perverse sheaves and applying \( j^* \) finds \( j^* K = 0 \).
X needn’t be irreducible, so needn’t have a unique generic point. However, we reduce to the case \( X \) irreducible in the next paragraph, allowing us to assume \( X \) irreducible with generic point \( \eta \) in the rest of this paragraph. I see no reason why

\[
\text{(co) } \ker(\text{Ext}^i_{M(X)}(M, N) \to \text{Ext}^i_{D(X)}(M, N))
\]

\[
= \text{(co) } \ker(\text{Ext}^i_{M(X)}(M, j_*N_U) \to \text{Ext}^i_{D(X)}(M, j_*N_U));
\]

take some stupid example like

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & C_3 & \rightarrow & C_1 \oplus C_2 \oplus C_3 & \rightarrow & C_1 \oplus C_2 & \rightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \rightarrow & 0 & \rightarrow & C_2 \oplus C_3 & \rightarrow & C_1 \oplus C_2 \oplus C_3 & \rightarrow & C_1 & \rightarrow & 0.
\end{array}
\]

We instead make a slightly more subtle analysis. For each \( U \ni \eta \), we have the following commutative diagram with exact rows & columns.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Ext}^{i-1}_{M(U)}(M_U, N_U) & \to & \text{Ext}^{i-1}_{M(X)}(M, L^U) \\
\downarrow \beta^{i-1} & & \downarrow ' \\
\text{Ext}^{i-1}_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) & \to & \text{Ext}^{i-1}_{D(X)}(M, L^U)
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Ext}^i_{M(U)}(M_U, N_U) & \to & \text{Ext}^i_{M(X)}(M, N) \\
\downarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \beta' \\
\text{Ext}^i_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) & \to & \text{Ext}^i_{D(X)}(M, N)
\end{array}
\]

These diagrams form an inductive system with respect to étale neighborhoods of \( \eta \), and in the limit \( \beta^{i-1} \) and \( \beta \) are isomorphisms. By the five lemma, \( \alpha \) is an isomorphism. (In more words, say we have an element \( x \in \ker \alpha \). Shrinking \( U \), we can make its image in \( \text{Ext}^i_{M(U)}(M_U, N_U) \) zero. Chasing the diagram, we produce an element \( y \in \text{Ext}^{i-1}_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) \); shrinking \( U \) further we produce a \( z \in \text{Ext}^{i-1}_{M(U)}(M_U, N_U) \) with \( \beta^{i-1}(z) = y \) whose image in \( \text{Ext}^i_{M(X)}(M, N) \) equals \( x \). Hence \( x \) is zero. Given \( w \in \text{coker} \alpha \), \( \text{coker} \alpha \hookrightarrow \text{coker} \beta' \) injects by the strong four lemma. Shrinking \( U \), we can make the image of \( w \) in \( \text{coker} \beta' \) zero so that \( w = 0 \), etc.)

**Reduction to the case \( X \) irreducible.** Let \( X_i \) denote the irreducible components of \( X \) with generic points \( \eta_i \). Since (2.2.3) covers the case when \( \dim \text{supp} N < \dim X \), (2.2.4) should more properly say that we consider an irreducible \( N \) supported at the generic point \( \eta \) of an irreducible component \( X_1 \) of \( X \) with \( \dim X_1 = \dim X \). This doesn’t preclude the possibility that \( N \) is supported at the generic points \( \eta_i \) of two (or more) such irreducible components \( X_i \) with \( \dim X_i = \dim X \) and possibly nonempty pairwise
intersection. If so, we should pick open affine $U \subset X$ with $U = \bigsqcup_i U_i, \eta_i \in U_i \subset X$ so that the $U_i$ are irreducible and have $U_i \cap U_j = \emptyset$. We have to compute $\text{Ext}^1(M_U, N_U)$ for this $U$. Ordinary sheaves on $U$ decompose as a direct sum of sheaves each supported on one $U_i$, and morphisms between two such sheaves $\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}$ respect this decomposition so that $\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) = \oplus_i \text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}_{U_i}, \mathcal{G}_{U_i})$. Objects of $D(U)$ are complexes of sheaves on $U$ and therefore decompose similarly into a direct sum; as $D = D^b$, in particular bounded below, $D(U)$ is equivalent to the homotopy category of bounded below complexes of injective sheaves, which likewise decompose, inducing a decomposition of the category $D^b(U) \simeq \oplus_i D(U_i)$ and therefore a decomposition $D(U) \supset M(U) \simeq \oplus_i M(U_i)$. Therefore

$$\text{Ext}^1_{D(U)}(M_U, N_U) = \oplus_i \text{Ext}^1_{D(U_i)}(M_{U_i}, N_{U_i}),$$

and we will have the same decomposition for $\text{Ext}^1_{M(U)}$ in light of $M(U) \simeq \oplus_i M(U_i)$, provided we can show that $\text{Ext}^1_{M(U_i \bigsqcup U_j)}(M_{U_i}, N_{U_j}) = 0$ for $i \neq j$. Since $M(U_i \bigsqcup U_j) \simeq M(U_i) \oplus M(U_j)$, this follows from Yoneda’s description of $\text{Ext}^p$: any acyclic complex

$$M_{U_i} \to L^{-p+1} \to \cdots \to L^0 \to N_{U_j}$$

will decompose as the direct sum of acyclic complexes

$$M_{U_i} \to L^{-p+1}_{U_i} \to \cdots \to L^0_{U_i} \to 0$$

and

$$0 \to L^{-p+1}_{U_j} \to \cdots \to L^0_{U_j} \to N_{U_j},$$

demonstrating a decomposition

$$\text{Ext}^p_{M(U_i \bigsqcup U_j)}(M_{U_i}, N_{U_j}) = \text{Ext}^p_{M(U_i)}(M_{U_i}, 0) \oplus \text{Ext}^p_{M(U_j)}(0, N_{U_j}) = 0.$$

**Epilogue: Madhav’s Constructible Sheaves.** Theorem 1 uses a transcendental input. The content of §3 does not, although the proof of Proposition 3.10 must be modified in order to work in the setting of constructible étale sheaves on a $k$-variety with $k$ of possibly nonzero characteristic.

**Proof of Theorem 1.** Arranging the projection $\pi$: follow the directions of the proof of the basic lemma (second form). The linear change of coordinates required to make $f$ monic in the last variable $x_n$ amounts to the substitutions $x_i \mapsto x_i + x_n$ for $i < n$ (which ensures that the coefficient of the highest power of $x_n$ appearing in $f$ is a nonzero
scalar $\alpha \in k^\times$), followed by $x_n \mapsto \alpha^{-1/m}x_n$. If we work over a field which is not algebraically closed, $y^m - 1/\alpha$ may not have any roots. However, we may replace $k$ by its perfect closure (a universally integral, radicial, surjective extension), and then assume we need an $m$th root of a nonzero scalar with $p \nmid m$; the minimal polynomial over $k$ for such an element defines a finite separable extension $k' \supset k$; denote by $f$ the corresponding map on spectra. If we can prove Theorem 1 for $A^n_{k'}$, then we can deduce the result that any constructible sheaf $F$ admits a monomorphism $F \hookrightarrow G$ which induces the null map $H^i(A^n_{k'}, F) \rightarrow H^i(A^n_{k'}, G)$ by finding a monomorphism $\alpha : f^*F \hookrightarrow G'$ with $H^i(A^n_{k'}, G') = 0$ for $i > 0$ and then taking the monomorphism $F \xrightarrow{\text{res}} f_*f^*F \xrightarrow{f_*} f_*G' =: G$.

In any event, the projection $\pi$ obtained by making these linear changes of coordinates and then forgetting $x_n$ enjoys all the properties of the usual coordinate projection: $\pi$ is smooth with fibers which are copies of $A^1_k$, hence $\pi$ is acyclic. If $F$ is a constructible sheaf on $A^n_k$, we know that after a linear change of coordinates inducing an automorphism $f : A^n_k \rightarrow A^n_k$, $f^*F$ satisfies the conditions of (2.2) & (1.3A) for $\pi : A^n \rightarrow A^{n-1}$ the usual coordinate projection, so we get a monomorphism $f^*F \hookrightarrow G$ with $H^i(A^n_k, G) = 0$ for $i > 0$. Now apply $f_*$. In this way we reduce to $\pi$ the usual coordinate projection when applying (2.2) & (1.3A).

In the proof itself, both morphisms of short exact sequences are constructed by forming $H$ and $G$ by pushout, and then forming cokernels. To see that the third vertical maps constructed from the universal property of cokernels are isomorphisms, consider by way of example the second diagram. Notate by $\alpha, \beta$ the nontrivial monomorphisms of the upper and lower rows, respectively. Then $\text{coker } \alpha = \text{coker } \beta$ since to give a map from $G$ that kills $H$ is the same as giving a map from $\pi^*J$ that kills $\pi^*\pi_*H$.

2.1. As $\mathcal{A} = \Delta^* \pr_1^* \mathcal{A}$, the map $p_1^*\mathcal{A} \rightarrow \Delta_*\mathcal{A}$ is of course the unit of adjunction.
2.2. As remarked in the note to the proof of Theorem 1 above, we may assume that \( \pi \) is the canonical projection. The relevant maps are defined by the cartesian square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A^2_X & \xrightarrow{p_2} & A^1_X \\
\downarrow{p_1} & \downarrow{\pi} & \downarrow{\pi} \\
A^1_X & \xrightarrow{\pi} & X.
\end{array}
\]

Proof of (2) To see that \( p_2|_V \) is finite, note that it suffices to show that \( p_2 \) is finite when restricted to \( \Delta(A^1_X) \) and \( p_1^{-1}V \) separately, as if \( X \times A^1 = \text{Spec } A \) and \( Y = \text{Spec } B \) with ideals \( I, J \subset B \) defining the closed loci of which \( Y \) is the union (i.e. \( I \cap J = 0 \)), the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
B = B/I \cap J & \longrightarrow & B/I \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
B/J & \longrightarrow & B/I \cup J
\end{array}
\]

is bicartesian, so that if \( B/I \) and \( B/J \) are finite as modules over \( A \), so too is \( B \). To check that \( p_2|_{p_1^{-1}V} \) is finite, pull back the square above along \( V \hookrightarrow A^1_X \) to produce another cartesian square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
V \times A^1 & \xrightarrow{p_2|_{p_1^{-1}V}} & A^2_X \\
\downarrow{p_1} & & \downarrow{\pi} \\
V & \xrightarrow{\pi} & A^1_X
\end{array}
\]

Now we need to show the vanishing of \( p_2, \mathcal{B} \), which by (1.3A) is equivalent to the vanishing of global sections of \( p_1^* \mathcal{L} \) along every geometric fiber of \( p_2 \). Fix a geometric point \( x \to A^1_X \) defining also the geometric point \( x \to X \), and let \( p_2^{-1}x \to A^2_X \) be the geometric fiber of \( p_2 \) above \( x \); \( p_2^{-1}x \) is isomorphic to the geometric fiber \( F_x : \pi^{-1}x \to A^1_X \) of \( \pi \), and the restriction of \( p_1^* \mathcal{L} \) to \( p_2^{-1}x \) is therefore the same as the restriction of \( \mathcal{L} \) to \( F_x \) (which is just a copy of \( A^1_k \)). Since \( \pi|_V \) is surjective and \( \mathcal{L}|_V = 0 \), \( F_x^{-1}V =: V_x \) is a nonempty closed locus. Denoting by \( j_x : U_x \hookrightarrow F_x \) the complement of \( V_x \) in the fiber, we have that \( j_x^*(\mathcal{L}|_{F_x}) \) is locally constant and \( \mathcal{L}|_{F_x} = j_x^*j_x^*(\mathcal{L}|_{F_x}) \); such a sheaf on \( A^1_k \) has no nonzero global section.
9. THE DERIVED CATEGORY OF PERVERSE SHEAVES

**Proof of (1)** In the notation of (1.3B), \( M = X, M' = \mathbb{A}^1_X, L = \mathbb{A}^1_X, L' = \mathbb{A}^2_X, g = \pi = f \), so that both \( L \xrightarrow{g} M \) and \( M' \xrightarrow{g} M \) coincide with \( \mathbb{A}^1_X \xrightarrow{\pi} X \). The business about \( \pi_*\mathcal{I} = 0 \) reduces, after proper base change, to the same situation just discussed, namely to the fact that if \( j : U \subset \mathbb{A}^1_k \) is a nonempty open and \( \mathcal{E} \) a lisse sheaf on \( U \), \( j_!\mathcal{E} \) has no nonzero global section. Again, it is crucial that \( V \) intersect every fiber of \( \pi \) nontrivially.

2.3. (As \( R\pi_{2*}\Delta_* = \text{id}, R^q\pi_{2*}\Delta_* \mathcal{I} = 0 \) for \( q > 0 \).)

3.8. Here are the diagrams necessary to obtain the conclusion.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
FGB & \xleftarrow{Fu} & FA \\
\downarrow{e(B)} & & \downarrow{t} \\
B & \xleftarrow{v} & B'
\end{array}
\]

\( u : GB \hookrightarrow A \)

\( w : A \xrightarrow{\eta(A)} GFA \xrightarrow{Gt} GB' \).

We want to show that the composition

\( GB \xrightarrow{u} A \xrightarrow{\eta(A)} GFA \xrightarrow{Gt} GB' \)

coincides with \( Gv \). This follows from the below commutative diagram; that the dashed arrow coincides with the identity is a basic fact about adjunctions; c.f. Mac Lane IV.1 Th. 1.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
GB & \xleftarrow{u} & A \\
\downarrow{id} & & \downarrow{\eta(GB)} \\
GFGB & \xleftarrow{GFu} & GFA \\
\downarrow{Ge(B)} & & \downarrow{Gt} \\
GB & \xrightarrow{Gv} & GB'
\end{array}
\]

From this general fact we deduce the admissibility of \( j_!Q \) on \( X \) from that of \( Q \) on \( U \) in the following way.
9. THE DERIVED CATEGORY OF PERVERSE SHEAVES

$(j_!, j^*)$: if $\text{Ext}^q_{\text{Sh}(U)}(\mathcal{F}, -)$ is effaceable on $C(U)$, then $\text{Ext}^q_{\text{Sh}(U)}(\mathcal{F}, j^*(-))$ is effaceable on $C(X)$. Let $\mathcal{G}$ be a constructible sheaf on $X$ and $\mathcal{I}^\ast$ be a complex of injectives on $\text{Sh}(X)$ resolving $\mathcal{G}$; $j^*\mathcal{I}^\ast$ is a complex of injectives on $\text{Sh}(U)$ so that

$$\mathcal{R}\text{Hom}_{\text{Sh}(U)}(\mathcal{F}, j^*(\mathcal{G})) = \mathcal{R}\text{Hom}_{\text{Sh}(X)}(j_!\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{I}^\ast) = \mathcal{R}\text{Hom}_{\text{Sh}(X)}(j_!\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}).$$

Taking $H^q$ finds

$$\text{Ext}^q_{\text{Sh}(U)}(\mathcal{F}, j^*\mathcal{G}) = \text{Ext}^q_{\text{Sh}(X)}(j_!\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}),$$

so that if the former is effaceable on $C(X)$, the latter is.

3.10. Here are the necessary modifications: we may replace $k$ by its perfect closure, as the extension is radicial and doesn’t affect the étale topos. We may also take the reduced scheme structure on $X$ for the same reason so that $X$ becomes geometrically reduced ($\mathfrak{0}_{35U}$). Then the map $U' \cap Z_1 \rightarrow A^d$ can be chosen to be generically finite étale. There is a nonempty Zariski open of $A^d$ over which the map is finite étale (Hartshorne II.3 Ex. 3.7).

**Nori’s theorem for finite coefficients $\Lambda$.** We wish to show that any constructible sheaf $\mathcal{F}$ is admissible. By dévissage one reduces to $\mathcal{F} = j_!\mathcal{F}'$ for $j$ the immersion of a locally closed stratum and $\mathcal{F}'$ locally constant. Factoring $j$ as a composition of a closed immersion $i : Z \hookrightarrow U$ followed by an open immersion, we see from the exact sequence

$$0 \rightarrow \Lambda_{U-Z} \rightarrow \Lambda_U \rightarrow \Lambda_Z \rightarrow 0$$

that $\mathcal{R}\text{Hom}(i_!\Lambda, -) = \mathcal{R}j^!(-)$ commutes with filtered inductive limits since cohomology does. As $\mathcal{F}'$ is locally constant, [SGAA] VI 5.8] gives that $\mathcal{R}\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}', -)$ commutes with filtered inductive limits. As $\mathcal{R}\text{Hom}(j_!\mathcal{F}', -) = \mathcal{R}\text{Hom}(\mathcal{F}', \mathcal{R}j^!(-))$ and $\mathcal{R}j^!$ commutes with filtered inductive limits, embedding $\mathcal{G}$ as a subsheaf of an injective sheaf $\mathcal{I}$ and passing to the limit along constructible subsheaves of $\mathcal{I}$ containing $\mathcal{G}$ [SGAA IX 2.9 (iii)], one finds a constructible $\mathcal{G} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{G}'$ inducing the null map $\text{Ext}^q(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}) \rightarrow \text{Ext}^q(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}')$ for $q > 0$. 
Bibliography

[B1] On the derived category of perverse sheaves by Beilinson
[B2] How to glue perverse sheaves by Beilinson
[BBD] Faisceaux Pervers par Beilinson, Bernstein, Deligne & Gabber
[SGAA] SGA 4
10. How to glue perverse sheaves

Sasha’s exposé. Sasha gave (12/5/19) a lecture outlining how to glue perverse sheaves based on his article, which he says was written in a language somewhat better suited to $\mathcal{D}$-modules, so he gave an exposé tailored to perverse sheaves. This section is an attempt to write down the contents of his exposé.

$$\begin{array}{c}
Y \\ i
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
X \\ j
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
U \\ f
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{A}^1
\end{array}$$

The theorem is that the functor

$\mathcal{F} \mapsto (\mathcal{F}_Y, \mathcal{F}_U, \text{gluing datum})$

is an equivalence of categories between perverse sheaves on $X$ and perverse sheaves on $U$ and $Y$ with a gluing datum which consists of morphisms arising (up to a twist) from composing arrows coming from

$\Psi_{\text{un}} \overset{\text{can}}{\longrightarrow} \varphi_{\text{un}} \overset{\text{var}}{\longrightarrow} \Psi_{\text{un}} (-1)$

where var denotes variation. Choosing a generator for $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$, the composition of these arrows gives $1 - t$ (c.f. [SGA 7 Exp. XIII 1.4]). Now for the definition of the unipotent nearby and vanishing cycles.

$$\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{U} \\
\pi
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
Y \\ i
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
X \\ j
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
U \\ \pi
\end{array} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\hat{U}
\end{array}$$

Here, $\mathcal{U}$ is coming from the normalization of $U$ in the separable closure of its generic point, while $\hat{U}$ is the normalization of $U$ in the extension of its generic point corresponding to the pro-$\ell$ part, isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$. (In fact, this is all done on $\mathbb{A}^1 - \{0\}$ and pulled back to $U$ via $f$. The Galois group at the generic point of $\mathbb{A}^1$ of course has the structure of an
extension of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ by a pro-$p$ group, and the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient corresponds to an
closed subgroup and hence to a Galois extension of the generic point. The normalization
of $\mathbb{A}^1 - \{0\}$ in this extension gives $\hat{\mathbb{A}}^1$: it is the $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$-torsor corresponding to the
Kummer sheaves, and its pullback to $U$ is also a $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$-torsor, i.e. ‘logarithmic sheaf’
since in the complex situation a choice of generator corresponds to a branch of the
logarithm – see the section on Poincaré duality in Weil I.) The usual nearby cycles (we
work with finite coefficients $F_\ell = \mathbb{Z}_\ell$; this changes nothing) is defined by

$$
\Psi(\mathcal{F}_U) = i^* j_* \pi_* \pi^* \mathcal{F}_U = \mathcal{F}_U \otimes \pi_* \pi^* F_\ell,
$$

and we define the unramified nearby cycles

$$
\Psi^{un}(\mathcal{F}_U) = i^* j_* (\mathcal{F}_U \otimes \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell).
$$

Next define the Iwasawa algebra

$$
R := F_\ell[[\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)]] = \lim_{\leftarrow n} F_\ell[\mathbb{Z}_\ell/\ell^n(1)].
$$

Choosing a generator $t$ of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ allows us to write an isomorphism

$$
R \simeq F_\ell[[t - 1]];
$$

for the details see [the note to 1.1. below]. Inside of $R$ is the maximal ideal $m$ corresponding
after a choice of generator to $(1 - t)$. It is an invertible module (zeros $\leftrightarrow$ poles). The
Iwasawa twist of a sheaf is the functor

$$
\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)': \mathcal{F} \mapsto \mathcal{F} \otimes m =: \mathcal{F}(1)'.
$$

After a choice of generator, Iwasawa twist becomes Tate twist. Now recognize $\Psi^{un}(\mathcal{F}_U)$
as a cone on the morphism $(j_! \to j_*) (\mathcal{F}_U \otimes \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* \mathcal{F}_U)$. As $\Psi^{un}(\mathcal{F}_U)[-1]$ is a perverse
sheaf, it is actually the kernel of the surjection $j_! \to j_*$. Note that $H^0(U, \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell)$ can be
described as continuous functions from $U$ to $F_\ell$. Among them are obviously the constant
functions. Therefore inside $\bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell$ sits a copy of $F_\ell$ and of course $\mathcal{F}_U \otimes F_\ell \simeq \mathcal{F}_U$. Define
the maximal extension $\Xi$ as the kernel of the composition

$$
\bar{j}_!(\mathcal{F}_U \otimes \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell) \to j_*(\mathcal{F}_U \otimes \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell) \to j_*(\mathcal{F}_U \otimes \bar{\pi}_* \bar{\pi}^* F_\ell)/\mathcal{F}_U),
$$
where the quotient by $\mathcal{F}_U$ refers to the constant functions described above. The second arrow remains an epimorphism as $j_*$ is exact (middle perversity). Note that the restriction of $\Xi$ to $U$ is $\mathcal{F}_U$. We have exact sequences

$$0 \to \Psi \to \Xi \to j_* \to 0$$

$$0 \to j_! \mathcal{F}_U \to \Xi \to \Psi(-1)' \to 0.$$  

Now we can state a more refined version of the original theorem. We have complexes of perverse sheaves

$$j_! \mathcal{F}_U \to \Xi \mathcal{F}_U \oplus \mathcal{F} \to j_* \mathcal{F}$$

$$\Psi \to \Xi \oplus \Phi \to \Psi(-1)'$$

(probably the $\Psi$ and $\Phi$ should be unramified), both concentrated in degree zero. The $\mathcal{H}^0$ of the first is $\Phi^{un}$ and of the second is $\mathcal{F}$.

**Remark.** About the lisse sheaves $I^{a,b}$: Sasha said that they are not really used in the glueing construction and that they have something to do with a unipotent nearby cycles construction that is nice with respect to Verdier duality.

**‘Glueing’ the glueing construction.** 1/10/20 Discussed with Sasha what happens if you try to extend this construction to the global situation of the complement of a Cartier divisor $D$; if you could do this, you could build up the category of perverse sheaves combinatorially. If $D$ is described by the vanishing of $f_1$ on $U_1$ and $f_2$ on $U_2$, the construction would glue on $U_1 \cap U_2$ if to the invertible function $f_1/f_2$ one could associate a canonical isomorphism of the construction for $f_1$ and the one for $f_2$ on $U_1 \cap U_2$; however, Sasha goes on to describe that isomorphisms between the two constructions are in bijection with choices of all $\ell$-power roots of $f_1/f_2$, and evidently $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ acts on these choices. So $\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ acts on the set of isomorphisms between the constructions on $U_1 \cap U_2$. Closely related is Verdier’s notion of monodromic sheaf, which, if I’m remembering correctly, has the property that the sheaf and its translation by an element of $\mathbb{G}_{m,k}$ are (abstractly) isomorphic, but does not provide a canonical isomorphism.

It seems to me that the choice of these $\ell$-power roots is in a way of trying to ‘glue’ the unipotent nearby cycles $\Psi_{f_1}^{un}$, which are by nature local. Because they are unipotent,
they only depend on the tame nearby cycles $\Psi_f$, and glueing these should amount to something like extending the isomorphism of $U_1 \cap U_2$ onto itself to one between its universal tame covers. Therefore the crux of the issue seems to be the ‘globalization of nearby cycles.’

Now we go into a more detailed analysis of the paper itself section-by-section, trying to adapt it to the étale language of Sasha’s exposé.

1.1. Of course, $A^1_C$ is replaced by $A^1_k$ with char $k \neq \ell$ and the isomorphism $Z(1) \simeq \pi_1((A^1 - \{0\})(C), 1)$ is replaced by the isomorphism $\hat{Z}(1)(\overline{k}) \simeq \pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)^{\text{mod}}$, where the latter group is defined in [Laumon, 2.2.2] and corresponds to the étale coverings tamely ramified at 0 and $\infty$.

Likewise, we will only consider the completed Iwasawa algebra ($A^\circ$ in the article and $R$ in the exposé) at the prime $\ell$

$$A^\circ = F_\ell(Z_{\ell}(1)) := \lim_{\leftarrow} F_\ell[Z/\ell^n(1)]$$

where as always $Z/\ell^n(1)$ denotes the group of $\ell^n$ roots of unity (of the field $\overline{k}$) equipped with action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)$, and $F_\ell[Z/\ell^n(1)]$ denotes the group algebra, where here $F_\ell$ can be taken to be $Z_{\ell}$ or $Z/\ell^n$ for any $m$ and we will still have the isomorphism

$$F_\ell[[t-1]] \cong A^\circ$$

where $t$ is a topological generator of $Z_{\ell}(1)$. The proof that this is an isomorphism is the same of course as for the Iwasawa algebra of the $\ell$-adic integers, and the best source for this is Serre, *Classes des Corps Cyclotomiques* §6 (it is simply a matter of noting that the polynomial $(1 + T)^{\ell^n} - 1$ lies in $(\ell, T)^n \subset F_\ell[[T]]$).

Let $\gamma := \tilde{t} - 1$. In order to see $\text{Gr} A^\circ = \oplus_{i \geq 0} F_\ell(i)$, we ask what is the action of Galois on $A^i/A^{i+1}$, which is free of rank 1 as $F_\ell$-module. Galois acts via the cyclotomic character $\chi : \text{Gal}({\overline{k}}/k) \to Z_\ell^\times$, where after fixing an isomorphism of $F_\ell$-modules $F_\ell(1) \simeq F_\ell$ (which amounts to a choice of generator $t \mapsto 1$), the action $t \mapsto gt$ of an element
$g \in \text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)$ corresponds to the map $1 \mapsto \chi(g)$. In particular, $g \tilde{t} = \tilde{t} \chi(g)$ and

$$g\gamma^n \mod \gamma^{n+1} = g((\gamma + 1) - 1)^n \mod \gamma^{n+1} = ((\gamma + 1)\chi(g) - 1)^n \mod \gamma^{n+1} = \chi(g)^n \gamma^n \mod \gamma^{n+1}.$$ 

This shows that $A'/A'^{i+1} \simeq F_{\ell}(i)$. As $A^\circ \simeq F_{\ell}[[\gamma]]$, $A = A^\circ_{(i-1)} = F_{\ell}((\gamma))$ and we find

$$g\gamma^{-n} \mod \gamma^{1-n} = g((\gamma+1) - 1)^{-n} \mod \gamma^{1-n} = ((\gamma+1)\chi(g) - 1)^{-n} \mod \gamma^{1-n} = (\chi(g)\gamma\left(1 + \frac{(\chi(g))}{2}\gamma + \ldots\right))^{-n} \mod \gamma^{1-n} = \chi(g)^{-n} \gamma^{-n} \mod \gamma^{1-n}.$$ 

This shows that $\text{Gr} A = \oplus_{i\in\mathbb{Z}} F_{\ell}(i)$. These statements have been made in terms of a particular generator $t$ but they are independent of the choice of generator; i.e. these isomorphisms are canonical.

Now we come to the pairing $\langle , \rangle : A \times A \to F_{\ell}(-1)$. Skew-symmetry: put

$$a := fg^{-} = \frac{a_n}{\gamma^n} + \cdots + \frac{a_1}{\gamma} + \cdots.$$ 

As $gf^- = (fg^-)^{-}$, it amounts to showing that

$$\text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( a^{-} \frac{d\gamma}{t} \right) = - \text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( a \frac{d\gamma}{t} \right).$$

Note that

$$\gamma^- = -\frac{\gamma}{\gamma + 1} = -\frac{\gamma}{t} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{t} = 1 - \gamma + \gamma^2 - \gamma^3 + \cdots$$

so that

$$\text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( a^{-} \frac{d\gamma}{t} \right) = \text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( \left( \frac{a_n}{\gamma^n} + \cdots + \frac{a_1}{\gamma} + \cdots \right) \left( 1 - \gamma + \gamma^2 - \gamma^3 + \cdots \right) d\gamma \right) = a_1 + \cdots + (-1)^{n-1} a_n,$$

$$\text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( a^{-} \frac{d\gamma}{t} \right) = \text{res}_{\gamma=0} \left( \left( \frac{(-1)^n a_n t^n}{\gamma^n} + \cdots + \frac{(-a_1 t)}{\gamma} + \cdots \right) \frac{d\gamma}{t} \right) =\frac{(-1)^n a_n t^{n-1}}{\gamma^n} + \cdots + \frac{(-a_1)}{\gamma} + \cdots = -a_1 + \cdots + (-1)^n a_n.$$
We proceed to define the sheaf \( \mathcal{I} \) and sheaves \( I^{a,b} \) of \( \mathbb{A} \)-modules on \( \mathbb{G}_{m,k} \) by endowing the Iwasawa algebra \( \mathbb{A} \) with an action of \( \pi_1(\mathbb{G}_{m,k}, 1) \), which acts via the quotient by the kernel of

\[
\Gamma : \pi_1(\mathbb{G}_{m,k}, 1) \to \pi_1(\mathbb{G}_{m,k}, 1) \mod \simeq \hat{\mathbb{Z}}(1)(\overline{k}) \to \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1),
\]

\( \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1) \)-invariance is simply the statement that \( \langle \overline{t} f, \overline{t} g \rangle = \langle f, g \rangle, i \in \mathbb{Z}_\ell \), and is obvious. Likewise \( (\mathbb{A}^i)^+ = \mathbb{A}^{-i} \) is obvious. The induced pairing on \( \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \) should read

\[
\langle S_j, S_{-i-1} \rangle = (-1)^{j+1} S_i \cdot S_{i-1}, \quad S_j \in F_\ell(j)
\]

because as a pairing \( \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \times \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \to \mathbb{F}_\ell(-1) \) it can be described simply as the piece of

\[
(\overline{f}, \overline{g}) \mapsto (\overline{f}, \text{Gr}(-)(\overline{g})) \mapsto \overline{f} \text{Gr}(-)(\overline{g}) \mapsto \text{Gr}(\overline{z}) \frac{1}{\overline{t}} \text{Gr}(-)(\overline{g}) = \overline{f} \text{Gr}(-)(\overline{g})
\]

in \( \text{Gr}(-) \, \mathbb{A} \). Some explanation: the involution map \( a \mapsto a^- \) respects the filtration, as \( \gamma^- = -\gamma/\overline{t} = -\gamma(1 - \gamma + \cdots) \). Therefore it descends to a morphism \( \text{Gr}(-) : \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \to \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \) determined by \( \gamma \mapsto -\gamma \). Similarly, multiplication by \( 1/\overline{t} \) respects the filtration on \( \mathbb{A} \) and descends to the identity map \( \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \to \text{Gr} \, \mathbb{A} \).

To obtain the isomorphism

\[
\mathbb{A}^a/\mathbb{A}^b \sim \text{Hom}(\mathbb{A}^{-b}/\mathbb{A}^{-a}, \mathbb{F}_\ell(-1)),
\]

simply induct on \( b - a \), the case \( b - a = 1 \) just obtained, using the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{A}^{b-1}/\mathbb{A}^b \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \text{Hom}(\mathbb{A}^{-b}/\mathbb{A}^{-b+1}, \mathbb{F}_\ell(-1))
\end{array}
\]

whose rows are exact as \( \mathbb{F}_\ell \)-module.

Finally, we should verify that the pairing is \( \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k) \)-equivariant; i.e. that for \( \sigma \in \text{Gal}(\overline{k}, k) \) we have \( \langle \sigma f, \sigma g \rangle = \sigma\langle f, g \rangle = \chi(\sigma)^{-1}\langle f, g \rangle \). The point is that as \( \chi(g) \in \mathbb{Z}_\ell^\times \), \( t \) generates \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell \) iff \( \chi(g)t \) does, and

\[
d \log(\overline{\sigma}^{-1}t) = d \log(\overline{t}/\chi(\sigma)) = \chi(\sigma)^{-1}d \log t, \quad \text{so that indeed}
\]

\[
(\langle \sigma f, \sigma g \rangle, t) = (\langle f, g \rangle, \sigma^{-1}t) = (\langle f, g \rangle, t/\chi(\sigma)) = (\chi(\sigma)^{-1}\langle f, g \rangle, t).
\]

We proceed to define the sheaf \( \mathcal{I} \) (and sheaves \( I^{a,b} \)) of \( \mathbb{A} \)-modules on \( \mathbb{G}_{m,k} \) by endowing the Iwasawa algebra \( \mathbb{A} \) with an action of \( \pi_1(\mathbb{G}_{m,k}, 1) \), which acts via the quotient by the kernel of
so that $\pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1)$ acts on $I$ via $G := \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1)/\ker \Gamma$; as $\pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1)$ can be described as the canonically split extension

$$1 \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \to \Gal(\bar{k}/k) \to 1,$$

$G$ can be described as the canonically split extension \[\text{[SGAI Exp. IX 6.1]}\]

$$0 \to \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1) \to G \to \Gal(\bar{k}/k) \to 1. \quad (\dagger)$$

The action of $l \in \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)$ on $A \approx F_\ell[\mathbb{Z}_\ell(1)]$ is by multiplication by $\bar{l} \in A$; the action of $\Gal(\bar{k}, k)$ is obvious.

‘Coincides on $I_1$ with the above $\langle , \rangle$: $I_1 = A$ the stalk of $I$ at 1.

A3. Generalities on $\lim$. In the below we use the words ‘exact pair,’ ‘short exact sequence,’ and ‘conflation’ interchangeably. Let $(\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{E})$ be an exact category with exact structure specified by class $\mathcal{E}$ of exact pairs. $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$ has the product partial order $(a, b) \leq (c, d) \iff a \leq c$ and $b \leq d$. Let’s verify the axioms of exact category (following Keller’s notes Derived categories and their uses) for $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$. We notate an object of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ by $X_{ij}$. First note that the class $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$ of exact pairs of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ are the pairs $X_{ij} \to Y_{ij} \to Z_{ij}$ such that the pair in $\mathcal{A}$ corresponding to $(i, j)$ is in $\mathcal{E}$ for all $(i, j) \in \Pi$. We verify that the composition of inflations is an inflation; this is true if given $X_{ij}, Y_{ij}$ in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ and inflation $X_{ij} \to Y_{ij}$, we can find $Z_{ij}$ in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ making an exact pair $X_{ij} \to Y_{ij} \to Z_{ij}$. We can find a $Z_{ij}$ ‘pointwise’ for each $(i, j) \in \Pi$ from the exact structure $\mathcal{E}$, and we need to join these ‘points’ to a natural transformation. This is done in a unique way from the universal property of cokernel and achieves Ex1$^{\text{op}}$. Dually we can complete a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{c}
C'_{ij} \\
\downarrow^{c_{ij}} \\
C_{ij}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{p_{ij}}
\begin{array}{c}
B_{ij}
\end{array}
$$
where $p_{ij}$ comes from a deflation $p : B_{ij} \to C_{ij}$ in $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$ to a square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
A'_{ij} & \rightarrow & B'_{ij} \rightarrow C'_{ij} \\
\downarrow b_{ij} & & \downarrow c_{ij} \\
A_{ij} & \rightarrow & B_{ij} \rightarrow C_{ij}
\end{array}
$$
cartesian in $\mathcal{A}$ where $(i'_{ij}, p'_{ij})$ is exact in $\mathcal{E}$ and $(i_{ij}, p_{ij})$ is exact in $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$ coming from an exact pair $(i, p)$ in $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$. There is a unique way to make the $B'_{ij}$ into an object $B_{ij}$ of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ compatible with the status of $B_{ij}$ as a limit of the first diagram for all $(i, j) \in \Pi$; once this is done there is a unique way to make the $A'_{ij}$ into an object $A_{ij}$ of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ from the universal property that $i'_{ij}$ is a kernel of $p'_{ij}$ for all $(i, j) \in \Pi$. Finally we verify that $B'_{ij}$ is a limit of the first diagram in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ since its morphisms for $(i, j) \leq (i', j')$ were obtained from the universal property of limit of $B'_{ij}$. This secures Ex2.

Now we pass to the definition and properties of admissible objects. Typo: admissible objects are obviously objects of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$, not $\mathcal{A}$. The full subcategory $\mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \subset \mathcal{A}^\Pi$ would inherit an exact structure from the $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$ on $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ if it were closed under extensions in the sense that the existence of a short exact sequence $X_{ij} \rightarrow Y_{ij} \rightarrow Z_{ij}$ in $\mathcal{E}^\Pi$ with $X_{ij}$ and $Z_{ij}$ admissible would imply $Y_{ij}$ admissible [Bühler, 10.20]. This would be secured if the statement ‘in any short exact sequence in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ if any two objects are admissible then the third is.’ The $3 \times 3$ lemma [Bühler, 3.6] gives precisely this, modulo the additional condition that to be able to conclude that $Y_{ij}$ is admissible from the admissibility of $X_{ij}$ and $Z_{ij}$, one must secure that for every $i \leq j \leq k$ the sequence $Y_{ij} \rightarrow Y_{ik} \rightarrow Y_{jk}$ is a complex. Writing the composition as $Y_{ij} \rightarrow Y_{jj} \rightarrow Y_{jk}$, we see that the composition is zero if $Y_{jj}$ is a zero object of $\mathcal{A}$. We will show that $X_{jj}$ and $Z_{jj}$ are zero objects of $\mathcal{A}$. Suppose $X_{jj}$ is an admissible object of $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$. Let $i = j = k$; we find that $X_{jj} \rightarrow X_{jj} \rightarrow X_{jj}$ is short exact; in particular is a complex. Therefore $X_{jj}$ is a zero object for all $j \in \mathbb{Z}$. We therefore have an exact pair $X_{jj} \rightarrow Y_{jj} \rightarrow Z_{jj}$ with $X_{jj}$ and $Z_{jj}$ zero objects of $\mathcal{A}$ so that both arrows in the exact pair are zero. In any additive category, of course the identity is a kernel for any zero morphism. As kernels are universal, $X_{jj} \simeq Y_{jj}$ and we have shown $Y_{jj}$ is a zero object, and therefore that any extension of admissible objects is admissible. (Note that a consequence of the
admissibility criterion is that all maps $X_{ij} \to X_{ik}, k \geq j$, are monomorphisms, and all maps $X_{ik} \to X_{jk}, j \geq i$, are epimorphisms.)

$\mathcal{A}$ embeds in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$ via the functor which to $X \in \text{ob} \mathcal{A}$ associates the $\Pi$-object $X_{ij}$ with

$$X_{ij} = \begin{cases} X & i \leq -1, j \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

and all arrows between $X \to X$ the identity, all other arrows 0. (There is a similar embedding for every $i < j$.) ‘If $\varphi \leq \psi$ i.e. $\varphi(i) \leq \psi(i)$ for all $i$,’ not ‘for any $i$.’ A $\Pi$-object of $\mathcal{A}$ is just a functor $F : \Pi \to \mathcal{A}$, and $\tilde{\varphi}(F)$ is the functor $\Pi \xrightarrow{\varphi \times \varphi} \Pi \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{A}$.

The way $\lim$ is defined doesn’t work, but the simpler, obvious way to define it works flawlessly. The fewest conditions on the functions $\varphi$ necessary to make the stated arrows into a multiplicative system are probably that (i) $\varphi : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{Z}$ be surjective; and (ii) the function $|\varphi(i) - i|$ have an upper bound. But who cares! The only functions we need to consider in our localization are the shift functions $\varphi_N(i) = i + N, N \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Let’s verify the axioms of multiplicative system for the system of morphisms $\tilde{\varphi}_N(X) \to \tilde{\varphi}_M(X), X \in \text{ob} \mathcal{A}^\Pi$, $N \leq M$ which arise from the obvious morphism of functors $\tilde{\varphi}_N \to \tilde{\varphi}_M$. (To be clear, this morphism of functors at an object $X$ is defined by the arrows $X_{i+N,j+N} \to X_{i+M,j+M}$ which are part of the data of $X$ as $\Pi$-object.) If $N$ is a natural number and $X$ in $\mathcal{A}^\Pi$, write $X_N := \tilde{\varphi}_N(X)$. Composition is trivial: $X_A \to X_B = Y_C \to Y_D$ implies $Y = X_{B-C}$ so the composition coincides with $X_A \to X_{B+D-C}$. The following diagrams verify the remaining conditions of a multiplicative system when $A \leq B$ are integers.

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_A & \longrightarrow & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_B & \longrightarrow & Y_{B-A}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_{A-B} & \longrightarrow & Y_A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \longrightarrow & Y_B
\end{array}
\begin{array}{cc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X_{B-A} & \xrightarrow{g} & Y_{B-A}
\end{array}
$$

We localize $\mathcal{A}$ with respect to this multiplicative system to obtain the category $\lim \mathcal{A}$.

The functor $\lim : \mathcal{A}^\Pi \to \lim \mathcal{A}$ is surjective on (isomorphism classes) of objects. A
morphism \( \lim X \to \lim Y \) is represented by a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & Y_A \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
Y & \longrightarrow & Y \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( A \geq 0 \) and \( Y \to Y_A \) is the morphism in the multiplicative system. Two such morphisms \( f : X \to Y_A \) and \( g : X \to Y_B \) agree if, supposing \( A \leq B \), the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \longrightarrow & Y_A & \longrightarrow & Y_C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
X & \longrightarrow & Y_B & \longrightarrow & Y_C \\
\end{array}
\]

commutes; this is true iff \( g \) coincides with the composition \( X \overset{f}{\longrightarrow} Y_A \overset{!}{\longrightarrow} Y_B \).

The exact structure on \( \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \) induces one on \( \lim \mathcal{A} \) as the localization functor \( \lim : \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \to \lim \mathcal{A} \) preserves finite limits & colimits, and if \( \alpha : I \to \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \) is an inductive or projective system in \( \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \) indexed by a finite category \( I \) such that \( \lim \alpha \) (resp. \( \lim \alpha \)) exists in \( \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \), then \( \lim(\lim \circ \alpha) \) (resp. \( \lim(\lim \circ \alpha) \)) exists in \( \lim \mathcal{A} \) and is isomorphic to \( \lim(\lim \alpha) \) (resp. \( \lim(\lim \alpha) \)); in particular, \( \lim \) commutes with kernels, cokernels, finite products and finite coproducts (c.f. Kashiwara & Schapira, Categories and Sheaves (7.1.22)). In other words, \( \lim : \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \to \lim \mathcal{A} \) is exact and hence composes with the faithful exact embedding \( \mathcal{A} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{A}_a^\Pi \) to give a faithful exact embedding \( \lim : \mathcal{A} \hookrightarrow \lim \mathcal{A} \).

We will use the \( \lim \) construction in a particular way in what follows. Let \( \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A}) \) denote the filtered category of \( \mathcal{A} \) with objects sequences

\[
\cdots \to B^p \overset{j_p}{\longrightarrow} B^{p-1} \to \cdots \quad p \in \mathbb{Z}
\]

of admissible monomorphisms in \( \mathcal{A} \) such that \( B^p = 0 \) for \( p \ll 0 \) and \( \text{coker} \ j^p = 0 \) for all \( p \gg 0 \). Morphisms in \( \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A}) \) are those compatible with the filtration and correspond bijectively to sequences \( f^p \in \text{Hom}_\mathcal{A}(B^p, B^p) \) such that \( f^{p+1} j^p = j^{p+1} f^p \) for all \( p \in \mathbb{Z} \). The componentwise short exact sequences form an exact structure on \( \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A}) \). Given a
sequence

\[ \ldots \rightarrow A^p \rightarrow A^{p-1} \rightarrow \ldots \quad p \in \mathbb{Z} \]

of admissible monomorphisms in \( \mathcal{A} \) (with no finiteness condition), let \( A^{a,b} := \text{coker}(A^b \rightarrow A^a) \) whenever \( b \geq a \), considered as object of \( \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A}) \). Define the admissible \( \Pi \)-object \( X \) in \( \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A})_a^{\Pi} \) by \( X_{ij} := A^{-j,-i} \). When \( (i_1, j_1) \leq (i_2, j_2) \) with both in \( \Pi \) we have for transition morphism \( X_{i_1,j_1} \rightarrow X_{i_2,j_2} \) the canonical

\[ \text{coker}(A^{-i_1} \rightarrow A^{-j_1}) \rightarrow \text{coker}(A^{-i_2} \rightarrow A^{-j_2}) \]

and \( X \) is admissible in view of exact sequences \( (i \leq j \leq k) \)

\[
\begin{align*}
X_{ij} & \xrightarrow{} X_{ik} \xrightarrow{} X_{jk} \\
A^{-j,-i} & \xrightarrow{} A^{-k,-i} \xrightarrow{} A^{-k,-j}.
\end{align*}
\]

Let \( AM(\mathcal{A}) \) denote the subcategory of \( A \) with objects the objects of \( \mathcal{A} \) and morphisms the admissible monomorphisms in \( \mathcal{A} \). Let \( \text{Fil}_Z(\mathcal{A}) \) denote the category with objects functors \( Z \rightarrow AM(\mathcal{A}) \) and morphisms natural transformations of functors considered as functors \( Z \rightarrow \mathcal{A} \) (\( \text{Fil}_Z(\mathcal{A}) \) is just \( \text{Fil}(A) \) with no finiteness hypothesis). The above construction gives a functor

\[ T : \text{Fil}_Z(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \text{Fil}(\mathcal{A})_a^{\Pi}. \]

1.2. Recall that \( A^\circ = F_\ell[Z_\ell(1)] \) with fraction field \( A \); after choosing a generator \( t \) for \( Z_\ell(1) \), \( A^\circ \) coincides with \( F_\ell[[\bar{t} - 1]] \) while \( A \) coincides with \( F_\ell((\bar{t} - 1)) \). As before, \( F_\ell \) may coincide with \( \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n \) or \( Z_\ell \), and we have \( A^i := (\bar{t} - 1)^i A^\circ \). It’s time to ‘see’ the \( \lim \) construction in the construction of an étale avatar \( A_{\text{et}} \) of \( A \). The point is that \( A \) as an étale sheaf on \( \text{Spec} \ k \) is far from constructible. Just as we obtain \( \ell \)-adic sheaves as projective systems of compatible constructible \( \mathbb{Z}/\ell^n \)-sheaves, we would like to obtain Laurent series as a suitable system of constructible (or \( \ell \)-adic) sheaves. This is what the \( \lim \) construction does.

Let \( \mathcal{P}_k \) denote the category of \( F_\ell \)-sheaves on \( \text{Spec} \ k \). We would like to define an object \( \lim \mathcal{P}_k \) that behaves like the algebra \( A \) with action of Galois. Consider \( A \)
with its $\mathbb{Z}$-filtration as an object of $\text{Fil}_\mathbb{Z}(\mathcal{P}_k)$ and let $A_{\text{ét}} := T(A)$, where $T$ is the functor defined at the end of [the note to 1.1]. To see why $A_{\text{ét}}$ is a good avatar of the field $A$ of Laurent series, observe that

$$\text{Hom}_{\lim \mathcal{D}_k} (F_\ell, A_{\text{ét}}) = A$$

with Galois acting on the left by transport of structure. Here the constant sheaf $F_\ell$ in $\mathcal{D}_k$ is considered embedded via the embedding discussed in [the note to A3] which is the particular case $i = 0$ of the system of embeddings $\mathcal{P} \hookrightarrow \lim \mathcal{P}$ pictured in Figure 1 (where $(i, j)$ refers to the $i^{th}$ row and $j^{th}$ column). For, it is easily seen that

\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{Hom}_{\lim \mathcal{D}_k} (F_\ell, A_{\text{ét}}) \text{ is in bijection with the data of a choice of } i \in \mathbb{Z} \text{ and a morphism in } \\
\text{Fil}(\mathcal{P}_k)^{\Pi} \text{ from } F_\ell, \text{ embedded as in the left picture in Figure 1, to } A_{\text{ét}}, \text{ modulo the relation that two such morphisms are identified if they agree on their nontrivial overlap, as indicated in the right picture in Figure 1. If one associates to each nonzero Laurent series } \\
p \in A \text{ its initial form } \text{in}(p) \in A^{a,a+1}, \text{ there is a unique morphism in } \text{Hom}_{\lim \mathcal{D}_k} (F_\ell, A_{\text{ét}}) \text{ with } F_\ell \text{ embedded as in Figure 1, with } i = a \text{ corresponding to } p. \text{ One recovers } A^a \text{ via the morphisms that can be represented by a morphism in } \text{Fil}(\mathcal{P}_k)^{\Pi} \text{ with } F_\ell \text{ embedded in } i \leq -a. \text{ Galois acts continuously on } \text{Hom}_{\lim \mathcal{D}_k} (F_\ell, A_{\text{ét}}) = A \text{ for the topology induced by the filtration.}
\end{array}\]
I do not see a way to make $A_{\text{et}}$ into a ring, or a ring object. The issue is of course that if we were dealing with an ‘étalization’ of $A^\circ$, the multiplication would be easy to define as multiplication respects the filtration. Once we pass to fractions, however, the multiplication of two fractions no longer respects the topology. As I understand it, $A_{\text{et}}$ should be understood in analogy with the adic formalism. The adic formalism, however, proceeds from the notion of $A$-linear category, where $A$ is a commutative ring so that every object of the category has endomorphism ring an $A$-algebra. To define the category of $\mathbb{Q}_{\ell}$-sheaves, one formally inverts the endomorphism ‘multiplication by $\ell$’ in the $\mathbb{Z}_{\ell}$-category. In our case, the algebra $A$ (or, more precisely, $A^\circ$) is not just a commutative ring, but a sheaf, a commutative ring with action of Galois. I have no doubt that $A^\circ$ can be ‘étalized’ in a very correct way, but it cannot be done directly from the formalism of SGA 5 for this reason. The matter is essentially this: the adic formalism in SGA 5 is enough to treat projective systems of étale sheaves which are modules for a constant sheaf of rings $\mathbb{Z}_{\ell}$, which does not really enter the picture directly as a sheaf of rings, but only via the commutative $A$ in the notion of $A$-linear category. Of course, the notion of ringed topos is foundational, and so the way it is done in the adic formalism is not really satisfactory. I wonder if the pro-étale topos allows one to satisfactorily define an ‘$\ell$-adic sheaf of rings’ which needn’t be constant. Our ‘étalization’ of $A^\circ$ should be such an ‘$\ell$-adic sheaf of rings.’

In the rest of the article, Sasha is trying to work ‘$\ell$-adically’ for an ‘nonconstant adic sheaf of rings’ $A$. I think the lim formalism isn’t quite up to the job, because I do not see how to make $A_{\text{et}}$ into a ring object, and moreover I don’t see how to have it act on $I_{\text{et}}$. However, I am not sure we actually need this. In the key lemma, forget the notion of $\pi^{-1}$ and just notice that if ker and coker are annihilated by a power of $\pi$ independent of $a, b$, say $N$, then both are killed by the map $\text{id} \to \tilde{\phi}_N$, which is an isomorphism in $\lim$.

1.4. Given $\pi \in A^{1^*}$, let $\tilde{t} := \exp \pi$ and $\gamma := \tilde{t} - 1$ so that $A \simeq F_\ell[[\gamma]]$ and $\pi = \log \tilde{t}$. (As remarked, if $t$ is a generator of the sheaf $\mathbb{Z}_{\ell}(1)$, $\pi = \log t$ is a logical choice.) The sheaf $I_{\text{et}}^{a,b}$ is defined by the action of the group $G$ defined in the note to (1.1) and in view of the canonically split extension $\left[\right]$, it will suffice to show that if $l \in \mathbb{Z}_{\ell}(1), m \in \text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)$, $lm\sigma_{\pi}(x) = \sigma_{\pi}(lmx)$. Supposing $m = 1$, the statement is clear as $l$ acts trivially on $\mathbb{Z}_{\ell}(-n)$ (which is the reciprocal image of a sheaf on $\text{Spec } k$) and of course $\tilde{I}$ commutes with $\pi^n$.
as both are elements of the Iwasawa algebra $A$. In general, $m$ acts by multiplication by $\chi(m)^{-n}$ on $\pi^{-n}$ and sends $\tilde{t} \mapsto \tilde{t}^{\chi(m)}$ so $m \pi = \log(\tilde{t}^{\chi(m)}) = \chi(m)\pi$. 
Bibliography

[B] How to glue perverse sheaves par Beilinson
[BBD] Faisceaux Pervers par Beilinson, Bernstein, Deligne (& Gabber!)
[Bühler] Theo Bühler, Exact Categories
11. Morel’s notes

0. Introduction. We use the notation $G_{m,k} \leftarrow \mathbf{A}_k^1 \leftarrow \{0\}$. The nearby cycles functor $\Psi_f$ is relative to the morphism $f : X \to \mathbf{A}_k^1$; let $Y := f^{-1}(0)$ and $U := X - Y$. We use the setup of (2.2.2) in Laumon’s Fourier transform article: write $\mathbf{A}_k^1 = \text{Spec}(k[u])$ with generic point $\eta = \text{Spec}(k[u])$ and Zariski trait $(\mathbf{A}_k^1)_0 := \text{Spec}(k[u]_{(u)})$ at $0$; let $k\{u\}$ denote the henselization of the local ring $k[u]_{(u)}$, let $(\mathbf{A}_k^1)(0) := \text{Spec}(k\{u\})$ with generic point $\xi = \text{Spec}(k\{u\}[u^{-1}])$, so that the inclusion $k[u, u^{-1}] \hookrightarrow k\{u\}[u^{-1}]$ induces a morphism of schemes $\iota : \xi \to G_{m,k}$. We also use $i, j$ to denote the inclusion of the closed and generic points to $(\mathbf{A}_k^1)(0)$.

Fix a geometric point $\rho : \xi \to \xi$, which via $\xi \to \eta$ we also consider to be centered on $\eta$. Given an object $K$ of $D^b_c(X_\xi)$, $\text{Gal}(\xi, \xi)$ acts on the nearby cycles $R\Psi_\xi(K)[-1]$ of [?, Exp. XIII] relative to the morphism $f$ (abusively letting $\iota$ also denote the inclusion of $\xi$ into $\mathbf{A}_k^1$). (See the note to BBD Appendix A for a detailed comparison of two ways of writing $R\Psi_\xi$.)

Let $S$ denote $(\mathbf{A}_k^1)(0)$ with closed point $0$. Let $\tilde{\xi}$ denote the maximal tamely ramified extension of $\xi$ and let $\overline{A}_k^1, G_{m,k}, \tilde{S}$ denote the normalisations of $\mathbf{A}_k^1, G_{m,k},$ and $S$, respectively, in $\tilde{\xi}$. Likewise for tildes. Note that $\bar{0}$ is the spectrum of the separable closure of $k$ and $\bar{S}$ is the spectrum of a valuation ring with value group $\mathbb{Z}_{(p)}$ (the localization of $\mathbb{Z}$ at the prime $(p)$) while $\tilde{S}$ is the spectrum of a valuation ring with value group $\mathbb{Q}$ and with residue field a purely inseparable extension of $k(\tilde{s})$. The commutative diagram on the right is obtained by localising the one on the left near $0$.

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & \xrightarrow{i} & \mathbf{A}_k^1 & \xleftarrow{j} & G_{m,k} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bar{0} & \xrightarrow{i} & \overline{A}_k^1 & \xleftarrow{j} & \bar{G}_{m,k}\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{cccc}
\bar{0} & \xrightarrow{i} & \overline{S} & \xleftarrow{j} & \tilde{\xi} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bar{0} & \xrightarrow{i} & \bar{S} & \xleftarrow{j} & \bar{\xi}
\end{array}
\]
Let \( \pi \) denote the composition \( \overline{A}_k^1 \to \tilde{\overline{A}}_k^1 \xrightarrow{\pi} \overline{A}_k^1 \) and its various base extensions to morphisms landing in \( G_{m,k} \) or \( S \). To get \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \) to act on nearby cycles, make the

**Definition.** For \( K \) in \( D^b_c(U) \), set \( \Psi_f := \tilde{i}^*\tilde{j}_*\pi^*K[-1] \).

(We notate also by \( i, j \) etc. the corresponding base extensions via the morphism \( f \).)

As \( i \) factors as \( \{0\} \to (A_k^1)_0 \to A_k^1 \), \( \tilde{i} \) factors as \( \{0\} \to \overline{S} \to \overline{A}_k^1 \) so that \( \Psi_f[1] \) coincides with the usual \( R\Psi_\xi \) for the henselian trait \( S \). As \( i \) also factors as \( \{0\} \to (A_k^1)_0 \to A_k^1 \), \( \Psi_f \) also coincides with \( i^*j_*K_\xi \) which carries an action of \( \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/\eta) \). ('Coincide,' means in this case 'coincide' in \( D^b(X\overline{\xi}) \), but these various ways of writing \( \Psi_f \) endow it with actions by different groups; in this case, one is a subgroup of the other.) When \( \mathcal{L} \) is a lisse sheaf on \( G_{m,k} \), this action of factors through the quotient \( \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/\eta) \to \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \). For an arbitrary \( Q \)-sheaf, the lisse locus may be a proper subscheme of \( G_{m,k} \) in which case the action of \( \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/\eta) \) may not factor through the stated quotient, but rather will factor through one with a smaller kernel. Regardless, Remark 0.2 about a local system \( \mathcal{L} \) is now obvious.

On the functorial exact triangle \( \Psi_f \xrightarrow{T-1} \Psi_f \xrightarrow{i^*j_*} \rightarrow \): this is discussed with more detail in the proof of t-exactness of (shifted) nearby and vanishing cycles in [BBD, Appendix A]. The point is, with \( X \to S \) of finite type over a strictly henselian trait \( (S, \eta, s) \) which is essentially of finite type over a field \( k \) of characteristic \( \neq \ell \), starting with \( K \in D^b_c(X\overline{\xi}) \) and letting \( G := \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/\xi) \), \( K \sim R\Gamma(G, \rho^*\rho^*K) \) and therefore

\[ i^*j_*K = i^*j_*R\Gamma(G, \rho^*\rho^*K). \]

Writing \( G \) as an extension of \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1) \) by a pro-group \( Q \) of order prime to \( \ell \), since invariants by \( Q \) is an exact functor, \( R\Gamma(G, -) \) is represented on \( D^b_c(X\overline{\xi} \times BG) \) by

\[ K \mapsto \text{Cone}(K^Q \xrightarrow{T-1} K^Q)[-1] \]

(an explication of why can be found in [D, 10.7]; in short, it is because a \( \mathbb{Z}_\ell(1) \)-module admits a 2-step acyclic resolution by coinduced modules), so, keeping in mind \( \Psi_f := R\Psi_\xi[-1] \), in order to see that the triangle

\[ \Psi_f(K^Q) \xrightarrow{T-1} \Psi_f(K^Q) \to i^*j_*K^Q \to \]

is distinguished, it suffices to see that $i^*j_*(K^Q) = (i^*j_*)^Q$, which is clear, and then simply use functoriality.

When S is no longer strictly henselian, the situation is the same, except of course $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)$ could be nontrivial, so $R\Gamma(\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1), \Psi_f(K)) = i^*j_*(K)$, ‘packaged’ as a sheaf on $Y_\overline{k}$ with action of $\text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)$ (recall [SGA7 XIII 1.1.3]: the functor $\mathcal{F} \mapsto \{\mathcal{F} \text{ endowed with action of } \text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k)\}$ is an equivalence of categories). This is why in the notes Morel writes ‘the last term should be base changed from $Y$ to $Y_\overline{k}$,’ but this is a distinction without a difference.

Morel takes $T$ to be a topological generator of the prime-to-$p$ quotient of $\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)$, while in the above $T$ is a topological generator of the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient $\mathbf{Z}_\ell(1)$ of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}/\xi)$. This is insignificant: the invariants under $Q$ functor is exact on a pro-$\ell$ module provided $Q$ has order prime to $\ell$ so we could take $T$ to be a topological generator of the prime-to-$p$ quotient and take invariants under the maximal pro-$\ell$ subgroup (which is a normal Sylow) or take $T$ to be a topological generator of the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient and take invariants under everything else (which is the approach taken above). Let’s first analyse the maximal prime-to-$p$ quotient of both groups; we will see that they coincide, which will imply that the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotients also coincide. The maximal prime-to-$p$ quotient of $\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)$ coincides with $\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)^{\text{mod}}$, and, after base changing to $\overline{k}$, the maximal prime-to-$p$ quotient of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k})$ coincides with $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k})^{\text{mod}}$, the tame quotient of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k})$. Both these groups are isomorphic to $\hat{\mathbf{Z}}(1)(\overline{k})$; c.f. [Laumon 2.2.2.1] and the note to 2.2.2.2. To see that the prime-to-$p$ quotient of $\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)$ coincides with $\pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)^{\text{mod}}$, simply recall that $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k}) \to \pi_1(G_{m,\overline{k}}, 1)$ and the former group admits a dévissage

$$1 \to P_0 \to \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k}) \to \hat{\mathbf{Z}}(1)(\overline{k}) \to 1$$

where the wild inertia $P_0$ is a $p$-group so that the maximal prime-to-$p$ quotient of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k})$ is $\hat{\mathbf{Z}}(1)(\overline{k})$; moreover the same is true of the maximal prime-to-$p$ quotient of the subgroup $\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k}) \subset \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k})$, and this subgroup surjects onto
Gal(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k})^{\text{mod}} \simeq \hat{Z}(1)(\overline{k}). We have a commutative diagram [Laumon, 2.2.2]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k}) & \longrightarrow & \pi_1(G_{m, \overline{k}}, 1) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k}) & \longrightarrow & \text{Gal}(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k})^{\text{mod}} \simeq \hat{Z}(1)(\overline{k})
\end{array}
\]

and from the description of Gal(\overline{\xi}, \eta \otimes_k \overline{k}) it follows that \pi_1(G_{m, \overline{k}}, 1)^{\text{mod}} \simeq \hat{Z}(1)(\overline{k}) is the maximal prime-to-\(p\) quotient of \pi_1(G_{m, \overline{k}}, 1). Moreover, a topological generator of either the maximal prime-to-\(p\) or pro-\(\ell\) quotients of Gal(\overline{\xi}, \xi \otimes_k \overline{k}) is carried onto the same in \pi_1(G_{m, \overline{k}}, 1).

Regardless of whether one takes \(T\) to be a topological generator of the maximal pro-\(\ell\) quotient or the maximal prime-to-\(p\) quotient (we will choose the latter to conform to Morel’s notes), there is still the issue that after extending scalars \(k \hookrightarrow \overline{k}\) the triangle

\[
\Psi_f(K^Q) \xrightarrow{T - 1} \Psi_f(K^Q) \rightarrow i^* j_*(K^Q) \rightarrow
\]

is distinguished, where we have taken \(Q\)-invariants, whereas Morel doesn’t mention taking \(Q\)-invariants when she writes this triangle. This is most likely because she is using tamely-ramified nearby cycles \(\tilde{\Psi}_f\) to begin with.

**Definition.** For \(K \in D^b(U)\), let \(\tilde{\Psi}_f(K) := \tilde{i}^* \tilde{j}_* \tilde{\pi}^* K[-1]\) denote tame nearby cycles.

(Compare [SGA 7, Exp. I 2.7].) Note that \(\tilde{\Psi}_f(K) = R\Gamma(Q, \Psi_f(K)) = \Psi_f(K)^Q = \Psi_f(K^Q)\), where \(Q\) is the wild inertia of Gal(\overline{\xi}, \xi). Therefore, when Morel writes \(\Psi_f\), she is probably implicitly writing \(\tilde{\Psi}_f\), and we will do the same in what follows.

**1. Unipotent nearby cycles.** We retain the notation from the previous section. We write \(F_\ell\) for Morel’s \(F\). Now \(F_\ell\) can be \(Q_\ell\), \(E_\ell\), \(\overline{Q}_\ell\), etc.

(1.1) We construct the unipotent nearby cycles. To find that the endomorphism ring is finite over \(F_\ell\), simply use the fact that \(R\mathcal{H}om\) preserves constructibility and write

\[
\text{End}_{F_\ell}(\Psi_f K) = H^0 R \text{Hom}(\Psi_f K, \Psi_f K).
\]

Let \(P := \Psi_f K\) and \(E = \text{End} P\). We have \(F_\ell[T] \rightarrow E\) with kernel \(a(T)\), a nonconstant polynomial as \(\dim F_\ell \geq 0\). Write \(a = bc\) with \((T - 1) \nmid b\) and \(c = (T - 1)^m\) for some
We have \((b, c) = 1\), there exist \(x, y \in \mathbb{F}_q[T]\) s.t. \(1 = xb + yc (1 = \text{id}_P)\). As \(a = 0\) in \(E\), we have \((xb)(yc) = xya = 0\),

\[xb = xb(xb + yc) = (xb)^2 + xya = (xb)^2,\]

and similarly \((yc)^2 = yc\), all in \(E\). Let \(e_1 = xb\) and \(e_2 = yc\). We have found a pair of orthogonal idempotents \(e_1\) and \(e_2\) with \(e_1 + e_2 = 1 := \text{id}_P\), and by [the note to BBD 2.2.18](#), the triangulated category \(\mathbb{D}_c^b(Y)\) is Karoubi complete: every idempotent splits.

More precisely, given an object \(P\) of this category and an idempotent \(e : P \to P\), there is an object \(P_e\) and a retraction \(P_e \to P \to P_e\) with \(pi = \text{id}_{P_e}\) and \(ip = e\). In particular, this means that \(i\) is a monomorphism, \(p\) an epimorphism, and \(P_e\) is simultaneously a limit and colimit of the diagram \(P \Rightarrow P\), where the parallel morphisms are \(\text{id}_P\) and \(ip = e\), via the morphisms \(i\) and \(p\), respectively. Moreover, \(P_e\) is an absolute (co)limit, i.e. preserved by every functor.

Therefore from the \(e_i\) we get \(P_i, i_i, p_i (i = 1, 2)\), and to verify that \(P = P_1 \oplus P_2\) it only remains (0103) to check that \(p_2 \circ i_1 = 0 = p_1 \circ i_2\). As \(i_2\) is a monomorphism and \(p_1\) an epimorphism, in order to show \(p_2 \circ i_1 = 0\) it suffices to write

\[i_2 \circ p_j \circ i_1 \circ p_1 = e_2 \circ e_1 = 0.\]

Therefore \(P = P_1 \oplus P_2\). Given any polynomial \(q(T)\), we consider \(q(T)\) as endomorphism of \(P\). As \(i_2 \circ p_2 \circ q(T) \circ i_1 \circ p_1 = e_2 q(T) e_1 = q(T) e_2 e_1 = 0\), in fact \(p_2 \circ q(T) \circ i_1 = 0\) and similarly \(p_1 \circ q(T) \circ i_2 = 0\). This means that \(q(T)\) descends to endomorphisms of \(P_1\) and \(P_2\), and the decomposition \(P = P_1 \oplus P_2\) is \(\mathbb{F}_q[T]\)-equivariant. Moreover, to calculate \(q(T)\) on \(P_1\), it suffices to know \(p_1 \circ q(T) \circ i_1\).

We see that as \((T - 1)^m = -c\) and \(a = bc = 0\) as endomorphism of \(P\), \((T - 1)^m e_1 = cxb = xya = 0\). Therefore \(p_1 \circ (T - 1)^m \circ i_1 = 0 (p_1\) is an epimorphism) and \((T - 1)^m = 0\) on \(P_1\). On the other hand, \(p_2 \circ (T - 1)(y(T - 1)^{m-1}) \circ i_2 = p_2 \circ e_2 \circ i_2 = \text{id}_{P_2}\) shows that \((T - 1)\) is invertible as endomorphism of \(P_2\). This shows that \(T - 1\) is nilpotent on \(P_1\) and an automorphism of \(P_2\).
We set $\Psi_f^m K := P_1$ and $\Psi_f^m K := P_2$, call the former the unipotent nearby cycles, and the latter the non-unipotent nearby cycles. We have proved a $F[\ell][T]$-linear decomposition

$$\Psi_f K = \Psi_f^u K \oplus \Psi_f^m K.$$  

Nothing in the above discussion changes if we replace $\Psi_f$ by $\tilde{\Psi}_f$, so we have similarly

$$\tilde{\Psi}_f(K) = \tilde{\Psi}_f^u(K) \oplus \tilde{\Psi}_f^m(K)$$

and a distinguished triangle

$$\tilde{\Psi}_f^u \to \tilde{\Psi}_f^m \to i^* j_* \to .$$

(That $\tilde{\Psi}_f^u$ preserves constructibility is deduced trivially from the fact that $\Psi_f^u$ does, and as taking $\mathbb{Q}$-invariants is an exact functor on $\ell$-adic sheaves, $H^i \tilde{\Psi}_f^u = H^i (\Psi_f^u)^\mathbb{Q} = (H^i \Psi_f^m)^\mathbb{Q}$; now recall that every subsheaf of a constructible sheaf of modules over a noetherian ring on a noetherian scheme is constructible.)

2. Some local systems on $G_{m,k}$. The local systems $\mathcal{L}_a$ appear to be stand-ins for Sasha’s $\text{Gr} \Gamma^{a,b}$, which, by the way, come with the pairing $(\ , )$. Let’s look more closely at the analogy. The action of $\pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1)$ on $\Gamma^{a,b}$ is also via the projection onto the maximal pro-$\ell$ quotient $Z_{\ell}(1)$, and $t \in Z_{\ell}(1)$ acts on $\Gamma^{a,b}$ by $\tilde{t} = \exp(\log \tilde{t})$. The point is that $\log \tilde{t} \in A^{1*}$ in Sasha’s notation; i.e. $A^\circ \simeq F[\[\log \tilde{t}\]]$, and therefore $\log \tilde{t}$ acts on $\text{Gr} \Gamma^{-a,0}$ by Morel’s N. Therefore indeed Morel’s $\mathcal{L}_a \simeq \text{Gr} \Gamma^{-a,0}$. Morel claims an isomorphism $\mathcal{L}_a^\vee \simeq \text{Gr} \Gamma^{0,a}$, but if we want to upgrade the naïve isomorphism of sheaves on Spec $k$ to one on $G_{m,k}$ we run into the issue that the logarithm of geometric monodromy acts on $\mathcal{L}_a^\vee$ by $- \log \tilde{t}$, not $\log \tilde{t}$ and so $t$ acts by $\exp(- \log \tilde{t})$. Therefore a $\pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1)$-equivariant isomorphism is not provided by the identity morphism but rather by the isomorphism

$$\Gamma^{0,a} = F \oplus F(1) \oplus \cdots \oplus F(a)$$

$$\mathcal{L}_a^\vee = F \oplus F(1) \oplus \cdots \oplus F(a).$$

In Sasha’s notation, $(\text{Gr} \Gamma^{-a,0})^\vee \simeq \text{Gr} \Gamma^{0,a}$, and the maps $\alpha, \beta$ are just the $\text{Gr}$ of maps $\Gamma^{-a,0} \hookrightarrow \Gamma^{-b,0}$ and $\Gamma^{-b,0} \to \Gamma^{-b,-a+b}$. To obtain the statement about $D(\alpha_{a,b})$, we see before passing to $\text{Gr}$ that $D(\alpha_{a,b})(-1)[-2] : \Gamma^{0,b} \to \Gamma^{0,a}$ is just reduction modulo $\Gamma^a$. Passing to
Gr, this is the same as
\[ \beta_{a,b}(b) : L_b(b) = (\text{Gr} \Gamma^{-b,0})(b) \rightarrow (\text{Gr} \Gamma^{-a,0})(a) = L_a(a). \]

3. **Beilinson’s construction of \( \Psi_{\text{un}} \).** Everything is clear except perhaps at first glance the expression \( \ker(N^a, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f K) \), as \( N \) is not an endomorphism of \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f \) but rather sends it to \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(-1) \). Write \( N \) as a linear map \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(1) \rightarrow \Psi_{\text{un}}^f \); what this means is that \( N \) assigns, linearly in \( F_{\ell} \), an endomorphism of \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f \) to an element of \( F_{\ell}(1) \). Therefore there is an unambiguous meaning to \( \ker(N^a, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f K) \): if \( t_1, \ldots, t_a \) are nonzero elements of \( K \), ker(\( N t_a \ldots N t_1, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f K) \) is independent of the choice of \( t_i \).

(3.3) Returning to the various ways of defining \( \Psi_f \), we settled upon \( \dot{\Psi}_{\text{un}}^f \). This functor with \( f = \text{id} \), as a direct factor of tame cycles, no longer has the property of sending every shifted local system \( \mathcal{L}[1] \) on \( G_{m,k} \) to \( L(0) \) (where \( L \) the representation of \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \) corresponding to \( \mathcal{L} \)). But it still does for these \( \mathcal{L}_a \), as \( \pi_1(G_{m,k}, 1) \) acts on \( \mathcal{L}_a \) through the tame quotient, and moreover \( T \) acts unipotently by construction.

(3.4) is indeed obvious, but it appears to have a typo. Start with \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K) \), express the latter as \( \ker(N^{a+1}, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K)) \) for \( a \gg 0 \) and then via the isomorphism \( \gamma \) as \( \ker(N, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a)) \); i.e. for \( a \gg 0 \) the map
\[ \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K) \rightarrow \ker(N, \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a)) \]
\[ x \mapsto (x, -Nx, \ldots, (-N)^a x) \]
is an embedding. The target is identified with \( \pi H^{-1} j_* (K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) \), which now has \( N \) acting only by \( 1 \otimes N = 1 \otimes (\beta_{a,a+1} \circ \alpha_{a,a+1}) \); i.e. by
\[ (x, -Nx, \ldots, (-N)^a x) \mapsto (-Nx, \ldots, (-N)^a x, 0); \]
via the above embedding, this means that \( 1 \otimes N = 1 \otimes (\beta_{a,a+1} \circ \alpha_{a,a+1}) \) acts by \(-N\), not \( N \), on \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(K) \).

(3.5) Sasha’s construction of \( \Psi_{\text{un}}^f \) has the merit of behaving simply with respect to duality and admitting a description in terms of basic functors, but, as remarked above, whether it lands in \( Y \) or \( Y_{\overline{k}} \) is insignificant since it lands in \( Y_{\overline{k}} \) with action of \( \text{Gal}(\overline{k}/k) \)
coming from the split-exact arithmetic-geometric sequence of $\pi_1$, and therefore can be regarded as a sheaf on $Y_k$ to begin with.

4. Duality. As before, $F_\ell = Q_\ell, E_\ell, \overline{Q}_\ell$, etc.

Lemma. — Let $f : X \to S$ be a separated morphism of finite type between schemes of finite type over $k$ and $\mathcal{L}$ a lisse $F_\ell$-sheaf on $S$. Then $f^!(\mathcal{L}) \xleftarrow{\sim} f^*\mathcal{L} \otimes f^!F_\ell$.

Proof. — The counit of adjunction $f_!f^! \to id$ defines an arrow in the $H^0$ of $R\text{Hom}(\mathcal{L} \otimes f_!f^!F_\ell, \mathcal{L}) = R\text{Hom}(f_!(f^*\mathcal{L} \otimes f^!F_\ell), \mathcal{L}) = R\text{Hom}(f^*\mathcal{L} \otimes f^!F_\ell, f^!(\mathcal{L}))$

which is evidently locally an isomorphism. \hfill \Box

The lemma allows one to write, for $K \in D^b_c(X, F_\ell),$

$$D(K \otimes f^*\mathcal{L}_a) = R\text{Hom}(K, D(f^*\mathcal{L}_a^\vee)) = R\text{Hom}(K, f^!D(\mathcal{L}_a^\vee))$$

$$= R\text{Hom}(K, f^*\mathcal{L}_a^\vee \otimes f^!F_\ell) = D(K) \otimes f^*\mathcal{L}_a \cong D(K) \otimes f^*\mathcal{L}_a(a).$$

(4.1) As $D$ is involutive and $D(X(a)) = D(X)(-a)$, the diagram

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
pH^0i^*j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a,a+b+1}} & pH^0i^*j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a+b+1}) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{b,a+b+1}} & pH^0i^*j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_b) \\
\text{coker}_a(K) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a,a+b+1}} & \text{coker}_{a+b+1}(K) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{b,a+b+1}} & \text{coker}_b(K)(-a-1) \\
\text{D(ker}_a(\text{DK}(a)) & \xrightarrow{D(\beta_{a,a+b+1}(a))} & \text{D(ker}_{a+b+1}(\text{DK}(a))(b-b-1) & \xrightarrow{D(\alpha_{b,a+b+1}(a))(b-b-1)} & \text{D(ker}_b(\text{DK}(a))(b-b-1) \\
\text{D(Ψ^un}_f(\text{DK})(-a) & \xrightarrow{D(N^b)(-a)} & \text{D(Ψ^un}_f(\text{DK})(-a-b-1) & \xrightarrow{D(id)(-a-b-1)} & \text{D(Ψ^un}_f(\text{DK})(-a-b-1) \\
\end{array}\]

commutes, where the first line is isomorphic to the second by [BBD] 4.1.12.4, and we have used that the map $\alpha_{a,b}$ induces the map $\mathcal{L}_b^\vee = \mathcal{L}_b(b) \xrightarrow{\beta_{a,b}(b)} \mathcal{L}_a(a) = \mathcal{L}_a^\vee$ and vice versa. We need that $N^{b+1} = 0$ on $\Psi^\text{un}_f(\text{DK})$, and I don’t see why this is secured if $N^{b+1} = 0$ on $\Psi^\text{un}_f(K)$, so let’s modify the hypothesis to say ‘$N^{a+1} = 0$ on $\Psi^\text{un}_f(K)$ and $N^{b+1} = 0$ on $\Psi^\text{un}_f(\text{DK})$.’
5. The maximal extension functor. The $\beta$s in the commutative diagram defining $\gamma_{a,a-1}$ are $\beta_{a-1,a}$, not $\beta_{a,a+1}$.

(5.1) It is of course the map $\beta_{a,a+1}: \mathcal{L}_a \to \mathcal{L}_{a-1}(-1)$ that is surjective. The snake lemma gives an isomorphism
\[
\text{coker } \gamma_{a,a-1} \cong i_* \mathcal{H}^{0} i^* j_* (K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1).
\]
To see that the last vertical arrow in the last commutative diagram of the proof is an isomorphism, it is easier to identify it with
\[
i_* \Psi^u \mathcal{K}(-1) = \ker (j_!(K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1)) \to j_* (K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1))
\]
which is the identity by the results of §3, noting that the square below commutes
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{L}_a & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a,a+1}} & \mathcal{L}_{a+1} \\
\downarrow{\beta_{a,a+1}} & & \downarrow{\beta_{a,a+1}} \\
\mathcal{L}_{a-1}(-1) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a-1,a}(-1)} & \mathcal{L}_{a}(-1).
\end{array}
\]
The remaining claims are now clear; given $0 \to K_1 \to K_2 \to K_3 \to 0$ exact, one deduces exactness of $0 \to \Xi_f K_1 \to \Xi_f K_2 \to \Xi_f K_3$ by finding an integer $a$ such that $\ker (j_i(K_i \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a) \xrightarrow{\gamma_{a,a-1}} j_* (K_i \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1)) = \Xi_f K_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$ and then applying the snake lemma to the following commutative diagram with exact rows
\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
0 & \xrightarrow{j_!(K_1 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a)} & j_!(K_2 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a) & \xrightarrow{j_!(K_3 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a)} & 0 \\
\downarrow{\gamma_{a,a-1}} & & \downarrow{\gamma_{a,a-1}} & & \downarrow{\gamma_{a,a-1}} \\
0 & \xrightarrow{j_* (K_1 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a)} & j_* (K_2 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a) & \xrightarrow{j_* (K_3 \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_a)} & 0.
\end{array}
\]

(5.4) Typo: it should read
\[
\text{coker}(j_!(K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_b)(1) \to j_* (K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{b-1})) = \text{coker}(j_!(K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{b-1}) \to j_* (K \otimes f^* \mathcal{L}_{b-1}))
\]
The point is, writing
\[
\gamma_{a,a+1} = j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) \to j_* (K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a,a+1}} j_* (K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a+1})
\]
shows that \( \ker \gamma_{a,a+1} = \ker(j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) \to j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a)) = \Psi^\text{un}_f(K) \) and the snake lemma begins with

\[
0 \to \Psi^\text{un}_f \xrightarrow{\alpha_{a,a+b+1}} \Psi^\text{un}_f \to \ker(\gamma_{b,b-1})(-a-1) \to \cdots
\]

where \( \alpha_{a,a+b+1} \) induces an isomorphism of \( \Psi^\text{un}_f \). The dual statement about cokernels, after writing

\[
\gamma_{b,b-1}(a-1) = j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_b)(a-1) \xrightarrow{\beta_{b,b-1}(a-1)} j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{b-1})(a-2) \to j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{b-1})(a-2),
\]

finds that

\[
\coker \gamma_{b,b-1}(a-1) = \coker(j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{b-1})(-a-2) \to j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{b-1})(a-2)) \\
\cong \Psi^\text{un}_f K(-a-2)(-b+1)
\]

so that, denoting \( \coker(j_!(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a+b+1}) \to j_*(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a+b+1})) \) by \( \coker(j! \to j_*) \), the snake lemma ends in

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\coker(\gamma_{a,a+1}) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{b-1,a+b+1}} & \coker(\gamma_{b,b-1})(-a-1) \to 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow i \\
\coker(\gamma_{a,a+1}) & \xrightarrow{\beta_{b-1,a+b+1}} & \coker(\gamma_{b,b-1})(-a-1) \to 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow i \\
\coker(\gamma_{a,a+1}) & \xrightarrow{\Psi^\text{un}_f K(-a-b-1)} & \Psi^\text{un}_f K(-a-2)(-b+1) \to 0,
\end{array}
\]

using (4.1). Of course

\[
\beta_{b-1,a+b+1} : \coker(j! \to j_*) \cong \coker(j! \to j_*)(-a-1)
\]

is an isomorphism from the dual statement about \( \alpha \).

(5.6) Just apply \( \beta_{a,a+1} \) to the exact sequence of (5.5) for \( a \gg 0 \).

(5.7) If we denote the map \( i_! \Psi^\text{un}_f \to \Xi_f \) by \( \nu \), then the composition coincides with

\[
i_! \Psi^\text{un}_f D \xrightarrow{\nu} \Xi_f D = D \Xi_f \xrightarrow{D \nu} D i_! \Psi^\text{un}_f = i_! \Psi^\text{un}_f (-1) D,
\]

so that

\[
D(D \nu \circ \nu) = D \nu \circ D D \nu = D \nu \circ \nu.
\]
The morphism $\Xi_f \to i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(-1)$ is induced by $\beta_{a-1,a} : j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_a) \to j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1)$ for $a \gg 0$. The dual morphism fits into a commutative diagram ($a \gg 0$)

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
\text{coker}(j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(a) & \overset{\alpha_{a-1,a}(a)}{\longrightarrow} & \text{coker}(\gamma_{a-1,a}(a)) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
\ker(j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1}) \to j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})) & \overset{\alpha_{a-1,a}}{\longrightarrow} & \ker(\gamma_{a,a-1}) \\
\uparrow & & \uparrow \\
i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(K) & \longleftarrow & \Xi_f(K).
\end{array}$$

To see that the upper square commutes, it helps to recall that both vertical arrows are coboundaries in the snake lemma applied to two similar diagrams, and a morphism between these two diagrams can be built on $\alpha_{a-1,a}$ (applied to the upper right corners of the diagrams) and its twist (applied to the lower left corners). Therefore $D \circ v = N : i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f \to \Psi^\text{un}_f(-1)$ and $DN = N$.

We can also study the composition $\Xi_f \to i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(-1) \to \Xi_f(-1)$. The first map is induced by $\beta_{a,a-1}$ and the second by $\alpha_{a-1,a}(-1)$, as already remarked. We have (5.2) that

$$\ker(\gamma_{a,a-1}) \overset{\beta_{a-1,a}}{\longrightarrow} \ker(\gamma_{a-1,a-2}(-1))$$

induces $N$ on $\Xi_f$ for $a \gg 0$. Since $\gamma_{a,a-1}$ factors as $\beta_{a-1,a}$ followed by $j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(-1) \to j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1})(1)$, $\beta_{a-1,a}$ applied to $\ker(\gamma_{a,a-1})$ must actually factor as

$$\ker(\gamma_{a,a-1}) \overset{\beta_{a-1,a}}{\longrightarrow} \ker(j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1}) \to j_i(K \otimes \mathcal{L}_{a-1}))(1) \longhookrightarrow \ker(\gamma_{a-1,a-2}(-1)).$$

The middle is $i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(K)(-1)$, and if we postcompose the above morphism by $\alpha_{a-1,a}(-1)$ we don’t change it, as $\alpha_{a-1,a}$ induces an isomorphism $\Xi_fK \to \Xi_f$ for $a \gg 0$. We have shown that $N : \Xi_f \to \Xi_f$ factors as

$$\Xi_f \to i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(-1) \longhookrightarrow \Xi_f(-1)$$

and the former map induces via the inclusion $i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f \longhookrightarrow \Xi_f$ the morphism $N$ on $i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f$; i.e.

$$i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f \longhookrightarrow \Xi_f \to i_*\Psi^\text{un}_f(-1) \quad \text{also composes to } N.$$
Last, it is clear that the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\ker(\gamma_{a-1,a-2}) & \Xi_f & \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \\
coker(\gamma_{a-1,a}(a)) & \\
\end{array}
\]

commutes, where the leftmost down arrow is the canonical morphism, which shows that this morphism is also sent to itself by D.

6. The unipotent vanishing cycles functor.

Remark. The first paragraph discusses the construction of vanishing cycles. However, (6.2) shows that the functor $\Phi_{\text{un}}^f$ constructed is a direct factor of the the tame vanishing cycles which appears in the distinguished triangle

\[
\Psi_{\text{un}}^f \xrightarrow{\text{can}} \Phi_{\text{un}}^f \rightarrow i^* \rightarrow
\]

where as before $\Psi_{\text{un}}^f = \tilde{\Psi}_{\text{un}}^f$.

In light of [BBD, 4.1.10.1], $\Psi_{\text{un}}^f$ sends $M(X)$ to $M(Y)$ because it has support in $Y$. (5.6) $\leadsto \varepsilon(-1) \circ N = 0$. (5.2) $\leadsto N \circ \delta = 0$. It is easy to see that $\text{can}(-1) \circ \text{var}$ induces the map $\Xi_f \rightarrow \Psi_{\text{un}}^f(-1) \hookrightarrow \Xi_f$. We studied this composition in the note to the previous section and showed that it coincides with $N$. 
(6.2) There is a slight inaccuracy in the second part of the proof that doesn’t change the conclusion. The following diagram is commutative with exact rows and columns.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 & \longrightarrow & i_* \mathcal{H}^{-1}i^* \mathcal{K} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bigoplus & \longrightarrow & j_!j^* \mathcal{K} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \longrightarrow & i_* \Psi_{\text{un}}^j \mathcal{K} & \longrightarrow & \ker d^0 & \longrightarrow & \mathcal{K} & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \ker v & \longrightarrow & i_* \Phi_{\text{un}}^j K & \longrightarrow & i_* \mathcal{H}^0i^* \mathcal{K} & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
\end{array}
\]

(†)

The snake lemma gives the exact sequence

\[
0 \to \ker \kappa \to j_!j^* \mathcal{K} \to j_!j^* \mathcal{K}/i_* \mathcal{H}^{-1}i^* \mathcal{K} \to \coker \kappa \to 0
\]

so that \( \kappa \) is surjective and \( \ker \kappa = i_* \mathcal{H}^{-1}i^* \mathcal{K} \). This doesn’t change the conclusion that \( i_* \coker \Phi_{\text{un}}^j \mathcal{K} \to i_* \mathcal{H}^0i^* \mathcal{K} \). Moreover these conclusions for \( \ker(\psi \Phi_{\text{un}}^j) \), \( i_* \coker \bf{\Phi}_{\text{un}}^j \mathcal{K} \) imply the results without the \( i_* \) because \( i_* \) is t-exact and fully faithful.

7. The functor \( \Omega_f \). \( \Omega_f \) can be defined as \( \ker(\varepsilon + \operatorname{adj}) \) or as \( \ker(\varepsilon - \operatorname{adj}) \), and the isomorphism of complexes \( C^* \mathcal{K} \cong C^* \mathcal{K} \) (6.1) carries the latter isomorphically onto the former. In particular, this gives an isomorphism \( \Omega_f \cong \ker d^0 \), and, in light of the middle row of the diagram (†) above, the second short exact sequence. The first short exact sequence is (6.1) on the nose.

The argument that gives the quasi-isomorphism \( (\Psi^j_\text{un} \Omega_{\text{un}}^j) \cong \Phi^j_{\text{un}} \mathcal{K} \) actually establishes the existence of a distinguished triangle

\[
\Psi^j_\text{un} \Omega_{\text{un}}^j \longrightarrow \Phi^j_{\text{un}} \mathcal{K} \longrightarrow i^* \to
\]

which is the one we expect from the ‘usual’ definition of \( \Phi^j_{\text{un}} \mathcal{K} \). But while the first two functors take perverse sheaves to perverse sheaves, \( i^* \) has perverse amplitude in
One should take care when interpreting the word ‘quasi-isomorphism,’ since $\Psi^\un_f j^*$ is a complex of perverse sheaves (not an object of $D^b_c(Y)$), while $i^*K$ is usually not a perverse sheaf.

### 8. Gluing

$D'(c)$ is a complex because the composition of the two differentials gives $N - N = 0$.

(8.1) I can’t get either direction of the proof to work as written. The first part poses a problem because $\Phi^\un_f D^1(c)$ cannot have the stated form: $b \circ a = 0$ but $-uv = -N$ so that what is written is not a complex. The issue with the second part is that the square on the right in the morphism of exact sequences doesn’t commute: restricting our attention to the second factor $\Omega_f K$, tracing the square right-down gives the null morphism, while tracing it down-right gives $\Omega_f \rightarrow i_* \Phi^\un_f K_{\var} \rightarrow i_* \Psi^\un_f j^* K(-1)$, at least up to sign.

So, to complete the proof, we turn to Sasha’s device of monads and diads developed in his appendix, which gets the job done. Conforming to the language of the next section, we consider a category $M(X)^\sharp_1$ of diads of perverse sheaves on $X$. An object of this category is a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C_+ & \xleftarrow{\alpha_+= (\alpha^1_+, \alpha^2_+)} & A \oplus B & \xrightarrow{\alpha_-= (\alpha^1_-, \alpha^2_-)} & C_-
\end{array}
\]

in which $\alpha^1_-$ is a monomorphism and $\alpha^1_+$ an epimorphism. Morphisms are defined pointwise and such a morphism of diads is a (mono/epi/iso)morphism if it is pointwise; one has $(M(X)^\sharp_1)_- = (M(Y)_-)^\sharp$ and exact functors $M(X) \rightarrow M(Y)$ induce exact functors $M(X)^\sharp_1 \rightarrow M(Y)^\sharp_1$. The category $M(X)^\sharp_1$ is endowed with an involutive autoequivalence $r$ called the reflection functor, which we compute explicitly in the next section. The category of perverse sheaves embeds into $M(X)^\sharp_1$ via the functor $C : M(X) \hookrightarrow M(X)^\sharp_1$ which sends a perverse sheaf $K$ to the diad

\[
j_* j^* K \xrightarrow{\delta \text{-adj}} \Xi j^* K \oplus K \xrightarrow{\epsilon \text{-adj}} j_* j^* K.
\]

Likewise the category of gluing data embeds into $M(X)^\sharp_1$ via the functor $D$ which sends a gluing datum $c = (K_U, K_V, u, v)$ to the diad

\[
i_* \Psi^\un_f K_U \xrightarrow{\text{can} \oplus u} \Xi j_K U \oplus i_* K_Y \xrightarrow{\text{can} \ominus v} i_* \Psi^\un_f K_U (-1).
\]
Identifying the category of perverse sheaves and the category of gluing data with their respective essential images in \( M(X)_1 \) via \( C \) (resp. \( D \)), \( r \) exchanges these two subcategories of \( M(X)_1 \), and in doing so coincides with the functors \( F \) and \( G \). To verify this, we use our explicit computation of \( r \) in the next section to check that

\[
\begin{align*}
  r(C(K)) &= i_* \Psi^\text{un}_f j^* K \xrightarrow{\text{can} \oplus \text{can}} \Xi_f j^* K \oplus i_* \Psi^\text{un}_f K \xrightarrow{\text{can} - \text{var}} i_* \Psi^\text{un}_f j^* K(-1), \\
  r(D(c)) &= j_! K^{\text{U}} \xrightarrow{\delta \oplus \text{adj}} \Xi_f K^{\text{U}} \oplus H^0(D(c)) \xrightarrow{\epsilon - \text{adj}} j_! K^{\text{U}}.
\end{align*}
\]

As \( r \) is an involution, it induces an equivalence between the category of perverse sheaves and the category of gluing data, embedded as subcategories of \( M(X)_1 \), completing the proof.

We now provide details of the proofs of the statements of Sasha’s appendix on monads and diads. Reich provides details for the key statement about the equivalence of diads of type \( A^#_1 \) and \( A^#_2 \) but his proof is wrong (he claims certain maps obtained from a diad of type \( A^#_2 \) should yield an exact sequence when they don’t form a complex).

**Sasha’s Appendix A1 & A2.** Let \( \mathcal{A} \) denote an exact category.

**Proof of Sasha’s Lemma A1.** — Let \( \mathcal{A}^b_0 =: \mathcal{A}^b_0 \) denote the category of monads and \( \mathcal{A}^b_i \) Sasha’s \( A^*_i \). Let \( T_i : \mathcal{A}^b_i \to \mathcal{A}^b_{i+1} \) be the functors described, where \( i \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z} \).

Define the functor \( T_0^{-1} : \mathcal{A}^b_1 \to \mathcal{A}^b_0 \) by

\[
(P_{-1} \xleftarrow{\gamma} P_0 \xrightarrow{\gamma_0} P_1) \mapsto (P_{-1} \xrightarrow{\gamma_0 \gamma^{-1}} P_1 \to P_1/P_0).
\]

\( T_0^{-1} \) is clearly an inverse to \( T_0 \).

Turning to \( \mathcal{A}^b_2 \), first note that the following square is a pushout and pullback square, and therefore \( \epsilon_- \) is an admissible epimorphism and \( \epsilon_+ \) an admissible monomorphism.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  L_- & \xrightarrow{\epsilon_-} & B \\
  \downarrow{\delta_-} & & \downarrow{\epsilon_+} \\
  A & \underset{\delta_+}{\xrightarrow{}} & L_+
\end{array}
\]

This is true because to give a morphism to \( A \) and \( B \) which agrees on \( L_+ \) via \( \delta_+ \) and \( -\epsilon_+ \) is the same as giving a kernel for \( A \oplus B \xrightarrow{\delta_+ + \epsilon_+} L_+ \), and dually. We therefore have a
commutative diagram in which the right square is bicartesian, and claim that the dashed arrow is an isomorphism.

\[
\begin{array}{c l}
\text{ker } \varepsilon_- & \hookrightarrow L_- \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_-} B \\
\downarrow & \downarrow \delta_- & \downarrow -\varepsilon_+ \\
\text{ker } \delta_+ & \hookrightarrow A \xrightarrow{\delta_+} L_+ \\
\end{array}
\]

To give a morphism to \( A \) which \( \delta_+ \) sends to zero is (since \( \varepsilon_+ \) is a monomorphism) the same as giving a morphism to \( A \oplus B \) which is in the kernel of \( \delta_+ + \varepsilon_+ \) and with null projection to \( B \). This is the same as giving a morphism to \( L_- \) which \( \varepsilon_- \) sends to zero, which is the same as giving a morphism to \( \ker \varepsilon_- \). Therefore every monad in \( \mathfrak{M}_2^b \) has \( \varepsilon_- \) an admissible epimorphism and \( \varepsilon_+ \) an admissible monomorphism, and

\[
\begin{array}{c l}
(L_- \xrightarrow{(\delta_-,-\varepsilon_-)} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{(\delta_+,\varepsilon_+)} L_+) \cong (L_- \xrightarrow{(\delta_-,-\varepsilon_-)} A \oplus L_-/\ker \varepsilon_- \xrightarrow{(\delta_+,\varepsilon_+)} A/\ker \varepsilon_-),
\end{array}
\]

where \( \varepsilon_+ \) is induced by \( \delta_- \). The composition of functors \( T_0 \circ T_2 \) sends

\[
(L_- \xrightarrow{(\delta_-,-\varepsilon_-)} A \oplus B \xrightarrow{(\delta_+,\varepsilon_+)} L_+) \mapsto (\ker \varepsilon_- \xhookrightarrow{} L_- \xhookrightarrow{} A),
\]

and by the above isomorphism is clearly an equivalence with inverse

\[
T_1 : (\ker \varepsilon_- \xhookrightarrow{} L_- \xhookrightarrow{} A) \mapsto (L_- \xhookrightarrow{} A \oplus L_-/\ker \varepsilon_- \xrightarrow{} A/\ker \varepsilon_-).
\]

Therefore \( T_1 \) is also an equivalence with inverse \( T_0 \circ T_2 \) and \( T_2 \) is an equivalence with inverse \( T_1 \circ T_0 \):

\[
P := P_- \xhookrightarrow{} P \xrightarrow{\alpha_+} P_+ \\
\downarrow \xi_{T_0} \\
\downarrow \xi_{T_1} \\
P_- \xhookrightarrow{} \ker \alpha_+ \xhookrightarrow{} P \\
\downarrow \xi_{T_1} \\
ker \alpha_+ \xhookrightarrow{} P \oplus H(\mathcal{P}) \xrightarrow{} P/P_- \\
\downarrow \xi_{T_2} \\
\mathcal{P}.
\]
In §A2 the arrows $\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B}^i \to \mathbf{D}_+$ are admissible epimorphisms, not monomorphisms.

\textbf{Proof of Sasha’s Lemma A2.} — Let $\mathcal{A}^\# =: \mathcal{A}^\#_0$ denote the category of diads and $\mathcal{A}^\#_1$ the related categories. Let $T_0^\#: \mathcal{A}^\#_0 \to \mathcal{A}^\#_1$ and $T_1^\#: \mathcal{A}^\#_1 \to \mathcal{A}^\#_2$ be as described; $T_0^\#$ is obviously an equivalence. Note that $\mathcal{A}^\#_1$ is a full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}^\#_0$ and $\mathcal{A}^\#_2$ is a full subcategory of $\mathcal{A}^\#_0$. Therefore $T_1^\#$ is just the restriction of $T_1 \circ T_0$ to $\mathcal{A}^\#_1$. We have to check that $T_1^\#$ actually lands in $\mathcal{A}^\#_2$. Once that is established, if we can show that $T_2$ (the inverse of $T_1 \circ T_0$), restricted to $\mathcal{A}^\#_2$, lands in $\mathcal{A}^\#_1$, Lemma A1 then implies that $T_1^\#$ is an equivalence with inverse $T_2 \mid \mathcal{A}^\#_2$. We have

$$
\mathcal{Q} := \begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{C}_- \\
A \\
\mathcal{C}_+
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\alpha_{\ast}(a_1^i, a_2^i) \quad \alpha_{\ast}(a_1^i, a_2^i) \\
T_1 \circ T_0 = T_1^\#
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B} \\
\mathbf{C}_+ \\
\mathbf{C}_-
\end{array} \\
\ker(\alpha_{\ast}) \leftrightarrow \mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B} \oplus \mathbf{H}(\mathcal{Q}) \leftrightarrow (\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B})/\mathbb{C}_-
$$

and to show that $T_1^\#$ lands in $\mathcal{A}^\#_2$ we must secure that $\ker(\alpha_{\ast}) \leftrightarrow \mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{H}(\mathcal{Q})$ and $\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{H}(\mathcal{Q}) \leftrightarrow (\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B})/\mathbb{C}_-$. The commutative diagram below has exact rows.

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{C}_- \\
A \\
\mathcal{C}_+
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\ker(\alpha_{\ast}) \\
\mathbf{H}(\mathcal{Q}) \\
\mathbf{H}(\mathcal{Q}) \\
(\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B})/\mathbb{C}_- \\
\ker(\alpha_{\ast})/\mathbb{C}_-
\end{array}
$$

Both claims follow from the five lemma for exact categories.

It remains only to show that $T_2 \mid \mathcal{A}^\#_2$ lands in $\mathcal{A}^\#_1 \subset \mathcal{A}^\#_0$; then it will be an inverse to $T_1^\#$. We have

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{D}_- \\
\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B}^1 \oplus \mathbf{B}^2 \\
\mathbf{D}_+
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
(\gamma_{\ast}, \delta_{\ast}^1, \delta_{\ast}^2) \\
(\gamma_{\ast}, \delta_{\ast}^1, \delta_{\ast}^2) \\
T_2
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\ker(\delta_{\ast}^2) \\
\mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B}^1 \\
\ker((\gamma_{\ast}, \delta_{\ast}^1) : \mathcal{D}_1 \to \mathbf{A} \oplus \mathbf{B}^1)
\end{array}
$$
and we need to verify that \( \ker \delta_2 \to A \) is admissible monomorphism and \( A \to \coker((\gamma_-, \delta^1_1) : D_1 \to A \oplus B^1) \) is admissible epimorphism. We know from A1 that \( \delta^1_1 \) and \( \delta^2_2 \) are admissible epimorphisms while \( \delta^1_1 \) and \( \delta^2_2 \) are admissible monomorphisms. If \( \ker \delta_2 \to A \) admitted a cokernel, then it would follow from the obscure axiom applied to the commutative diagram with exact rows

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\ker \delta_2 & \to & D_- \to B^2 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A & \to & A \oplus B^2 \to B^2
\end{array}
\]

that \( \ker \delta_2 \to A \) would be an admissible monomorphism. En effet,

\[
\coker(\ker \delta_2 \to A) = \coker(D_- \xrightarrow{(\gamma_-, \delta_2)} A \oplus B^2),
\]

as both can be described as the colimit of the following diagram.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D_- & \xrightarrow{\delta_2} & B^2 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
A & & \\
\end{array}
\]

This identification additionally shows that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\ker \delta_2 & \to & A \to \coker(\ker \delta_2 \to A) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
D_- & \xrightarrow{A \oplus B^1} & \coker((\gamma_-, \delta^1_1) : D_- \to A \oplus B^1)
\end{array}
\]

commutes so that \( A \to \coker((\gamma_-, \delta^1_1) : D_- \to A \oplus B^1) \) is an admissible epimorphism. (Moreover the square to the left in this diagram is bicartesian [Bühler 2.12].) We’ve proved that the functors

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{A}_1^\# & \xrightarrow{T_1^\#} & \mathcal{A}_2^\#
\end{array}
\]

are mutually inverse equivalences. \( \Box \)
The reflection functor. We wish to compute $T_2|_{\delta_2^\#} \circ r \circ T_1^\#$, which is an involution of the category $\delta_1^\#$ (since $r$ is an involution of $\delta_2^\#$ and $T_2|_{\delta_2^\#} = (T_1^\#)^{-1}$) that we will also denote by $r$; the diagram below illustrates the composition.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{Q} := C_- & \xleftarrow{\alpha_=(a_1,a_2)} & A \oplus B \\
\downarrow^{T_1 \circ T_0 = T_1^\#} & & \downarrow^{T_2} \\
\ker(\alpha_+) & \xleftarrow{\gamma - \delta_1^\#, \delta_2^\#} & A \oplus B \oplus H(\mathbb{Q}) \\
& \xrightarrow{\gamma, \delta_1^\#, \delta_2^\#} & (A \oplus B)/C_- \end{array}
\]

It is easy to see that $\ker(\delta_1^\# : \ker(\alpha_+ \to B) = \ker(\alpha_1^\#)$ because to give a morphism to $\ker(\alpha_+)$ which goes to zero under $\ker(\alpha_+ \to A \oplus B \to B)$ is the same as giving a morphism to $A$ which goes to zero under $\alpha_1^\#$. As for $\coker(\ker(\alpha_+ \to A \oplus H(\mathbb{Q}))$, to give a map from $A \oplus H(\mathbb{Q})$ that kills $\ker(\alpha_+)$ is to give a map $a_1$ from $A$ and $a_2$ from $H(\mathbb{Q})$ such that $a_1 - a_2$ kills $\ker(\alpha_+)$; as $C_- \xleftarrow{\ker(\alpha_+)} H(\mathbb{Q})$ is short exact, to give a map from $A$ which coincides on $\ker(\alpha_+)$ with a map from $H(\mathbb{Q})$ is to give a map from $A$ which annihilates $C_-$. Therefore $\coker(\ker(\alpha_+ \to A \oplus H(\mathbb{Q})) = \coker(C_- \to A)$, so

\[r(\mathbb{Q}) = \ker(\alpha_1^\# \to A \oplus H(\mathbb{Q})) \to \coker(\alpha_1^\#) = A/C_- .\]

The map $\ker(\alpha_1^\# \to A$ is the natural inclusion and $A \to A/C_-\ operator the natural projection; the map $\ker(\alpha_1^\# \to H(\mathbb{Q})$ coincides with $\alpha$ in the below commutative diagram (with
Finally, the map $H(\mathbb{Q}) \to A/C_-$ coincides with $-b$ in the diagram above, the negative sign appearing because we have $-\gamma_0 : P_0/P_{-1} \to P_1/P_{-1}$ in the definition of the functor $T_1$ so that $\delta_+^2 : H(\mathbb{Q}) \to (A \oplus B)/C_-$ coincides with $-\iota$ in the composition

$H(\mathbb{Q}) \xrightarrow{\delta_+^2} (A \oplus B)/C_- \to A/C_-.$
Bibliography

[B] How to glue perverse sheaves par Beilinson
[BBD] Faisceaux Pervers par Beilinson, Bernstein, Deligne (& Gabber!)
[M] Beilinson’s construction of nearby cycles and gluing par Sophie Morel
12. Singular support

These notes are about the singular support and characteristic cycle.

12.1. $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$ SS. Let $f : X \to S$ be a morphism of finite type of schemes. Let $x$ be a geometric point of $X$, $s := f(x)$, and let $t$ be a generization of $s$; i.e. a geometric point $t \to S_s$, where as usual $S_s$ denotes the strict henselization of $S$ at $s$. Let $X_{x,t}$ denote the $t$-fiber of the map $X_x \to S_s$. I wish to see that the functor $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, -)$ has finite cohomological dimension on torsion sheaves. Let $u : X_{x,t} \to X \times_S t$; then the functor $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, -) - u_*$ is of finite cohomological dimension as a consequence of Artin's theorem and passage to the limit. We reduce to this case following the implication 3.1 (d) $\Rightarrow$ 3.4 (d) of [SGAA, XIV §3]: by passage to the limit we may assume our sheaf is constructible, hence the inverse image of a constructible sheaf on some $X_0$, where $X_0$ is an affine étale neighborhood of $x \to X \times_S S_s$. Replacing $X \times_S t$ by $X' \times_S t$, we are in the same situation as before.

As $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, -)$ has finite cohomological dimension, by the argument of Rapport, p. 20, it commutes with reduction of coefficients; i.e. if $\mathcal{F}$ is a sheaf of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^m$-modules, $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, \mathcal{F}) \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m = \Gamma(X_{x,t}, \mathcal{F} \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m)$ for $m \leq n$. However, in general, $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, F \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m)$ needn’t be a $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^m$-module of finite type.

But, if $f$ is locally acyclic rel. $\mathcal{F} \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell$, this implies that the projective system $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, \mathcal{F} \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell^m)$ is a projective system of $\mathbb{Z}/\ell^m$-modules of finite type, and therefore $\Gamma(X_{x,t}, \mathcal{F})$ is an object of the bounded derived category of $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-modules of finite type. Let $\Delta$ denote the cone of the morphism $\mathcal{F}_x \to \Gamma(X_{x,t}, \mathcal{F})$. Then $\Delta \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell = 0$. This implies that $\Delta$ is itself acyclic, as the $\ell$-adic filtration on any flat complex representing $\Delta$ has successive quotients quasi-isomorphic to $\Delta \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell$ (0942).

As a result, if $\mathcal{F}$ is a $\mathbb{Z}_\ell$-sheaf, one defines $\text{SS}(\mathcal{F}) := \text{SS}(\mathcal{F} \otimes^L \mathbb{Z}/\ell)$.

12.2. Notes on the proof of [A, 3.6]. We have the stated splitting of the (co)tangent bundles by taking the inverse of the rightmost down arrow, which is an isomorphism. That the leftmost down arrow is zero is the observation that $\ker(d\sigma) = \partial_w$, since $\sigma$ sends the parametric line $(t, v_0)$ with derivative $\partial_w = (1, 0)$ to $(t^2, v_0)$ with derivative $(0, 0)$.
$d\sigma$ is an isomorphism on the complementary tangent space because it is the identity there.

The lift of $g$ to an automorphism of $X'$ is clear when you are asked to fill in the dashed arrow in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X' & \longrightarrow & X' \\
\downarrow \sigma & & \downarrow \sigma \\
X & \longrightarrow & X \\
g & & \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
(w, z_2, \ldots, z_{n+1}) & \longmapsto & (w, Av + v_0 + w^2 v_1) \\
\downarrow \sigma & & \downarrow \sigma \\
(w^2, z_2, \ldots, z_{n+1}) & \longmapsto & (w^2, Av + v_0 + w^2 v_1).
\end{array}
\]

A point $\xi$ in the tangent bundle is given by a morphism from $\text{Spec}(k[\varepsilon]/(\varepsilon^2))$, and this corresponds to a map $k[w, z_2, \ldots, z_{n+1}] \to k[\varepsilon]/(\varepsilon^2)$ which is determined by $n+1$ elements in the latter 2-dimensional vector space. The condition that the point lie in the fiber over $D'$ amounts to $w$ being sent to an element with zero constant term.

To see the formula for $g(\xi)$, just think of $(0, v) + \varepsilon \cdot (w, \tilde{v})$ as describing a parametric line intersecting $(0, v) \in D'$, and apply the formula for $g$ to this line; now discard the terms of order $> 1$ in $\varepsilon$.

### 12.3. A useful criterion for smoothness

The following is proved in Bosch-Lütkebohmert-Raynaud, Néron Models, §2.2 Proposition 8.

**Proposition.** Let $f : X \to Y$ be an $S$-morphism. Let $x$ be a point of $X$, and set $y = f(x)$. Assume that $X$ is smooth over $S$ at $x$ and that $Y$ is smooth over $S$ at $y$. Then the following conditions are equivalent:

(a) $f$ is smooth at $x$.

(b) The canonical homomorphism $(f^*\Omega^1_{Y/S})_x \to (\Omega^1_{X/S})_x$ is left-invertible (i.e. is an isomorphism onto a direct factor).

(c) The canonical homomorphism $(f^*\Omega^1_{Y/S}) \otimes k(x) \to \Omega^1_{X/S} \otimes k(x)$ is injective.

### 12.4. Notes on Lu & Zheng

The paper is \cite{LZ}.

1.12. I’d like to check the claim that the diagram defining the right-lax symmetric monoidal structure commutes ‘on the nose’; i.e. with identity 2-cell. The arrow gotten
We can exchange $u \otimes u'$ with $\alpha_{Y,Y'}$ above by naturality of $\alpha_{Y,Y'}$. We have two natural transformations obtained from the pasting diagrams

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(X) \times F(X') & \xrightarrow{\otimes} & F(X \otimes X') \\
\downarrow \quad F(c \times F(c')) & \xleftarrow{\otimes} & \downarrow G(c \otimes c') \\
F(Y) \times F(Y') & \xrightarrow{\otimes} & F(Y \otimes Y')
\end{array}
$$

and

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
F(X) \times F(X') & \xrightarrow{\alpha \times \alpha'} & G(X) \times G(X') \\
\downarrow \quad F(c \times F(c')) & \xleftarrow{\alpha \times \alpha'} & \downarrow G(c \otimes c') \\
F(Y) \times F(Y') & \xrightarrow{\alpha \times \alpha'} & G(Y) \times G(Y')
\end{array}
$$

and the point is that $\alpha_{X,X'}$ is a modification between these two natural transformations. This means that

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
G(c \otimes c')(\alpha_X(L) \otimes \alpha_X'(L')) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{X,X'}} & G(c \otimes c')(\alpha_X(X')L \otimes L') \\
\downarrow \quad \alpha_{\otimes \otimes} & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{\otimes \otimes}} & \downarrow \\
\alpha_{Y,Y'}(F(c \otimes c')(L \otimes L')) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{Y,Y'}} & \alpha_{Y,Y'}(F(c) \otimes (F(c')L'))
\end{array}
$$

coincides with

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
G(c \otimes c')(\alpha_X(L) \otimes \alpha_X'(L')) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{\otimes \otimes}} & G(c)(\alpha_XL) \otimes G(c')(\alpha_X'L') \\
\downarrow \quad \alpha_{\otimes \otimes} & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{\otimes \otimes}} & \downarrow \\
\alpha_{Y,Y'}(F(c)(\alpha_XL) \otimes (F(c)L')) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{Y,Y'}} & \alpha_{Y,Y'}((F(c)L) \otimes (F(c)L')).
\end{array}
$$
Bibliography

[A] Achinger, *Wild ramification and K(π,1) spaces*

[LZ] Lu & Zheng, *Categorical traces and a relative Lefschetz-Verdier formula*

[S] Saito

[SGAA] SGA 4